ABSTRACT

Title of Thesis: HISTORIC PRESERVATION FOR ALL PEOPLE: RECONCEPTUALIZING ACCESSIBILITY IN HISTORIC BUILDINGS

Degree Candidate: Megan Diehl

Degree and Year: Master of Arts in Historic Preservation, 2022

Thesis Directed by: Betsy H. Bradley

Welch Center for Graduate Studies

Goucher College

Increasing physical access to everyday historic buildings is a concept often in conflict with the practice of historic preservation. Making these places more accessible frequently requires physical changes, while many aspects of our current preservation model seek to protect and preserve historic materials against change. This tension can result in historic buildings that are either partially or completely inaccessible to people with physical disabilities, or that are accessible in ways that create inequitable experiences. In this treatise, I propose changes to our field's mindset towards and practice of improving accessibility in historic buildings that instead encourage equitable experiences for everyone.

In recent years, practitioners in our field have expressed interest in moving towards a people-oriented preservation movement that promotes preservation of the relationships

people create and sustain with historic properties. Place attachment theory illuminates that these relationships grow through the experiences that people have with place. An analysis of Title III of the Americans with Disabilities Act and examples from our field's federal preservation resources reveals that these documents encourage practitioners to use preservation of historic fabric as the bellwether for designing accessibility improvements. This approach, and our field's emphasis on preserving historic façades and entrances, contributes to experiences of inequity when people with disabilities enter historic buildings. These inequitable experiences conflict with people-focused preservation because they diminish opportunities for people with disabilities to build relationships with historic places.

In response to these findings, I propose changes to how our field understands and approaches improving access to historic buildings that align with a people-focused preservation model. These recommendations draw ideas from the social model of disability, critical disability theory, and Universal Design. I also argue that preservationists should reconsider historic façades and entrances as points of engagement between people and place. I support these assertions with suggested revisions to our federal accessibility resources that reflect this new perspective.

Subject Headings: accessibility in historic buildings, people-focused preservation, place attachment theory, critical disability theory, the social model of disability, Universal Design theory, the Americans with Disabilities Act, *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards and Guidelines for the Treatment of Historic Properties*, National Park Service Preservation Briefs

HISTORIC PRESERVATION FOR ALL PEOPLE: RECONCEPTUALIZING ACCESSIBILITY IN HISTORIC BUILDINGS

Megan Diehl

Thesis submitted to the Faculty of Goucher College in partial

fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of

Master of Arts in Historic Preservation

2022

Advisory Committee:

Betsy H. Bradley, Ph.D., Director

Cynthia Falk, Ph.D.

Paula Mohr, Ph.D.

Copyright © by

Megan Diehl

2022

This work is dedicated to my family and friends, who have always supported me.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I would first like to extend deep gratitude to the members of my thesis committee, Betsy Bradley, Cynthia Falk, and Paula Mohr. The guidance and thoughtful feedback you offered was invaluable as I worked through this project. I would not have been able to complete it without you. I would also like to thank Professor Melanie Lytle— the early conversations we had helped further refine my approach to this work.

Finally, I would like to acknowledge my family, my friends, and my partner, Tim. You offered encouragement to explore this historic preservation path and so much support as I navigated through this treatise.

Thank you.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LIST OF FIGURES vi

CHAPTER I: TREATISE INTRODUCTION 1

Scope of this Study 3
A Standard of Equitable Access 5
Authorized Heritage Discourse: Its Meaning and Relevance 9
Theories of Reference 11
Methods of Analysis: People-Focused Preservation and Place Attachment 12
Chapter Contents 13
Terminology 15
Concluding Thoughts 17

CHAPTER II: PEOPLE-ORIENTED PRESERVATION AND PLACE ATTACHMENT THEORY 19

Historic Preservation Origins: Building and Fabric-Focused Preservation 19
Grassroots Preservation Efforts 20
Federal Preservation Efforts 22
People-Focused Preservation 25
Randall Mason's Values-Centered Preservation 26
The National Trust for Historic Preservation's People-Focused Preservation 27
Christopher Matthews' People's Preservation 28
Theories of Place Attachment 30
Concluding Thoughts 33

CHAPTER III: THE ADA AND ACCESSIBILITY IN OUR AUTHORIZED HERITAGE DISCOURSE 35

The Americans with Disabilities Act 36
Federal Precursors to the ADA 36
The Americans with Disabilities Act 39
Title III of the ADA: Accessibility Requirements for Historic Properties 41
Title III in Practice: Contemporary Litigation 45
Survey of Title III Litigation 46
Federal Accessibility Resources 49
The Secretary of the Interior's Standards and Guidelines for Rehabilitating Historic Properties 49
Preservation Briefs 32 54
The Historic Integrity of the Façade 62
The Façade in Context 63
Preserving the Entrance and the Façade 65
Façade-Focused Preservation and Accessibility 69
Concluding Thoughts 71

CHAPTER IV: RECONCEPTUALIZING DISABILITY AND ACCESSIBILITY 74

Changing our Mindset 74
The Social Model of Disability 75
An Overview of Critical Disability Theory 78
Applying a Standard of Equitable Access 80
Concluding Thoughts 84

CHAPTER V: WAYS FORWARD 86

Theoretical Summary 87
Sample Revisions to our Authorized Heritage Discourse 91
Example 1: *Preservation Briefs 32: Making Historic Properties Accessible* 92
Example 2: Accessibility within *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties* 99
Ways Forward Beyond this Study 102
Updating Our Authorized Heritage Discourse 102
Moving Beyond the Entrance 104

Final Thoughts 105

BIBLIOGRAPHY 107

APPENDIX 112

LIST OF FIGURES

1. Inaccessible Front Entrance to a Baltimore Restaurant 7

2. Accessible Rear Entrance to a Baltimore Restaurant 7

3. Accessible Historic Main Entrance 60

4. Accessible Side Entrance to a Historic Building 61

CHAPTER I
TREATISE INTRODUCTION

Increasing physical access to historic buildings is a concept often in conflict with the practice of historic preservation. Making these places more accessible frequently requires physical changes, while many aspects of our current preservation model seek to protect and preserve historic materials against change. This tension, which stems from preservation's fabric-focused roots, ultimately impacts if and how people with physical disabilities experience historic buildings. Many historic buildings are either partially or completely inaccessible to people with physical disabilities, while others have been made inequitably accessible. Those that are inequitably accessible may meet technical accessibility standards, but the accessibility improvements put in place favor historic integrity over equitable experiences for people with physical disabilities.

In recent years, practitioners in our field have expressed interest in moving away from this fabric-focused practice that can lead to problematic access for people with disabilities, towards a people-oriented preservation movement. I assert that reorienting our field's collective mindset towards physical accessibility in historic buildings is an important component of shifting our field from fabric-centric to people-oriented preservation. The perspective I offer is twofold: I believe that preservationists have a responsibility to reconsider how people with

physical disabilities access historic buildings if we seek to shift our field towards a people-focused practice. I also assert that reorienting our field's mindset towards accessibility is a way of moving this new model of practice forward. In other words, reworking the relationship we perceive and encourage between accessibility and historic fabric is both a component of people-focused preservation and a means for creating this change in our practice.

I believe that avoiding changes within our practice that could make historic buildings more physically accessible because we seek to protect their character-defining features perpetuates the fabric-centric preservation ethos that our field seeks to move beyond. To help this people-oriented preservation movement grow, we must reconceptualize both what physical access means and how we incorporate that reconceptualization into accessibility improvements for historic buildings. In this study, I draw together ideas from place attachment theory, the social model of disability, critical disability theory, and Universal Design to explore ways of bringing these changes about. This new approach should reset the current fabric-heavy balance between accessibility and historic preservation by establishing a standard of equitable access so that people with all levels of ability have equivalent opportunities to experience historic buildings.

This introductory chapter offers context for the remainder of my study. I first discuss the scope of my research, including the specific types of access and historic buildings that I am most interested in. I then introduce two meaningful terms that are woven throughout the following four chapters, *equitable access* and *authorized heritage discourse*, the latter of which is the articulation of our field's practice theory that guides historic preservation work. I follow this with a discussion of the logistics of my study, including the theories I have drawn from to

structure my argument and an overview of individual chapter contents. This chapter concludes with an explanation of the accessibility terminology I have chosen to apply consistently throughout my work.

Scope of this Study

This study addresses historic preservation practice specifically within the United States (U.S.), and all references to "our field" (and similar phrases) are U.S. centric. This treatise does not focus on specific treatments to make historic buildings more accessible for people with physical disabilities because I believe that the change in our field's accessibility ideology, the subject of this study, is the critical first step we must take. I am also reluctant to create step-by-step checklists for equitable access—instead, I hope that embracing this new standard will inspire creative thinking about accessibility improvements tailored to each property and project scope. While I do include hypothetical examples of equitable access in the final chapter, my emphasis is on changes in how to approach accessibility improvements according to our preservation philosophy, which will manifest this reconceptualization of accessibility in our practice. I believe that these changes will ultimately translate into innovative accessibility improvements. I argue for a reworked framework for access in historic buildings that guides how preservationists approach physical accessibility in these places.

It is important to acknowledge the specific lens of this study, in that I have chosen to focus on reconsidering how people with physical disabilities enter historic buildings. There are many other barriers to access around and within these places, and there are many other kinds of disabilities beyond physical disabilities, all of which are no less important than the area I have chosen to study. Ultimately, preservationists should reconsider comprehensive

accessibility from the perspective of people-oriented preservation, and the standard of equitable access I encourage should be applied throughout historic properties, not just in isolated portions.

I selected access via physical entrances for this study because, as I explore in later chapters, the act of entering is one of the first exchanges that people have with historic buildings. People-focused preservation focuses on experiences, and this interaction begins to frame each person's experience with place. As such, *how* people with physical disabilities enter historic buildings requires thoughtful consideration. From a practical perspective, entering is also one of the first components of access: if someone is unable to get inside a building, their ability to navigate the interior becomes irrelevant.

Additionally, this study is primarily oriented around improving access to historic buildings, though the approach I argue for may also be applied to historic structures, objects, sites, or even districts. Specifically, I am most interested in changing how people with physical disabilities access those privately owned buildings that form part of our everyday experience, instead of more curated properties like house museums and other similar historic sites. These "everyday" buildings may be restaurants, shops, grocery stores, academic buildings, and beyond, such places where the *Secretary of the Interior's Standards and Guidelines for Rehabilitation* are most applicable instead of those for which preservation or restoration treatments are most appropriate. To be clear, my argument applies to historic buildings in general, and I firmly believe that all historic properties should be as equitably accessible as possible. But, I focus on these "day-to-day" spaces for the exact reason that they are such a part of our everyday landscape. Creating change within these types of routine places can have a

powerful, noticeable impact on the experiences people with disabilities have with historic properties and the relationships they build with them because people in general are more likely to frequently interact with them throughout the course of their lives.

To summarize, this U.S.-centric study explores how to shift our field's approach towards improving the ways that people with physical disabilities enter quotidian historic buildings. I emphasize change within our preservation practice theory because I believe revisions to this discourse will then translate to our practice of making historic buildings accessible. Though my study has a specific lens, I encourage preservationists to consider that the ideas I discuss in this treatise ultimately have broad applicability to how we improve access for people with diverse disabilities throughout all types of historic properties.

A Standard of Equitable Access

From a legal perspective, preservationists must continue to meet local, state, and federal accessibility requirements. The Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requires privately owned buildings that are open to the public to comply with the act's architectural barrier removal provisions, examples of which include installing ramps, adding curb cuts, and widening doors, providing that doing so is "readily achievable, *i.e.*, easily accomplishable and able to be carried out without much difficulty or expense."[1]

However, the ADA's accessibility standards for these buildings, which are separate from the barrier removal provisions and generally require accessibility to "the maximum extent feasible," only apply to historic buildings that undergo alterations (new additions,

[1] Removal of Barriers, 28 C.F.R. § 36.304 (2022).

rehabilitation, historic restoration, renovation, etc.).[2] Even then, such buildings are not required to meet these standards if doing so would compromise historic integrity.[3] These historic property exceptions within the standards, as well as similar provisions in additional sources of accessibility guidance, can contribute to inequitable access for people with physical disabilities. I argue that moving towards a people-focused preservation model requires that we reconceptualize these requirements as a floor for how we approach physical accessibility in historic buildings, not a ceiling. Preservationists should embrace a standard of equitable access for the accessibility improvements we create in historic buildings.

The topic of this study was inspired by an experience my friend who uses a wheelchair had at a restaurant in Baltimore City. For purposes of this story and this study, it is important to establish that I am a person without a disability. My friend and I planned to meet in the basement bar of a popular restaurant in one of Baltimore's local historic districts.[4] The primary entrance to the property is located on the building's façade; a short flight of steps leads up to the restaurant, while another small, steep flight of steps leads down to the bar (Figure 1). The bar can also be accessed via a staircase inside the restaurant. I used the primary exterior entrance to reach the bar, while my friend used an alternative, accessible entrance because wheelchairs cannot navigate the front steps. Unlike the primary entrance, the accessible entrance is located in the rear of the building, along the alleyway. Users must traverse the alley and then ride the freight elevator to reach the basement bar (Figure 2).

---

[2] Alterations, 28 C.F.R. § 36.402 (2022).
[3] Alterations: Historic Preservation, 28 C.F.R. § 36.405 (2022).
[4] "Mount Vernon," Historical and Architectural Preservation, November 15, 2015, https://chap.baltimorecity.gov/mount-vernon.

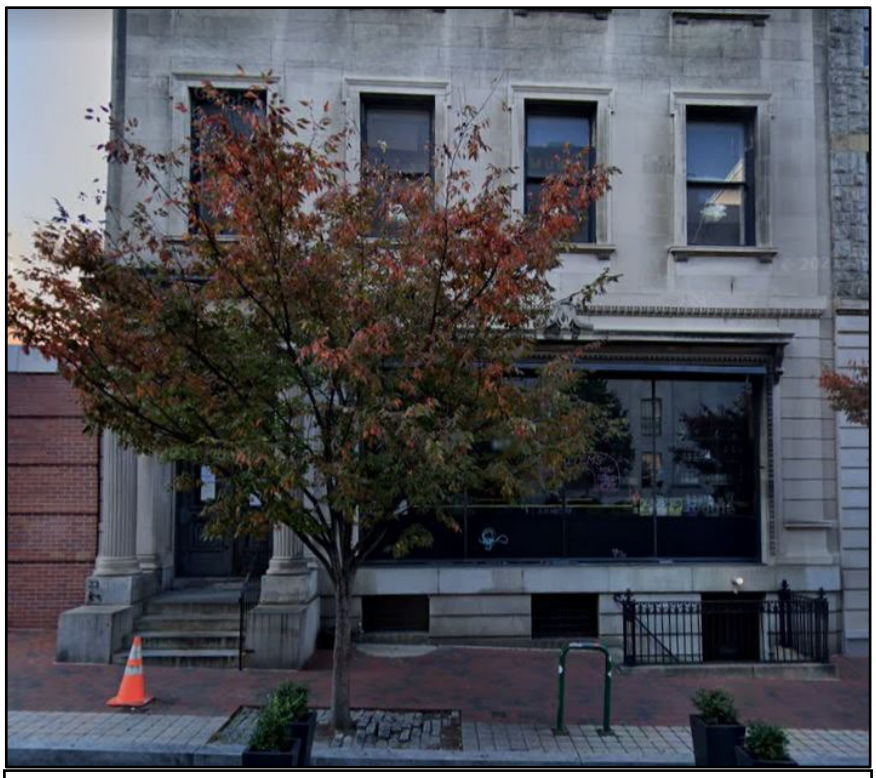


Figure 1: The front, inaccessible entrance to the restaurant [Google Maps, November 2020]

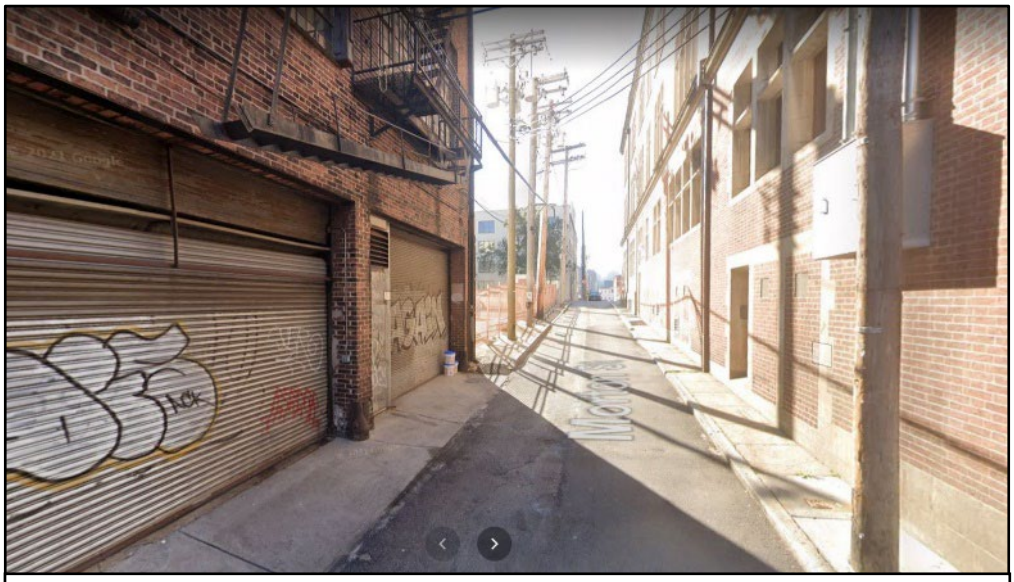


Figure 2: The rear, accessible entrance to the restaurant [Google Maps, November 2020]

While the basement bar is accessible to the extent that people with physical disabilities can enter the space, I was struck by how disparate our experiences were when entering the building. The exterior entrance available to people without physical disabilities is along an easily identifiable, direct path. I parked my car on the street, walked down a flight of steps, and opened the door to the bar. The only entrance available to people with physical disabilities, the entrance my friend had to use, is circuitous and requires the user to both pass through a public alleyway that may not be well-lit (and that may not be clear of snow or ice in the wintertime) and travel on an elevator designated to move commercial materials, not people, throughout the building to ultimately access the bar. While this example is not necessarily emblematic of accessibility modifications in every historic property, it is one of many accessibility improvements I have noticed that make it more difficult and, in some cases, uncomfortable for people with physical disabilities to enter historic buildings.

In this study, I argue for new way of thinking about accessibility that steers preservationists away from these types of inequitable accessibility improvements. I believe that not only should people with physical disabilities be able to access historic buildings per the standards that the ADA has established, but that they should also have the same *kind* of access to these places. I argue for a standard of equitable access, meaning accessibility improvements that create an equivalency of experience for people with and without disabilities. Under this standard, public entrances to historic buildings should be accessible to everyone, without exception. To every extent feasible, the means of entering itself should also be equivalent for all people. We should avoid creating alternative types of entrances for people with physical disabilities because how someone enters a property, and if they are treated differently than

others while doing so, is a component of the experience they have with the historic place. I recognize that it may be financially or structurally infeasible to create the same point and method of entry in certain circumstances. But, I assert that adopting equity as our standard for access will encourage creative accessibility solutions that seek to achieve this level of access. If comprehensive equitable access is unobtainable, then embracing this standard should otherwise result in compromises that contribute to the highest degree of equity whenever possible.

Authorized Heritage Discourse: Its Meaning and Relevance

Heritage and museum studies scholar Laurajane Smith introduces a concept of "authorized heritage discourse" (AHD) in her work *Uses of Heritage,* which I reference throughout this study. This term describes authoritative discourse that defines the philosophy and practice of our preservation field.[5] Smith identifies several characteristics of AHD as it currently exists: (1) it is materially focused, and emphasizes the value of "things" (historic fabric) as embodiments of heritage, (2) it is a "professional discourse that privileges expert values and knowledge about the past and its material manifestations," (3) it both "dominates and regulates" historic preservation practices, and (4) it seeks to dictate what does and does not constitute heritage.[6] This discourse determines both what heritage is, or, for our purposes, if a property qualifies as historic, and how those embodiments of history should be treated. It is the governing framework for preservation practice. Smith acknowledges and I recognize that

[5] Laurajane Smith, *Uses of Heritage* (London, England: Routledge, 2006), 86-87.
[6] Ibid., 4, 6, 11.

AHD is not the only representation of how historic preservation happens within the U.S.; but, it is the dominant voice within the field, the "official" discourse on how it *should* happen.[7]

An important mechanism of AHD that reinforces its authority as "official" discourse is its assertion that historic fabric is *the* embodiment of a property's significance.[8] The material fabric, i.e., the property's significance, therefore, must be technically managed by experts from within the field.[9] Framing significance as something that only experts can protect and preserve isolates it within the realm of expert knowledge.[10] This precludes any alternative interpretations of significance or challenges, especially from non-experts, to the official discourse on what should be preserved and how that preservation should happen.[11] Essentially, asserting that material fabric is the conveyor of history makes it difficult to challenge the authority of the discourse.

I refer to *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties* and various Preservation Briefs as examples of U.S. authorized heritage discourse throughout this study because these publications represent "how preservation should be done" according to our field's federal authority on preservation practice, the National Park Service (NPS). *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards* are particularly weighty examples of AHD because they are formally codified into law.[12] Indeed, preservationist and former Executive Director of the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation John Fowler describes these *Standards* and the *Guidelines* that accompany them as "the Ten Commandments for preservation work

---

[7] Smith, *Uses of Heritage,* 35.
[8] Ibid., 106.
[9] Ibid., 105-106.
[10] Ibid.
[11] Ibid.
[12] The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties are codified in 36 C.F.R. § 68.

throughout the country" because of how influential they are on national, state, and local preservation practice.[13] While the Briefs provide more informal guidance, they are nonetheless representations of our guiding authority's preservation ideology. Creating change specifically within these sources of AHD can initiate a revised mindset and a reconceptualization of preservation practice in the United States.

Theories of Reference

My study joins current conversations about ways to redirect our field towards people-oriented preservation, what the relationship between accessibility and historic fabric should be, and how we might change our practice to more comprehensively incorporate accessibility into historic preservation work**.** I draw ideas from place attachment theory, the social model of disability, critical disability theory, and Universal Design to explore these conversations. While several of these concepts typically fall beyond our current preservation lens, I have chosen to reference them because they offer valuable alternative perspectives that can help us change the way we incorporate accessibility into historic buildings.

My study is rooted in the application of theories and concepts as opposed to research on a particular area, phenomenon, historic district, etc., because I am arguing for a shift in our field's mindset, the necessary first step towards and precursor to change in our on-the-ground practice. I rely on these theories to discuss why and how we should rethink our standards for physical accessibility.

[13] John M. Fowler, "The Federal Preservation Program," in *A Richer Heritage : Historic Preservation in the Twenty-First Century*, ed. Robert E. Stipe (Chapel Hill, NC: University of North Carolina Press, 2003), 32.

Methods of Analysis: People-Focused Preservation and Place Attachment

In recent decades, several theories of a people-oriented preservation practice have emerged that contrast with the fabric-focused approach in which our field is rooted. While each interpretation of people-focused preservation that I discuss in this study is distinct, they all emphasize preserving the relationships that people have and continuously build with historic properties. These new models pose historic buildings as places of experience, instead of primarily embodiments of our historic past.[14] This alternative, experience-oriented perspective is an essential component of my study and sits at the core of my argument for equitable access. I propose that we cannot continue to accept (and, in some cases, encourage) physical inaccessibility or inequitable accessibility if our field wants to make this shift towards a people-focused practice. I consistently reference this alternative preservation model throughout my study to demonstrate why and how preservationists can change our approach to accessibility in historic buildings.

I have chosen the place attachment theories our field already values and uses to understand (and argue for) why historic places are important to illuminate why it is also important for people with disabilities to have equitable access to historic buildings. I reference these theories to draw a link between overarching themes of people-oriented preservation that

[14] Randall Mason, "Theoretical and Practical Arguments for Values-Centered Preservation," *CRM: The Journal of Heritage Stewardship* 3 (Summer 2006), https://home1.nps.gov/CRMJournal/Summer2006/view2.html; Randall Mason, "Fixing Historic Preservation: A Constructive Critique of 'Significance,'" *Places* 16, no. 1 (2004): 64–71; Christopher N. Matthews, "A People's Preservation: Urban Erasures in Essex County, NJ," *Journal for the Anthropology of North America* 23, no. 1 (March 2020): 47–66, https://doi.org/10.1002/nad.12125; National Trust for Historic Preservation, "Preservation for People: A Vision for the Future," May 2017, https://forum.savingplaces.org/HigherLogic/System/DownloadDocumentFile.ashx?DocumentFileKey=57133684-4c32-4863-5965-96476f7b4dab&forceDialog=1.

emphasize experiences with historic properties and the need to shift our mindset to embrace a standard of equitable access to historic buildings.

Chapter Contents

In this study, I seek to create a contextual timeline for the reader. Throughout the course of chapters two and three, I demonstrate where our field's accessibility perspective is currently situated and how we came to this position, both theoretically, from our origins in fabric-focused preservation, and practically, as a result of the ADA and its requirements for historic buildings. After creating this context, I use the final two chapters to suggest how we can apply various theories to shift this accessibility perspective forward in our mindset about and practice of improving accessibility in historic buildings. I encourage a transition away from emphasizing ADA requirements and prioritizing historic fabric, particularly the entrance, towards a people-focused standard of equitable access. I describe this approach more thoroughly in the remainder of this section.

Chapter two is dedicated to several key concepts that are woven throughout the remainder of my study: fabric-focused and people-oriented preservation models and place attachment theory. I first explore how ideas of people-oriented preservation developed in response to our fabric-focused roots and identify common themes between various interpretations of this new preservation model. I then provide an overview of place attachment theory, including an introduction to the theory itself, various explanations of how people develop attachments with places, and why it is important for people to be able to form these attachments. I conclude the chapter with a discussion of the relationship between place attachment, accessibility, and people-oriented preservation.

Chapter three explores historic preservation's overall positioning on the relationship between accessibility and historic buildings, particularly their historic fabric. The main portion of this chapter is an overview of our field's federal and AHD accessibility resources that together represent our accessibility perspective and practice at a national level. I begin with a discussion of legislative access requirements, with a focus on the ADA, the rights it establishes for people with disabilities, and the Title III accessibility standards for historic buildings. I then discuss existing expectations for the retention of character-defining features in *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards and Guidelines for Rehabilitating Historic Properties*, which dominate thinking within the field, as well as National Park Service discourse on accessibility in historic buildings.

The second portion of this chapter focuses on our field's particular dedication to preserving façades and entrances and the impact this approach can have on accessibility. This section includes a brief history of the façade's importance, the subtle and more overt ways our federal accessibility resources emphasize preserving these areas of historic buildings, and examples of the tension this approach can lead to between equitable access and preservation practice. I conclude this chapter with an analysis of how the balance between historic fabric and access in our field's accessibility standards is weighted and suggestions for how this should be reconceived through the lens of people-oriented preservation.

Chapter four is the most theoretical of the five chapters, wherein I propose how we can begin to shift towards a standard of equitable access. Here, I draw on recent work about disability from within the critical disability studies field and key concepts from the social model of disability to both present alternative ways of considering disability and accessibility and to

underscore why it is important for our field to shift our accessibility mindset. I then suggest how we can apply this new mindset to our practice by borrowing from the general theory of Universal Design to incorporate a standard of equitable access into our federal accessibility resources.

In my fifth and final chapter, I draw these discussions together to suggest practicable ways forward within our field. I reference people-focused preservation, place attachment theory, the social model of disability, and critical disability theory to reassert why shifting beyond the ADA's accessibility standards to a standard of equitable access is an important component of moving towards people-oriented preservation. I follow this summary with recommendations for updating extracts from our AHD to reflect this new standard. In addition to final thoughts, my study concludes with suggestions for furthering this revised approach and practice beyond the scope of my treatise.

Terminology

I have referenced several resources to develop an approach for respectfully writing about people with disabilities in this study, though I have relied most heavily on The National Center on Disability and Journalism's "Disability Language Style Guide" and, to a lesser extent, the American Psychological Association's bias-free language guidelines for disability. While I have chosen language that is currently permissible according to these resources, it is important to acknowledge that every person with a disability's language choice should be respected, regardless of how it aligns with the recommendations in these guidelines.

People-first and identity-first language are the two predominant styles for speaking and writing about people with disabilities.[15] People-first language names the person first and the disability second to avoid defining people according to their disability.[16] Phrases like "people with disabilities" and "people without disabilities" fall within this style. Some disability language guides recommend that this be the default style for writing about people with disabilities when a preference is unknown, but it is important to note that certain disability groups within the U.S., including Deaf people and autistic people, have specifically expressed a preference for identity-first language.[17]

Identity-first language leads with the person's disability to communicate that having a disability is not negative, and that having a disability is part of the person's identity.[18] In addition to the members of Deaf and autistic communities who prefer this style, some disability activists and academics within the critical disability studies field (who may also be autistic, Deaf, or have another type of disability) also choose identity-first language.[19] Examples of appropriate language within this model include "disabled person" and "disabled people."

There is no true style that should be used universally because the foremost rule is that every person with a disability has the right to choose their preference.[20] When a person with a disability or a community of people who share the same disability have clearly expressed a

---

[15] "Disability," American Psychological Association, August 2021, https://apastyle.apa.org/style-grammar-guidelines/bias-free-language/disability.
[16] Amy Silverman, "Disability Language Style Guide," National Center on Disability and Journalism, August 2021, accessed March 28, 2022, https://ncdj.org/style-guide/.
[17] "Writing About Disability," The NCCSD Clearinghouse and Resource Library, accessed March 28, 2022, https://www.nccsdclearinghouse.org/writing-about-disability.html; Silverman, "Disability Language Style Guide"; Syracuse University, "Language Guide," Disability Cultural Center, accessed March 28, 2022, https://ese.syr.edu/dcc/resources/language-guide/.
[18] "Disability."
[19] "Writing About Disability"; Silverman, "Disability Language Style Guide."
[20] Silverman, "Disability Language Style Guide."

preference, that preference should be utilized.[21] Though specific individuals are not the topic of my study, those who do discuss specific people with disabilities should make every effort to determine the participant's language preference.[22]

As a person without a disability, I have chosen to adopt people-first language throughout this treatise. I do not think I have the right to choose a preference for identity-first language, as having a physical disability is not part of my own identity. Additionally, I am primarily writing about a broad community of people with physical disabilities, which encompasses many diverse disabilities, from a journalistic perspective. I am not a member of this community, nor am I an academic practicing within the field of critical disability theory with the perspective and experience to lean towards identity-first language. As such, I have adopted the people-first style that several guides recommend in this circumstance, and that seems most respectful of the community of people I am writing about.

Concluding Thoughts

In this study, I synthesize diverse theories with examples from preservation's authorized heritage discourse that address accessibility in historic buildings to build an understanding of our field's current mindset towards accessibility. In doing so, I explore how this way of thought came to be and both why and how it should shift if we seek to work within a people-oriented preservation model. I incorporate discussions of change to how we perceive historic façades and entrances, how we understand the relationship between disability and accessibility, and

[21] Silverman, "Disability Language Style Guide"; "Disability."
[22] Silverman, "Disability Language Style Guide."

how our federal accessibility resources recommend that we improve accessibility in historic buildings in order to encourage a holistic revision to this aspect of our practice.

I believe that historic preservationists have a responsibility to make historic buildings as equitably accessible as possible while avoiding accessibility improvements that treat people with disabilities as lesser than people without disabilities. Ultimately, this study is my effort to translate this conviction into practicable change within our field.

CHAPTER II
PEOPLE-ORIENTED PRESERVATION AND PLACE ATTACHMENT THEORY

The National Trust for Historic Preservation (the Trust) published a document titled "Preservation for People: A Vision for the Future" in May of 2017, which asserts a new direction for our field that brings people, instead of building fabric, to the forefront of our practice. The Trust's vision joins several other voices within our field that assert we should reorient preservation around people and communities. In this chapter, I explore various theories of people-oriented preservation to develop a broad understanding of what this redirected practice means. I also introduce the theory of place attachment that, in light of a people-focused preservation movement, helps underscore why it is important for us to reconsider how we approach accessibility in historic buildings. But, before we discuss how our field wants to evolve, we must first understand where preservation has come from. I begin this chapter with a summary of the building and fabric-focused preservation mindset that has influenced many of the pillars that form our practice.

Historic Preservation Origins: Building and Fabric-Focused Preservation

The National Historic Preservation Act (NHPA), which was signed into law in 1966, created the federal framework for historic preservation that, among other things, directs how

we identify and document historic places.[23] The NHPA was the culmination of grassroots preservation work and various federal efforts to collect, as the Historic Sites Act of 1935 described them, "sites that possessed 'exceptional value as commemorating or illustrating the history of the United States.'"[24] The restorations that The Mount Vernon Ladies Association of the Union facilitated at George and Martha Washington's Mount Vernon estate is one of the often-circulated "origin stories" for historic preservation that ultimately led to federal preservation legislation, including the Antiquities Act, the Historic American Buildings Survey (HABS) program, the aforementioned Historic Sites Act of 1935, the creation of the National Trust for Historic Preservation in 1949, and finally, the National Historic Preservation Act. As we will see, preservationists prioritized the importance of material building fabric during this foundational period, primarily because decay and demolition were immediate, pervasive threats.

Grassroots Preservation Efforts

The Mount Vernon Ladies Association formed in 1853 around the common purpose of saving the deteriorating Mount Vernon and, in doing so, protecting the history it represented.[25] In their work *Historic Preservation: An Introduction to Its History, Principles, and Practice,* urban planner Norman Tyler and preservationists Ted Ligibel and Ilene Tyler note that the founder of the association, Ann Pamela Cunningham, stated "'[t]hose who go to the Home in which he lived and died, wish to see in what he lived and died! Let one spot in this grand country of ours

[23] Norman Tyler, Ted J. Ligibel, and Ilene R. Tyler, *Historic Preservation: An Introduction to Its History, Principles, and Practice*, Second Edition (New York, NY: W.W. Norton & Company, 2009), 46.
[24] John H. Sprinkle, Jr., *Crafting Preservation Criteria: The National Register of Historic Places and American Historic Preservation* (New York, NY: Routledge, 2014), 9.
[25] Tyler, Ligibel, and Tyler, *Historic Preservation,* 28.

be saved from change!'"[26] We can infer from this that Cunningham, and the association by extension, sought to restore the physical conditions of the home to what they were when George Washington lived there, and to suspend the home in Washington's time once the work was complete. Due to its association with George Washington, Mount Vernon transformed from a private home to an object that was considered to evoke United States history. From this perspective, the home's physical elements had to be restored to their proper condition and timeframe to reflect that history. The association purchased the estate after the federal government chose not to assist with preservation efforts, successfully raised funds to restore the estate, and continues to manage the site today.[27]

Several other preservation origin stories mirror these grassroots efforts to protect historic building fabric, including Charleston's Old and Historic Charleston historic district ordinance and William Sumner Appleton's Society for the Preservation of New England Antiquities. In Charleston, the city sought to preserve the historic district's communal aesthetic character by requiring approval from the Board of Architectural Review for exterior changes to buildings within the historic district.[28] Appleton's society protected buildings that were beautiful, unique, or had historic associations by purchasing them, restoring them, and "plac[ing] covenants on them requiring that their original uses be retained."[29] In both of these

---

[26] Tyler, Ligibel, and Tyler, *Historic Preservation*, 30.
[27] Tyler, Ligibel, and Tyler, *Historic Preservation,* 30; "Mount Vernon Ladies' Association," George Washington's Mount Vernon, accessed January 22, 2022, https://www.mountvernon.org/preservation/mount-vernon-ladies-association/.
[28] Diane Lea, "America's Preservation Ethos: A Tribute to Enduring Ideals," in *A Richer Heritage: Historic Preservation in the Twenty-First Century*, ed. Robert E. Stipe (Chapel Hill, NC: University of North Carolina Press, 2003), 7.
[29] Ibid., 4.

examples, we see an emphasis on protecting aesthetics because it was the building's appearance that made it significant and justified its preservation.

Federal Preservation Efforts

Congress passed The Antiquities Act, which Tyler, Ligibel, and Tyler describe as "the nation's first historic preservation legislation," in 1906, fifty years after the Mount Vernon Ladies Association formed to preserve Washington's home.[30] Akin to these origin stories, the act echoes a material-focused approach to historic preservation. The act gives presidents the authority to designate "historic landmarks, historic and prehistoric structures, and other objects of historic or scientific interest" that are situated on public land as national monuments.[31] Once designated, various federal agencies are responsible for maintaining the national monuments.[32] Those who destroy, loot, or damage these places can face fines and/or imprisonment.[33]

The Historic American Buildings Survey program, established in 1933, and the Historic Sites Act of 1935 were subsequent federal efforts to document historic places. The HABS's mission was to collect records of diverse types of buildings across the country and ultimately develop a "complete picture of the culture of the times as reflected in the buildings of the period."[34] The Historic Sites Act was similarly structured to identify and document America's historic past through its building fabric, but it also expanded upon the HABS and called for the actual preservation of historic places.[35] Both the HABS and the Historic Sites Act were inspired,

---

[30] Tyler, Ligibel, and Tyler, *Historic Preservation,* 31.
[31] 16 U.S.C. 431-433.
[32] "Antiquities Act of 1906," NPS Archeology Program, accessed January 22, 2022, https://www.nps.gov/archeology/tools/laws/antact.htm.
[33] Ibid.
[34] Tyler, Ligibel, and Tyler, *Historic Preservation,* 39.
[35] U.S. National Park Service, "Historic Sites Act of 1935," Laws, Regulations, & Guidelines, February 25, 2021, https://www.nps.gov/subjects/archeology/historic-sites-act.htm.

in part, by a growing awareness that historic places were quickly being lost to natural disasters, infrastructure, modernism, and urbanization.[36]

Congress chartered The National Trust for Historic Preservation in 1949. While the organization's contemporary role has expanded to include preservation advocacy and education, The Trust was originally founded primarily to own and administer historic properties and to serve as the public face of preservation.[37] The Trust's 1966 publication *With Heritage So Rich* illustrated how much of our historic fabric was no longer extant and thereby emphasized the need for a national historic preservation program.[38]

These federal efforts to protect our vanishing historic resources culminated in the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966. The NHPA: (1) established the National Register of Historic Places, our national record of historic properties, (2) authorized matching state funding for preservation activities, including "surveys, preservation planning, preparation of National Register nominations, and the acquisition and preservation of historic sites and buildings," and (3) established the independent Advisory Council on Historic Preservation.[39] Given that the NHPA was a reaction to *With Heritage So Rich's* alarm bell and stemmed from prior legislation that sought to protect vanishing historic buildings, it is unsurprising that two of these three actions support documenting and protecting material fabric.

The National Historic Preservation Act has been amended several times since 1966, but specific components of the 1980 amendment are particularly relevant to this study because

---

[36] Sprinkle, Jr., *Crafting Preservation Criteria,* 10-11, 30.
[37] Lea, "America's Preservation Ethos" in *A Richer Heritage,* 9.
[38] Tyler, Ligibel, and Tyler, *Historic Preservation,* 46; Lea, "America's Preservation Ethos" in *A Richer Heritage,* 10.
[39] Lea, "America's Preservation Ethos" in *A Richer Heritage,* 11.

they formalized the relationship between national, state, and local preservation practice. This amendment gave "statutory recognition" to state historic preservation programs, defined the responsibilities for State Historic Preservation Officers (SHPOs), and created a framework, including a funding system, for Certified Local Governments (CLGs).[40] SHPOs, and especially CLGs, help preservation work actually happen in communities across the country.[41] While the NHPA and the NPS are sources of our authorized heritage discourse, these state and local agencies are the primary mechanisms that translate this discourse into preservation practice.

Almost sixty years have passed since the National Historic Preservation Act was signed into law. In this time, our field has become adept at preserving historic fabric and there are robust state and local preservation programs across the country. Though these are notable accomplishments, it is important to also recognize the personal identities of those who shaped our field. These individuals were often wealthy, White, and without disabilities, which has influenced the kinds of at-risk historic fabric that we preserve.[42] The National Trust has only recently begun to emphasize the importance of preserving diverse (i.e., non-White) stories in ways that look beyond the integrity of physical materials.[43] The question now becomes: what is

---

[40] Barry Mackintosh, *The National Historic Preservation Act & The National Park Service: A History* (Washington, D.C.: History Division, National Park Service Department of the Interior, 1986), 53, https://heinonline.org/HOL/P?h=hein.beal/nhisprks0001&i=1; Lea, "America's Preservation Ethos" in *A Richer Heritage,* 14; Elizabeth A. Lyon and David L. S. Brook, "The States: The Backbone of Preservation," in *A Richer Heritage: Historic Preservation in the Twenty-First Century*, ed. Robert E. Stipe (Chapel Hill, NC: University of North Carolina Press, 2003), 83-85.

[41] Lyon and Brook, "The States: The Backbone of Preservation" in *A Richer Heritage,* 86.

[42] Max Page and Marla R. Miller, "Introduction," in *Bending the Future: 50 Ideas for the Next 50 Years of Historic Preservation in the United States*, ed. Max Page and Marla R. Miller (Amherst and Boston, MA: University of Massachusetts Press, 2016), 9; Gail Dubrow, "From Minority to Majority: Building On and Moving Beyond the Politics of Identity in Historic Preservation," in *Bending the Future: 50 Ideas for the Next 50 Years of Historic Preservation in the United States*, ed. Max Page and Marla R. Miller (Amherst and Boston, MA: University of Massachusetts Press, 2016), 72–74.

[43] National Trust for Historic Preservation, "Preservation for People: A Vision for the Future," 3.

next for our field? The following section illustrates that reconsidering why and how we preserve can bring meaning beyond preserving for preservation's sake to the work that we do.

People-Focused Preservation

In the twenty-first century, a different way of approaching our field has emerged within the United States that focuses on preserving in ways that serve people and communities. Within this alternative approach, what we preserve, meaning buildings, places, landscapes, etc., is still important. But, these places are reoriented as instruments of this people-focused practice and become less precious as objects to be preserved, frozen in time. As I will discuss in this section, these new, people-oriented preservation models challenge various aspects of our authorized heritage discourse. Though the National Trust, the predominant preservation advocacy organization in the U.S., has itself called for people-oriented change in our practice, these ideas have yet to be incorporated into our AHD in a meaningful way that will begin to redirect our practice.

I find this people-focused approach so compelling because, as the name implies, it orients our work around exploring and preserving what people value in historic properties. This gives deeper relevance to our practice and to why we continue to preserve historic places. More importantly, it means that the work that we do can have a positive impact on people's lives. In this section, I will explore three of the dominant voices in people-focused preservation: Randall Mason's values-centered preservation, the National Trust for Historic Preservation's people-oriented preservation, and Christopher Matthews' people's preservation, to develop an understanding of this conversation.

Randall Mason's Values-Centered Preservation

Preservationist Randall Mason's values-centered preservation is rooted in an essential criticism that we interpret historic significance according to our professional preservation values. This practice leads to a narrow, incomplete understanding of significance that becomes fixed, which creates an equally incomplete understanding of why and how we should preserve historic places.[44] Mason explains that this is particularly problematic because cultivating public memory through historic fabric has become a critical component of our work.[45] Preserving historic fabric in a fixed state because it is the embodiment of historic significance does not allow for these changes in and multiplicities of meaning that are inherent to preserving public memory.[46] Mason argues that we must reconsider significance, which influences how we preserve such historic fabric, as multifaceted and fluid because public memory is likewise dimensional and ever-evolving.[47] In other words, we must allow the reasons why places are important to evolve so that they continue to evoke cultural meaning.

Mason's solution, which he has named values-centered preservation, proposes that we should recognize that historic places have many values, i.e., characteristics, outside of our professional, fabric-focused lens, some of which may conflict and change, but all of which are relevant.[48] We must work with non-preservationist partners to learn the diverse historic and contemporary values that people ascribe to these places, then use that information to craft a preservation plan that accounts for these multifaceted values.[49] Mason explains that "values-

[44] Mason, "Theoretical and Practical Arguments for Values-Centered Preservation."
[45] Mason, "Fixing Historic Preservation: A Constructive Critique of 'Significance,'" 65.
[46] Ibid.
[47] Ibid.
[48] Mason, "Theoretical and Practical Arguments for Values-Centered Preservation."
[49] Ibid.

centered preservation decisions place priority on understanding *why* the fabric is valuable and *how* to keep it that way, and only then moving on to decide how to 'arrest decay.'"[50] This approach will lead to more informed, holistic preservation that reflects what makes the place important to *people* instead of exclusively preservationists.

The National Trust for Historic Preservation's People-Focused Preservation

In 2017, the National Trust for Historic Preservation presented its version of reorienting historic preservation around people in the form of a whitepaper titled "Preservation for People: A Vision for the Future." This publication reflects on the progress our field has made in the previous fifty years and proposes how our practice should evolve moving forward. The Trust notes that this document is the result of collaborations with preservationists and those "closely aligned with or affected by our work."[51] This is notable because it indicates that practitioners in our field generally want to refocus around people and communities.

The Trust proposes three essential components of people-focused preservation. This vision for our practice: "hears, understands, and honors the full diversity of the ever-evolving American story," "creates and nurtures more equitable, healthy, resilient, vibrant, and sustainable communities," and "collaborates with new and existing partners to address fundamental social issues and make the world better."[52] Together, these principles assert that

[50] Mason, "Theoretical and Practical Arguments for Values-Centered Preservation."
[51] Stephanie Meeks, "Presenting 'Preservation for People: A Vision for the Future,'" accessed May 2, 2022, http://forum.savingplaces.org/blogs/stephanie-k-meeks/2017/05/18/presenting-preservation-for-people-a-vision-for-the-future. The Trust has outlined the types of people they collaborated with in this whitepaper, but they have not explained how these individuals were chosen, their demographics, or how much influence different kinds of opinions had on the final product. Nonetheless, this document is worthy of discussion because the Trust is a dominant voice in the preservation field.
[52] National Trust for Historic Preservation, "Preservation for People: A Vision for the Future," 4.

preservation should become a tool for social change instead of primarily a means for protecting and recording building fabric.

The Trust supports each component with suggested actions that will help us move our practice in this new direction. Many of these steps are component-specific, but there are two recurring themes across the suggested paths: we must collaborate with others, particularly non-experts, to help move this shift forward, and we must reconsider current aspects of our practice that create barriers between us and what we want to achieve.[53] There is value in considering these steps from a synergistic perspective, as gaining insight by collaborating with people outside of our field can inspire us to rework the formal and informal guidelines that typically shape our practice.

Christopher Matthews' People's Preservation

Historical archaeologist Christopher Matthews introduced his theory of people-focused preservation, which he names people's preservation, in response to and in criticism of the Trust's "Preservation for People." Matthews proposes an alternative way of understanding preservation practice oriented around people, which stems from his critique that the Trust's vision continues to primarily serve the interests of those our practice has historically served: White property owners.[54] In light of this, Matthews' vision of people's preservation "aims to revise the struggle of people to be recognized as historically significant in the language of

[53] National Trust for Historic Preservation, "Preservation for People: A Vision for the Future," 5-10.
[54] Christopher N. Matthews, "A People's Preservation: Urban Erasures in Essex County, NJ,"47.

contemporary historic preservation."[55] He seeks to celebrate the "everyday events and common people" who have not historically benefitted from our practice.[56]

Matthews challenges our fabric-centric belief that building features are considered to convey history by asserting that "history is what people do with buildings, not an attribute of the buildings themselves," and he has crafted people's preservation around this truism.[57] People's preservation seeks to serve people by bringing the past and present stories of people and communities to the forefront of what we preserve and how we preserve it. Matthews counters the Trust's three pillars with three components of people's preservation. Such a movement: encourages a narrative approach to significance rooted in what people do and have done with historic places, understands historic sites as assets that are already beautiful and that should therefore only be "equitably improved" in ways that do not undermine the benefits they already provide to people and communities, and empowers all, especially struggling communities, by ensuring that people have what they need to sustain their community, their heritage, and the historic significance that these sustaining actions create.[58] Matthews' people's preservation is a refreshing way of working with communities to understand what these historic places can (and already are) doing for them and then preserving those valued meanings and uses.

These three interpretations of people-focused preservation are clearly distinct, but they all argue that we must allow for historic places to have diverse meanings that stem from what

[55] Matthews, "A People's Preservation," 47.
[56] Ibid., 48.
[57] Ibid., 60.
[58] Ibid., 60-62.

people and communities, not exclusively preservationists, value. This idea is important because it requires us to reconsider what historic fabric means and how we preserve it. As Mason and Matthews make clear, our contemporary understanding of significance that elevates material fabric does not always align with preservation oriented around people. Venerating the physical characteristics of a historic place is instead a remnant of our fabric-focused roots. If we want to move towards a people-focused preservation, we must reconsider significance as a flexible, fluid embodiment of what people and communities value.

Theories of Place Attachment

Place attachment theory reinforces the idea that people derive meaning from places primarily through the experiences they have with them. Put very simply, place attachments are the emotional relationships that people develop with places. The word place can mean many things within place attachment theory, a specific building, a neighborhood, a street, a setting, and beyond. As environmental psychologists Lynne Manzo and Patrick Devine-Wright illustrate in their work *Place Attachment: Advances in Theory, Method and Applications,* there are many ways of studying how these relationships happen, and many disciplines that do so.[59] Two unquestionable axioms, regardless of how this phenomenon is researched, are that these relationships do happen, and they are important for our well-being and sense of identity. I will explore these two axioms in this section, specifically how these relationships develop and why they are important, to illustrate the correlation between people-focused preservation and place attachment theory.

[59] Lynne C. Manzo and Patrick Devine-Wright, "Introduction," in *Place Attachment: Advances in Theory, Methods, and Applications*, ed. Lynne C. Manzo and Patrick Devine-Wright, Second Edition (London: Routledge, 2020), 1–9.

The answer to "how do people build relationships with places?" might seem obvious—they go to them and interact with them. While this answer is not necessarily wrong, it is far too simplistic and incomplete. Sociologist Jennifer Cross, in her 2015 work "Processes of Place Attachment," proposes seven types of place attachments: sensory, narrative, historical, spiritual, ideological, commodifying, and material dependence.[60] All of these processes are interactional, meaning that they develop through actions and interactions people have with and within places.[61] They can overlap, evolve, and develop across different lengths of time.[62]

Lynne Manzo's 2005 research on place attachment has revealed that "it is not simply the places themselves that are significant, but rather what can be called 'experience-in-place' that creates meaning."[63] In other words, people develop bonds with places through the experiences they have with (inside, related to, etc.) them, especially when those experiences are particularly meaningful. The physical appearance of the place may contribute to the attachment, but it is often not as significant for the development of place attachments as what happened at/in the place and what meaning those experiences embody. Indeed, environmental psychologists Leila Scannell and Robert Gifford reiterate that people develop stronger attachments with places that evoke memories, and that it is often the meaning that physical features hold, rather than the appearance of the features themselves, that contribute to attachments with place.[64]

---

[60] Jennifer Eileen Cross, "Processes of Place Attachment: An Interactional Framework," *Symbolic Interaction* 38, no. 4 (November 2015): 501, https://doi.org/10.1002/symb.198.
[61] Ibid.
[62] Ibid., 514-515.
[63] Lynne C. Manzo, "For Better or Worse: Exploring Multiple Dimensions of Place Meaning," *Journal of Environmental Psychology* 25, no. 1 (March 2005): 74, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvp.2005.01.002.
[64] Leila Scannell and Robert Gifford, "Defining Place Attachment: A Tripartite Organizing Framework," *Journal of Environmental Psychology* 30, no. 1 (March 2010): 2, 5, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvp.2009.09.006.

These place attachments are important because they make up part of a person's identity. Landscape architects Mina Najafi and Mustafa Kamal Bin Mohd Shariff explain that places of meaning "play a very important role in developing and maintaining self-identity and group identity of people."[65] Manzo also found that places with which people develop attachments are essential to their identities, specifically because they can help reinforce them and help people develop a better understanding of themselves.[66] Though this may not be an exhaustive list, Manzo found that people develop relationships with places that "reflect people's evolving identity; provide opportunities for privacy, introspection and reflection; serve as transitional markers as well as bridges to the past; and reflect the salience of safety, threat, and belonging which are fundamentally connected to social identities." [67] Scannell and Gifford reiterate this understanding of place attachments as components of identity, explaining that places with which people develop attachments can "come to represent who they are…and can sometimes be incorporated, at the most personal level, into one's self-definition."[68]

Place attachment theory helps to underscore why these ideas of a people-focused preservation movement are so important. These findings demonstrate that people draw meaning from places according to the experiences that they have with them, experiences (and meanings) that help create and reinforce identity. The meaning and bonds that people create with places are not primarily rooted in their physical characteristics, that which our federal preservation resources typically focus on preserving. These relationships instead are often

---

[65] Mina Najafi, "The Concept of Place Attachment in Environmental Psychology," *Sustainable Architecture* 45 (2012): 7638.
[66] Manzo, "For Better or Worse," 75-76.
[67] Ibid., 74.
[68] Scannell and Gifford, "Defining Place Attachment," 3.

more nuanced than that and develop through engaging with place. Place attachment theory reinforces that orienting what we preserve and how we understand significance within a people-focused framework will help us preserve the aspects of "everyday" historic places that evoke meaning for those who have created relationships with them.

Concluding Thoughts

The historic preservation field, specifically the federal legislation that established such important aspects of our practice as the National Register of Historic Places, is rooted in a fabric-focused preservation mindset. This perspective developed out of necessity, as our federal legislation was a response to widespread loss of historic properties. Over the course of time, our field has recognized flaws in this material-centric lens that have inspired new ways of thinking about preservation that instead focus on people. The various interpretations of people-focused preservation I have discussed illustrate that there is no singular way to redirect our field. But, common elements between these interpretations emphasize that we must begin preserving in ways that bring the experiences that people have to the forefront of our practice.

A people-focused preservation practice celebrates and preserves what people value about places, not just physical materials. Place attachment theory explains that people develop relationships with places, relationships that create meaning and value, through the experiences that they have with and within them. These relationships are so essential that they can become parts of our identity and shape who we are. This indicates that we must ensure that everyone, an unqualified term that includes people with disabilities, can engage with historic places in order to develop these relationships with them. However, our current federal accessibility resources, which I explore in the next chapter, reflect a fabric-focused mindset that favors

significance and character-defining features over equitable access for all people. I argue that this people-focused preservation mindset, which understands place meaning through experience, both requires and creates an opportunity for preservationists to reconsider how we approach accessibility in historic buildings, especially in those repurposed historic places that are most likely to be a part of “day-to-day” experiences.

CHAPTER III
THE ADA AND ACCESSIBILITY IN OUR AUTHORIZED HERITAGE DISCOURSE

The Americans with Disabilities Act is a landmark piece of civil rights legislation that, in combination with the ADA Standards for Accessible Design, seeks to create a standard of equal access for people with disabilities. The act addresses many areas and aspects of the built environment, including historic buildings. The ADA is one of the predominant federal accessibility standards that influence historic preservation work, as several components of our authorized heritage discourse reference this legislation when suggesting how we should improve accessibility in historic places. While historic preservationists must continue to abide by all applicable legal accessibility requirements for historic buildings, I argue throughout this study that working within a people-focused preservation model requires that we instead embrace equitable access as our standard for creating accessibility improvements in these places.

There are three distinct components within this chapter: a discussion of the ADA's requirements for privately-owned commercial historic buildings, an analysis of the relationship our authorized heritage discourse encourages between accessibility and historic fabric, and an exploration of our field's emphasis on preserving historic façades and primary entrances. Through these discussions, I seek to create a broad understanding of the fabric-focused

approach our federal resources encourage for improving accessibility in historic buildings and demonstrate the sense of "other than" people without disabilities this practice can evoke for people with disabilities. In doing so, I assert that reorienting our accessibility approach around a standard of equitable access will help preservationists work towards and within a people-oriented preservation model.

The Americans with Disabilities Act

The Americans with Disabilities Act is the culmination of previous federal efforts to establish accessibility as a civil right for people with disabilities. Federal precursors, which had varying degrees of success, primarily focused on ensuring access to public buildings, while the ADA has a much broader scope. In this section, I begin with an overview of federal predecessors to the ADA, then move on to a discussion of the ADA itself. This both creates context for the ADA and illustrates the history of seemingly well-intended but nonetheless flawed legislation that is also reflected in the ADA. I argue that these flaws should inspire preservationists to reconsider relying on the Americans with Disabilities Act as our standard for improving accessibility in historic buildings if we seek to work within a people-focused preservation model.

Federal Precursors to the ADA

The American National Standards Institute, a non-profit organization that develops voluntary industry standards, published the first national accessibility document in 1961, *ANSI 117.1- 1961: American National Standard Specifications for Making Buildings and Facilities*

Accessible to, and Usable by, the Physically Handicapped (*ANSI 117.1*).[69] *ANSI 117.1* was developed through research with people with disabilities, and primarily people who used wheelchairs, about lived experiences they had with barriers to access.[70] While this publication was not and is not a law, it served as an accessibility standard, albeit legally unenforceable, for newly constructed buildings and major renovations until the ADA was passed thirty years later.[71] It also created a foundation for the first federal physical accessibility legislation, the Architectural Barriers Act (ABA), which Congress passed in 1968.[72] Bess Williamson, a historian of design and material culture, explains that *ANSI 117.1* "established certain principles of publicly governed design: it defined access in terms of minimum quantities; it emphasized non-intrusiveness in the designed environment overall; and it maintained that it was the responsibility of disabled people to find and navigate existing accommodations."[73] While *ANSI 117.1* did include suggestions for changing environments by adding ramps, adjusting table heights, moving water fountains, etc., its overarching message was that access should be created inexpensively, in ways that did not significantly change building design.[74]

In addition to encouraging a bare-bones, qualified approach to accessibility, two of *ANSI 117.1's* notable shortcomings are that the publication did not have any significant influence on existing buildings, and that there was no complementary legal framework to consistently

---

[69] "ANSI Introduction," About ANSI, accessed April 11, 2022, https://ansi.org/about/introduction.
[70] Bess Williamson, *Accessible America: A History of Disability and Design* (New York: New York University Press, 2019), 63-64.
[71] Ibid., 67.
[72] Ibid., 64.
[73] Ibid. While *ANSI 117.1* is still an active publication that was last revised in 2017, the ADA is the legal standard for accessibility in public spaces. *ANSI 117.1* is now primarily an accessibility standard for buildings that do not fall within the scope of the ADA, i.e., private residences.
[74] Ibid., 64-67.

enforce these standards nationwide. Because *ANSI 117.1's* standards were mostly adopted on a local level to guide accessibility in new construction and major renovations, they did not effectively impact historic sites, or any extant building of the time.[75] Critical disability studies scholar Aimi Hamraie further notes that the *ANSI 117.1* standards were voluntary, and consequently there was a general unfamiliarity that they existed.[76] Though the publication of *ANSI 117.1* is historically meaningful as the first significant effort to make buildings accessible, the standards themselves were a practicably flawed effort to encourage physical accessibility.

The Architectural Barriers Act of 1968, which adopted the provisions of *ANSI 117.1* as its accessibility standard, was a partial remedy to these flaws.[77] Unlike *ANSI 117.1* alone, the act's provisions were theoretically more influential because the ABA was a law passed by Congress. The Architectural Barriers Act required all buildings "designed, built, or altered with federal dollars or leased by federal agencies after August 12, 1968 to be accessible."[78]

This mandate encompassed a wide range of buildings, from courthouses, to post offices, to federally-funded schools. However, like *ANSI 117.1*, the act did not include any enforcement provisions and consequently had a limited impact.[79] The act also resembled *ANSI 117.1* in that it only applied to buildings and facilities constructed after it was passed; any federal site, historic or otherwise, that was built before 1968 and not subsequently altered was excluded from the act's provisions. The ABA represents a federal commitment to improving accessibility in the

---

[75] Williamson, *Accessible America,* 67.
[76] Aimi Hamraie, *Building Access: Universal Design and the Politics of Disability* (Minneapolis, MN: University of Minnesota Press, 2017), 131.
[77] Ibid., 137.
[78] "Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) of 1968," About the U.S. Access Board, accessed February 8, 2022, https://www.access-board.gov/law/aba.html.
[79] Hamraie, *Building Access,* 224.

built environment, but it nonetheless mirrored many of the preceding standard's flaws, including little influence on existing buildings and a lack of a framework for enforcement.

Congress passed the final significant precursor to the ADA that addressed physical accessibility on a broad scale only five years later in 1973. Section 504 of the 1973 Rehabilitation Act establishes access to federal buildings and services as a civil right for people with disabilities.[80] In an improvement upon its predecessors, this act also creates a means of enforcing the right to access in the form of the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board, which is tasked with creating and monitoring implementation of accessibility standards in federal buildings.[81] Unfortunately, the Board did little to enforce Section 504 for at least four years after the law was passed. This is likely in part because the act does not exclusively apply to new construction; it requires all federal buildings to become accessible, regardless of age, and thus there was considerable pushback against the broad scope of its impact.[82] The Board ultimately began enforcing Section 504 only after disability activists protested against their reluctance to take action in 1977.[83] While Section 504 is an improvement from the Architectural Barriers Act and *ANSI 117.1*, the enforcement measures that make it so are only effective if the Board fulfills its responsibility.

<u>The Americans with Disabilities Act</u>

Congress passed the Americans with Disabilities Act nearly twenty years later in 1990, arguably directly in response to disability activists' "Capitol Crawl" protest demanding that this

[80] Hamraie, *Building Access,* 131.
[81] Ibid., 224.
[82] Williamson, *Accessible America,* 131.
[83] Hamraie, *Building Access,* 193.

landmark legislation become law.[84] In contrast to its predecessors, the ADA prohibits discrimination against people with disabilities and requires accessibility on a broad scale in both public and private spheres. The introduction to the ADA states that the law's intent is to "provide a clear and comprehensive national mandate for the elimination of discrimination against individuals with disabilities" by establishing standards for accessibility and ensuring that "the Federal Government plays a central role in enforcing th[ose] standards."[85]

There are two main components to the ADA: its five titles, often called sections, and the accompanying *ADA Standards for Accessible Design*. With the exception of Title V, each section of the ADA addresses accessibility rights within a particular category of place or activity. Title I discusses employment and prohibits employers from discriminating against people with disabilities; Title II requires that public services available through state and local governments be accessible; Title III establishes accessibility requirements for privately-owned public accommodations; Title IV details how telecommunications should be accessible; and Title V is a "miscellaneous" section that includes various provisions regarding the ADA as a whole.[86]

The corresponding *Standards* specifically outline minimum technical accessibility requirements for properties that fall under the purview of Title II or III; they establish a baseline for how such places should be made accessible.[87] Example subjects include design requirements

---

[84] Hamraie, *Building Access,* 13; Lennard J. Davis, *Enabling Acts: The Hidden Story of How The Americans with Disabilities Act Gave the Largest U.S. Minority Its Rights* (Boston, MA: Beacon Press, 2015), 191-192. On March 12, 1990, disability activists crawled up the eighty-two steps of the Capitol building in Washington, D.C. to protest the slow pace at which the ADA was passing through the House of Representatives and demand that Congress pass the act. This protest is commonly referenced as the "Capitol Crawl."

[85] Purpose, 28 C.F.R. § 36.101 (2022).

[86] The ADA National Network, "An Overview of the Americans With Disabilities Act," accessed April 5, 2022, https://adata.org/factsheet/ADA-overview.

[87] Department of Justice, *2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design* (Washington, D.C.: Department of Justice, 2010), 1.

for ramps, elevators, and accessible parking spaces. While Titles II and III describe the ways in which applicable properties should be accessible, the *Standards* detail how to implement those requirements.

Title III of the ADA: Accessibility Requirements for Historic Properties

The ADA is the first and foremost federal legislation to, under Title III, prohibit discrimination against people with disabilities in privately-owned spaces that the public has access to, which I more concisely describe as commercial properties, and to codify accessibility requirements for such places. Most non-residential, privately-owned commercial properties fall under the purview of this title, including restaurants, movie theaters, grocery stores, service establishments, hospitals, and beyond.[88] These facilities are among the many public places that people are likely to encounter throughout the course of their lives.

I have chosen to focus on the ADA's Title III accessibility requirements for this study in part because of its broad scope, but also because commercial spaces are frequently the subject of our work, and because they are tied to a considerable source of historic rehabilitation funding, the Federal Historic Preservation Tax Credits. Additionally, many of these commercial properties include the day-to-day historic buildings that fall within the scope of this study. The "everydayness" of these buildings creates opportunities for people to regularly engage with them and, in turn, create and sustain the relationships with place that people-oriented preservation encourages us to preserve.

There are two physical accessibility subsections within this title that apply to historic buildings, the barrier removal provisions and the standards for new construction and

[88] Definitions, 28 C.F.R. § 36.104 (2022).

alterations. Title III's barrier removal provisions require public accommodations to remove architectural barriers in existing buildings, including historic places, as long as doing so is "readily achievable," which the ADA broadly defines as "easily accomplishable and able to be carried out without much difficulty or expense."[89] Many of the barrier removal examples are relatively familiar ideas, including installing ramps, widening doors, creating curb cuts, installing grab bars, and moving bathroom partitions.[90] The examples do not include what may be considered more significant changes, such as installing elevators and lifts or adding new accessible bathrooms.[91] The purpose of this subsection is to make it easier for people with disabilities to experience these public places, so long as doing so will not create a financial burden for the owner. Those who own historic buildings must comply with these requirements, providing that doing so meets the ADA's cited definition of readily achievable.

The standards for new construction and alterations have more substantial accessibility requirements than do the barrier removal provisions. For preservation purposes, the new construction standards apply to any historic building additions, while the alteration standards affect alteration projects for historic buildings. New construction should be "readily accessible to and usable by" people with disabilities according to the *ADA Standards for Accessible Design*, except in rare circumstances where terrain prevents full compliance.[92] In those rare cases, the building should still be made fully accessible in accordance with the *Standards* except where it

[89] Definitions, 28 C.F.R. § 36.104 (2022); Removal of Barriers, 28 C.F.R. § 36.304 (2022).
[90] Removal of Barriers, 28 C.F.R. § 36.304 (2022).
[91] Ibid.
[92] New Construction, 28 C.F.R. § 36.401 (2022). The original 1991 ADA Standards for Accessible Design were revised in 2010. Which version of the Standards applies depends on when the new construction was built/when the alteration was made. Any new construction built or alterations made as of the writing of this study must comply with the 2010 Standards.

is structurally impracticable.[93] While pervasive accessibility is required for historic building additions, this standard does not extend to the original historic fabric unless it is also altered.

The ADA's definition of alterations encompasses renovations, rehabilitations, historic restoration, and various other structural changes.[94] Altered portions of historic buildings must be made accessible to the maximum extent feasible according to the technical guidelines within *ADA Standards for Accessible Design*, while unaltered portions only need comply with the Title III barrier removal provisions.[95] Under the "maximum extent feasible" threshold, less than full compliance with the *Standards* is only permissible when the building's structure makes such compliance "virtually impossible."[96]

Alterations that affect areas of the building's primary function, meaning the main activity or experience the building provides (e.g., the dining area within a restaurant or the shopping area of a grocery store), should also create an accessible path of travel throughout those areas to the maximum extent feasible.[97] This means that everyone should be able to navigate to and around this area; bathrooms and drinking fountains that serve this space should also be accessible.[98] If making the path of travel fully accessible will exceed twenty percent of the overall cost of the alteration project, then this space should be made accessible to the extent that it does not exceed that threshold, and priority should be placed on making the entrance and the space itself accessible.[99] Mechanical rooms, storage spaces, bathrooms,

---

[93] New Construction, 28 C.F.R. § 36.401 (2022).
[94] Alterations, 28 C.F.R. § 36.402 (2022).
[95] Ibid.
[96] Ibid.
[97] Alterations: Path of Travel, 28 C.F.R. § 36.403 (2022).
[98] Ibid.
[99] Ibid.

and entrances do not contain primary functions according to the ADA, and thus alterations made in these and other similar areas are excluded from this path of travel requirement.[100]

Title III includes an exception to the standards for new construction and alterations for historic buildings that are either designated or eligible for designation on the National Register of Historic places, or that are designated at a local or state level. Owners of these places do not have to achieve accessibility to the maximum extent feasible if the corresponding State Historic Preservation Officer deems that doing so will "threaten or destroy the historic significance of the building."[101] When a SHPO makes such a determination, historic building owners can provide alternative means of access that are not in full compliance with the *ADA Standards for Accessible Design*.[102] This may include providing videos in lieu of ensuring accessibility in certain areas, only ensuring that one story in a multi-story building is accessible, or limiting the number of accessible entrances.[103]

The Americans with Disabilities Act is an important law that protects the rights of people with disabilities on a far broader scale than any of the federal accessibility legislation that predates it. However, Title III's exceptions for historic buildings can permit the preservation of historic fabric at the expense of equitable access for everyone. The barrier removal provisions require relatively minimal accessibility improvements in historic buildings that do not undergo renovations, which creates conditions in which public places can remain largely inaccessible for

---

[100] Alterations: Path of Travel, 28 C.F.R. § 36.403 (2022).
[101] Alterations: Historic Preservation, 28 C.F.R. § 36.405 (2022).
[102] Gail S. Kelley, "ADA Requirements for Historic Properties," *Structure Magazine*, November 2014, accessed October 23, 2021, https://www.structuremag.org/?p=7540.
[103] Kelley, "ADA Requirements for Historic Properties"; Marcela A. Rhoads, *Applying the ADA: Designing for the 2010 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Accessible Design in Multiple Building Types* (Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, Incorporated, 2013), 253, http://ebookcentral.proquest.com/lib/goucher-ebooks/detail.action?docID=1161974.

people with disabilities. While ramps certainly improve accessibility, their impact becomes less significant if historic hallways are too narrow for a person who uses a wheelchair to navigate the interior, or if none of the bathrooms are accessible.

The exceptions for historic buildings within the accessibility standards for new construction and renovations are also problematic because they communicate that building fabric can be more important than a person's right to experience the historic place. Additionally, the alternative means of access that this exception permits can convey that people with disabilities are "other than" people without disabilities because these alternative means inherently provide inequivalent access to people depending on their level of ability. Given these concerns, I argue that moving towards a people-focused preservation model requires that we embrace an accessibility standard beyond the ADA, that of equitable access, when designing accessibility improvements for historic buildings.

Title III in Practice: Contemporary Litigation

Title III of the ADA offers two enforcement avenues for people with disabilities who assert that their rights have been or will be violated.[104] Individuals can either take civil action in the form of a private lawsuit or submit a complaint to the federal department responsible for enforcing this title, the Department of Justice (DoJ).[105] Upon receipt of a formal complaint, the DoJ may attempt to resolve the violation through a mediation program, a formal investigation and compliance review, or via a lawsuit if the Department feels there is a pattern of

[104] A proposed inaccessible building design is an example of a circumstance in which a person with a disability might choose to take civil action because they anticipate that their rights will be violated.
[105] "ADA Title III Technical Assistance Manual," accessed April 6, 2022, https://www.ada.gov/taman3.html.

discrimination or that the violation is generally important to the public.[106] The ADA encourages all parties to resolve violations through means that are faster and less expensive than formal court proceedings whenever possible, which may include engaging in settlement negotiations, arbitration, a minitrial, or other types of dispute resolution.[107]

This enforcement framework is important because it provides a means for people with disabilities to pursue ADA violations. But, it places the burden of assessing ADA compliance on people with disabilities; there is no complementary proactive measure to ensure that buildings are accessible, such as a Board responsible for conducting accessibility audits. This means that many buildings that should be accessible according to the ADA, historic and otherwise, are still inaccessible to people with disabilities, and may remain so unless someone chooses to take legal action. In this section, I provide an overview of contemporary ADA lawsuits to illustrate the accessibility challenges that people with disabilities continue to experience despite the passing of the ADA. These challenges reinforce my assertion that preservationists should embrace a standard of equitable access to historic buildings if we seek to work within a people-focused preservation model.

Survey of Title III Litigation

There are nearly 150 Title III lawsuits on the Department of Justice's ADA enforcement website that have been settled in the past five years.[108] Of these lawsuits, approximately thirty cases address either barrier removal violations or physical accessibility violations in new

[106] "ADA Title III Technical Assistance Manual"; United States Department of Justice, "File a Complaint," accessed April 6, 2022, https://beta.ada.gov/file-a-complaint/.
[107] "ADA Title III Technical Assistance Manual."
[108] "ADA Enforcement," Information and Technical Assistance on the Americans with Disabilities Act, United States Department of Justice Civil Rights Division, accessed February 12, 2022, https://www.ada.gov/enforce_current.htm#TitleIII.

construction and renovations.[109] Most of the new construction and renovation violations occur in renovated areas of buildings that predate the ADA; violations in new buildings represent a minority of these settlements.[110] These lawsuits span the country, from New Jersey, to Connecticut, to Kentucky, to California. They address issues such as inaccessible medical facilities, restaurants, hotels, auditoriums, and beyond. The specific settlement requirements vary from case to case, but they generally all require that the facility owner remediate the violation(s) within a certain timeframe (six months, eighteen months, etc.).

These 150 settlements represent a small portion of all of the Title III lawsuits that are filed every year. Seyfarth, a blog that attorneys who specialize in Title III litigation author, published findings in August of 2021 using collated numbers from the federal court's docketing system that 10,163 Title III lawsuits were filed in 2018, 11,053 were filed in 2019, 10,982 were filed in 2020, and 6,304 had been filed by the midyear point of 2021.[111] The authors further note that these counts are solely based on federal court filings; they do not include the "significant number" of Title III lawsuits filed in state courts, nor do they include demand letters that individuals submit directly to businesses and that are settled outside of a lawsuit.[112]

It is unclear what percentage of these counts represent barrier removal violations and failure to meet the accessibility requirements for new and renovated buildings, as well as how many of the lawsuits are settled in the plaintiff's favor. It is also unclear what percentage of these lawsuits impact historic buildings. However, the numbers alone are significant because

---

[109] "ADA Enforcement."
[110] Ibid.
[111] Minh Vu, Kristina Launey, and Susan Ryan, "ADA Title III Federal Mid-Year Lawsuit Numbers at an All-Time High," ADA Title III: News and Insights, August 18, 2021, https://www.adatitleiii.com/2021/08/ada-title-iii-federal-mid-year-lawsuit-numbers-at-an-all-time-high/.
[112] Ibid.

they represent an ongoing conflict between owners of public accommodations and people with disabilities over their accessibility rights. Regardless of the number of Title III lawsuits that are settled in the plaintiff's favor, these case numbers illustrate that people with disabilities continue to struggle for accessibility in commercial properties.

In 2021, the *New York Times Magazine* published an article about Albert Dytch, who has filed over 100 ADA lawsuits. When asked why he files lawsuits instead of sending letters to businesses, Dytch explained that the letters have not worked: "he has tried again and again, only to go back to a business and see the same barriers in place."[113] A 2004 *Baltimore Sun* article details the many locations where Bob Reuters has needed to legally challenge inaccessible environments, including City Hall, the B&O Railroad Museum, a model train store, a cooking school, and Peter Pan Bus Lines.[114] These examples, along with the volume of lawsuits that are pursued every year, underscore that though the ADA provides a legal means for people with disabilities to conduct this struggle for access, it does not prevent the struggle itself from occurring. This is true for both contemporary buildings and the historic properties that fall within our practice.

The ADA expands and confirms accessibility rights for people with disabilities, and I recognize that historic preservationists must, at minimum, continue to legally abide by the Title III standards. However, our field has expressed a desire to move towards a people-focused preservation movement that preserves meanings derived from experience instead of

---

[113] Lauren Markham, "The Man Who Filed More Than 180 Disability Lawsuits," *The New York Times Magazine*, July 21, 2021, https://www.nytimes.com/2021/07/21/magazine/americans-with-disabilities-act.html.
[114] Michael Ollove, "Mr. Accessibility; Bob Reuter Is Snarky, Irascible and Completely Unapologetic. But He Has Also Done More than Any Other Private Citizen in the State to Make Baltimore a Livable Place for People in Wheelchairs," *The Sun*, March 29, 2004, sec. TODAY.

emphasizing historic fabric. Everyone needs to be able to access historic buildings to develop relationships with them, and this ongoing struggle for accessibility demonstrates that the Title III regulations do not guarantee that people with disabilities will be able to do so. Given this, I assert that adopting a standard of equitable access that complies with and yet reaches beyond the Title III requirements will encourage preservationists to create equivalent opportunities for this meaning-making to happen.

Federal Accessibility Resources

While the ADA establishes many of the legal accessibility standards that historic preservationists must abide by, several of our federal preservation resources, including *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards* and the NPS's Preservation Briefs, interpret these requirements in terms of how they *should* influence historic preservation work. In the following section, I will explore these examples of our authorized heritage discourse to understand how they represent our field's perspective and practice on making historic buildings more accessible, a perspective that also informs regional and local areas of practice.

The Secretary of the Interior's Standards and Guidelines for Rehabilitating Historic Properties

The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties and their accompanying *Guidelines* are, as the NPS describes them, "a critical part of the framework of the national preservation program. They are widely used at the federal, state, and local levels to guide work on historic buildings, and they also have been adopted by Certified Local Governments and historic preservation commissions across the nation."[115] These *Standar*ds and

[115] Kay D. Weeks and Anne E. Grimmer, *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings* (Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of the Interior, National Park Service, 2017), vii.

Guidelines are worthy of analysis if we seek to shift our field's preservation model because they are one of the dominant components within our AHD that direct how historic preservation work should proceed across all levels of practice. Given their expansive influence, revisions to this federal resource will also catalyze change within state and local preservation practice.

As the document's title suggests, there are two components to this resource, *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards* and the complementary *Guidelines*. The *Standards* describe how preservationists should approach four types of treatments for historic properties that are either listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places. These treatments include preservation, rehabilitation, restoration, and reconstruction. Preservation treatments sustain the existing property and materials; rehabilitation adapts a historic property for contemporary, new use while preserving its historic character; restoration is the process of returning a historic property's features to a specific time period; and reconstruction involves recreating a "non-surviving" historic property out of new materials, a treatment which is generally only permitted for instructional purposes.[116] The corresponding *Guidelines* for preservation, rehabilitation, restoration, and reconstruction suggest how the broader Standards should be applied to historic properties with "recommended" and "not recommended" strategies.[117]

I have chosen to explore the *Standards* and *Guidelines* for rehabilitation because the NPS notes that rehabilitation is the most common preservation treatment, and because a considerable source of funding, the Historic Preservation Tax Incentives program, relies on

[116] Weeks and Grimmer, *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards,* 2-3.
[117] Ibid., 2.

them to determine if a commercial preservation project qualifies as a Certified Rehabilitation eligible for the tax credits.[118] As mentioned, rehabilitation projects should protect a site's character-defining features while allowing the historic property to evolve for contemporary use. Examples of historic rehabilitation may include converting a historic church into a restaurant or a historic warehouse into an apartment building.

One of the introductory portions of *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties* provides a historical overview of various components of historic properties, information about which applies to all four treatments, including rehabilitation. Accessibility does not have its own section; rather, it is a subsection within the overview for code-required work.[119] The title of this section is noteworthy, as it implies that historic places should be accessible because doing so is required by code, including the ADA and any applicable state or local standards. While this statement is accurate, it is problematic from a people-focused preservation perspective because it suggests that code-compliance should drive accessibility in historic buildings, not a desire to make sure that people with disabilities can access them.

The language within the overview reinforces this code-oriented approach to accessibility, explaining that "sensitive solutions to meeting code requirements are an important part of protecting the historic character of the building. Thus, work that must be done to meet accessibility and life-safety requirements must always be assessed for its

[118] Technical Preservation Services, "The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation & Illustrated Guidelines for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings: Introduction to the Standards," Standards, accessed February 19, 2022, https://www.nps.gov/tps/standards/rehabilitation/rehab/stand.htm.
[119] Weeks and Grimmer, *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards,* 22.

potential impact on the historic building."[120] The overview advises that work to improve accessibility should result in "minimal or no loss of historic exterior and interior character-defining spaces, features, or finishes. The goal should be to provide the highest level of access with the least impact to the historic building."[121] Together, these recommendations indicate that accessibility improvements during historic rehabilitation projects (and all other treatments) are necessary primarily because they are code requirements. They imply that these improvements should be oriented around preserving historic fabric, rather than an analysis of what will make it easier for people with disabilities to equitably experience historic buildings.

There are ten *Standards* for rehabilitating historic properties, and while none of them specifically mention accessibility in historic buildings, their requirements do apply to the accessibility improvement component of rehabilitation projects.[122] The *Standards* emphasize preserving the site, setting, and character-defining features when rehabilitating historic places.[123] Preservationists should avoid removing or altering character-defining features, and those that have deteriorated should be repaired instead of replaced whenever possible.[124] Features that are added to the site during rehabilitation should be compatible with yet distinct from the original property, and should not cause any permanent damage to the building's setting or character-defining features.[125]

The *Guidelines* provide a more thorough explanation of how the rehabilitation *Standards* should influence accessibility improvements in historic rehabilitations. As in the

---

[120] Weeks and Grimmer, *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards,* 22.
[121] Ibid.
[122] Ibid., 76.
[123] Ibid.
[124] Ibid.
[125] Ibid.

overview for code-required work that applies to all treatments, the *Rehabilitation Guidelines* discuss accessibility as a subsection under the umbrella category of code-required work.[126] The introduction for this section restates that preservationists must plan "sensitive solutions" to satisfying accessibility code requirements that protect character-defining features.[127] To achieve this balance, the introduction encourages preservationists to collaborate with code enforcement authorities so that access can be created in ways that minimize any impact to historic fabric.[128] This language reiterates the interpretation of accessibility primarily as a function of code-compliance that the general overview introduces. The additional messaging here, that preservationists should design accessibility improvements in ways that protect historic materials, is consistent throughout the remainder of the accessibility portion of this section.

The "recommended" and "not recommended" approaches for accessibility within the *Rehabilitation Guidelines* convey that accessibility improvements should be designed around the goal of preserving character-defining features instead of around what will be most beneficial and equitable for people with disabilities. According to these recommendations, character-defining features should be identified and preserved, barrier-free access should promote independence, meaning it should avoid requiring people with disabilities to rely on others for access, "while preserving significant historic features," and accessibility improvements should be designed to require minimal alterations to the historic fabric.[129] To this

[126] Weeks and Grimmer, *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards*, 147.
[127] Ibid.
[128] Ibid.
[129] Ibid., 147-148.

end, the *Guidelines* encourage preservationists to pursue permissible alternatives to access when full code-compliance would "negatively impact" the historic character of the building.[130] They also recommend that elevators, lifts, and ramps be installed on secondary elevations instead of the façade.[131] In cases where it is necessary to install these improvements on the façade, the designs should be as inconspicuous as possible and, in certain circumstances, screened with plantings.[132]

The *Secretary of the Interior's Standards and Guidelines for Rehabilitating Historic Properties*, in combination with the overview on accessibility within the introduction to *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties*, do encourage preservationists to make historic buildings accessible, primarily because doing so is required by law, but through improvements that do not endanger character-defining features. The impetus to preserve historic fabric is so strong that the *Guidelines* recommend making the location and design of accessibility improvements as inconspicuous as possible to minimize their impact on historic character. These *Guidelines* prioritize material fabric over equitable access and recommend that preservationists rely on character-defining features to dictate where and how accessibility improvements are implemented.

Preservation Briefs 32

The National Park Service's Preservation Briefs provide information on specific preservation topics and explain how work should be completed in ways that preserve a

[130] Weeks and Grimmer, *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards,* 149.
[131] Ibid.
[132] Ibid.

property's historic character.[133] These briefs are a similar resource to *The Secretary of the Interior's Guidelines* that further translate the *Standards* into preservation practice. There are currently fifty briefs, with subjects that range from repointing historic mortar joints, to maintaining cast iron, to lightning protection for historic properties.[134] While these briefs are less formal than *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties*, they are nevertheless influential as recommendations from our guiding authority on how preservation work should be done.

Preservation Briefs 32: Making Historic Properties Accessible is the brief most relevant for this study because, as the title suggests, it discusses how to make historic properties accessible. This brief was published in 1993, three years after the ADA was passed into law. There are four main sections to the brief: (1) general guidance for planning accessibility improvements in historic buildings that includes a short introduction to the brief, (2) an application section with sample solutions for making historic entrances and interiors more accessible, (3) a second application section with suggestions for making historic landscapes accessible, and (4) a concluding overview of the federal accessibility laws that can impact historic preservation work. I focus on the first two sections of the brief because together, they provide the overall guidelines for how accessibility should be approached in historic buildings.

The brief's introduction directs historic preservationists to create a balance between accessibility and preservation in historic buildings. Similar to the ADA, the brief encourages preservationists to make historic places accessible without compromising their historic

---

[133] "Preservation Briefs," Technical Preservation Services, accessed April 9, 2022, https://www.nps.gov/tps/how-to-preserve/briefs.htm.
[134] Ibid.

character, which is made up of "features, materials, spaces, and spatial relationships."[135] This interpretation emphasizes that material fabric is a primary source of historic character. The NPS suggests a three-step process for making historic buildings accessible: preservationists should first examine the building's significance and character-defining features, then determine the building's current and desired level of accessibility, and finally consider how to improve accessibility "within a preservation context."[136] In short, preservationists should identify those physical aspects that are considered to convey the building's significance and improve accessibility in ways that compromise them as little as possible.

This brief poses historic fabric, not the desired level of accessibility, as the bellwether for how preservationists should improve accessibility in historic buildings**.** The underlying premise of this process is that a building's character-defining features should direct how it is made accessible. This reflects a fabric-centered approach that is focused on protecting historic features because it is considered that they, not the relationships that people have and create with historic places, convey why the building is important and worthy of preservation.

The NPS provides an extensive list of materials and spaces that preservationists should account for when identifying character-defining features in historic buildings:

> For most historic properties, the construction materials, the form and style of the property, the principal elevations, the major architectural or landscape features, and the principal public spaces constitute some of the elements that should be preserved. Every effort should be made to minimize damage to the materials and features that convey a property's historic significance when making modifications for accessibility. Very small

[135] Thomas C. Jester and Sharon C. Park, *Preservation Briefs 32: Making Historic Properties Accessible* (Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of the Interior National Park Service, 1993), 1, https://www.nps.gov/tps/how-to-preserve/briefs/32-accessibility.htm.
[136] Ibid., 2.

> or highly significant properties that have never been altered may be extremely difficult to modify.[137]

Whereas, secondary spaces, features and finishes of less importance, "secondary pathways, later additions, previously altered areas, utilitarian spaces, and service areas can usually be modified without threatening or destroying a property's significance." These two statements communicate an inverse relationship between significance and accessibility— the more the feature contributes the building's significance, the lesser the need to make it accessible. This approach continues to reinforce our fabric-focused preservation model instead of the people-focused approach we seek to embrace.

After preservationists have identified the areas and materials that are considered to convey significance, the brief recommends that we survey the building and its setting to determine how they are already accessible and what barriers to access are in place.[138] The NPS encourages preservationists to consult with people with disabilities and/or accessibility specialists to identify these barriers, which are often found along entryways, walkways, parking lots, interior pathways, and in public restrooms.[139] This section of the document implies that removing barriers in accordance with all applicable accessibility laws and without compromising character-defining features equates to the building's desired level of accessibility; preservationists do not need to strive for access beyond what is legally required. The NPS neither provides any additional recommendations for how to determine this desired level of accessibility, nor any thresholds for the desired level of accessibility beyond following these procedures.

---

[137] Jester and Park, *Preservation Briefs 32*, 2.
[138] Ibid.
[139] Ibid.

Once these two steps are complete, preservationists can then plan and implement accessibility improvements that reflect the information they have gathered about the building's significance and character-defining features. The NPS recommends consulting with people with disabilities to develop this plan, which should "provide the greatest amount of accessibility without threatening or destroying those materials and features that make a property significant."[140] This statement conveys that accessibility is important— it is just not as important as preserving historic fabric. The brief's guideline to develop an accessibility plan that does not endanger the building's character-defining features mirrors the prioritization of significance over accessibility we see in the instructions for the first step of this process, identifying character-defining features and areas of significance.

The NPS recommends that, when implementing accessibility improvements, creating access to main entrances and primary spaces is most important, whereas making secondary spaces accessible is least important.[141] This does encourage preservationists to ensure that people with disabilities can experience character-defining features; however, there is a tension between the NPS's emphasis on preserving areas that are considered to convey significance and their indication that making such areas accessible should be the foremost accessibility priority. Presumably, *physical* access to these areas should only be the foremost priority if preservationists can create designs that do not impact character-defining features. Otherwise, we can interpret that overall, creating access to these areas is still important, but that "special

[140] Jester and Park, *Preservation Briefs 32*, 2.
[141] Ibid.

accessibility provisions," which can include audio-visual programs, interpretive panels, tactile models, or other comparable alternatives, may be used in lieu of creating physical access.[142]

This encouragement to prioritize accessibility in significant areas can be diminished and limited by the brief's overarching message that accessibility improvements should be designed to protect character-defining features. For example, if a character-defining porch is inaccessible, preservationists may interpret that, though this area should be accessible because it is considered to convey significance, the damage to the porch's features would be too great for them to make it so. Preservationists may then consequently pursue creating an alternative place of entry for people with disabilities that separates them from people without disabilities in order to protect those character-defining features.

Several of the sample accessibility improvements the NPS presents in the second section of the brief help illuminate the conflict that can occur between significance and accessibility. The brief encourages preservationists to make main pathways and entrance(s) to historic buildings accessible whenever possible instead of creating separate options for people with disabilities.[143] But, the brief also urges preservationists to keep the historic character and setting in mind when creating accessible entrances and discourages us from widening historic door frames on primary elevations.[144] The sample images they provide include a mixture of alternative entrances and modifications to the primary entrance (Figures 3-4). These instructions indicate that compromise between preserving historic fabric and accessibility is permissible. But, those elements that are considered to convey significance should always be

[142] Jester and Park, *Preservation Briefs 32*, 2.
[143] Ibid., 3-4.
[144] Ibid., 4-6.

preserved instead of altered to improve accessibility. According to these guidelines, if preservationists must choose between creating equitable access and preserving character-defining features, they should strive for the latter over the former.

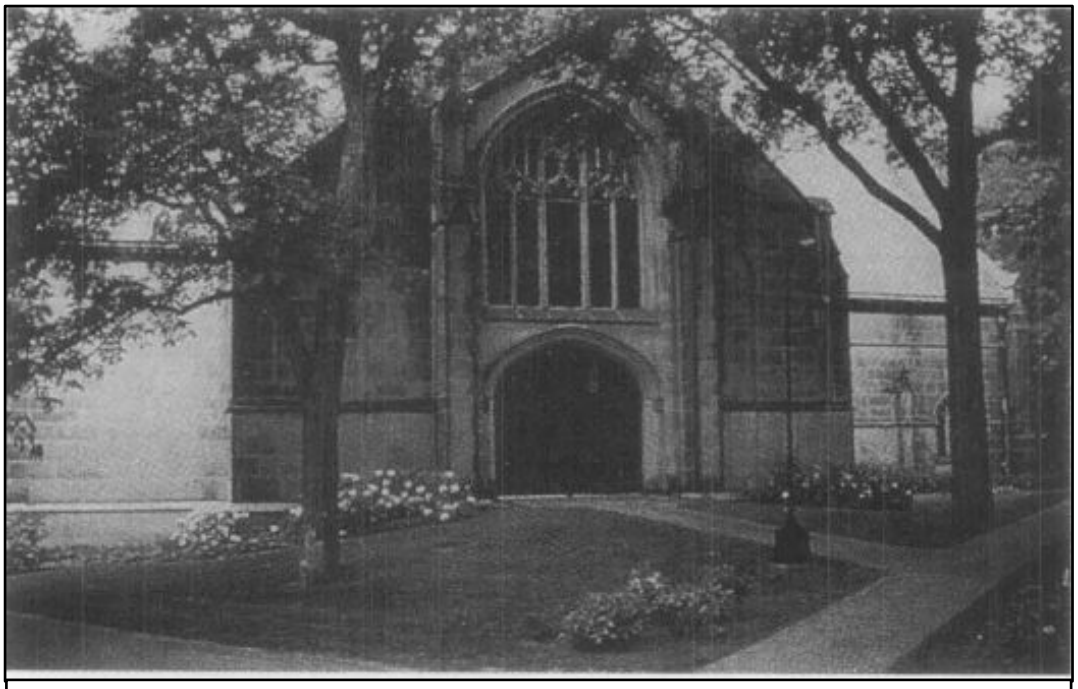


Figure 3: Example of an accessible entrance added to a historic façade by replacing steps with a graded concrete sidewalk [*Preservation Briefs 32*, The Houghton Chapel, Carol R. Johnson & Associates]

Figure 4: Example of an alternative accessible entrance added to the side of a historic property [*Preservation Briefs 32*, William Smith]

If the project team believes that any or all accessibility improvements will compromise the building's significance, they should consult with the State Historic Preservation Officer to determine if any special accessibility provisions can be used as alternatives to physical access.[145] The brief notes that these alternatives to physical access may be the only accessibility options for extremely small or unaltered historic places, which again reinforces that the building fabric which is considered to convey significance is a higher priority than the ability of people with disabilities to physically access these historic buildings.[146]

While *Preservation Briefs 32* overall encourages a balance between preservation and accessibility, this caveat swings the pendulum farthest towards preservation. The underlying message throughout this brief is that character-defining features are the determining factor in

[145] Jester and Park, *Preservation Briefs 32*, 2-3.
[146] Ibid., 3.

this balancing act, not that people with disabilities should have equitable access to historic buildings. In other words, the brief conveys that historic fabric should dictate whether or not people with disabilities can access historic buildings and how they should do so. This approach and the brief in general reflect a fabric-focused model of preservation. I argue that shifting towards an accessibility perspective that continues to balance accessibility and preservation of these important features but that uses equitable access, instead of these features, as the bellwether for how we approach accessibility improvements will help us move towards people-focused preservation. This reorientation prioritizes the experiences that people with disabilities have with historic buildings so that they can develop meaningful relationships with these places.

The Historic Integrity of the Façade

The emphasis that *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards and Guidelines for Rehabilitation* and *Preservation Briefs 32* place on preserving features that are character-defining and considered to convey historic significance when making accessibility improvements is emblematic of our field's overall interest in preserving historic integrity. While how we preserve various spaces and features in a historic building can impact accessibility, I have focused my study on our desire to preserve façades and main entrances because entering is often one of the first ways people engage with historic properties. This action is not more or less important than navigating a hallway or using a restroom, but it does contribute to the "first impression" of the building. In this section, I explore various ways in which we encourage preservation of building façades and entrances, and in turn the impact this emphasis can have on people with disabilities and on accessibility improvements in historic buildings. In doing so, I

seek to illustrate that reconsidering how we value historic façades and entrances is an important component of changing our mindset about and approach towards accessibility in quotidian historic buildings.

The Façade in Context

From a historic perspective, building façades were important for a variety of reasons, one of the most straightforward being that they are the front-facing portion of the building, generally the elevation most visible to the public eye. Material culture historian Bernard L. Herman's study of early American townhomes touches on several examples of the types of information building façades could reflect. Herman notes that façades could demonstrate wealth (or lack thereof), status, and identity. Façade features, the chosen style, the façade's relationship with the street, etc. could all indicate information about the property owner.[147] Elaborate façades, in particular, were often created to impress the public and display an owner's economic position.[148]

Entrances, particularly those positioned on building façades, embodied an additional layer of importance because they held experiential potential. Environmental psychologist and urban planner Jack L. Nasar highlights the positive aspects of this potential, explaining that architects have used design elements to create entrances that "convey a special feeling of entry and uplift the spirit."[149] Architectural historian Dell Upton demonstrates that the act of using an entrance could also indicate social status. In his article "White and Black Landscapes in

---

[147] Bernard L. Herman, *Town House: Architecture and Material Life in the Early American City, 1780-1830* (Chapel Hill: Published for the Omohundro Institute of Early American History and Culture, Williamsburg, Virginia, by the University of North Carolina Press, 2005), 8, 18, 21, 24, 26, 51, 53, 63.
[148] Ibid., 8, 18, 24, 63.
[149] Jack L. Nasar, "Are Retrofitted Wheelchair Entries Separate and Unequal?," *Landscape and Urban Planning* 95, no. 4 (April 2010): 169, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.landurbplan.2009.12.014.

Eighteenth-Century Virginia," Upton illustrates that passing through certain structured, grand southern plantation entrances could reinforce both the owner and the visitor's place in society.[150] Being permitted to use the front entrance of the plantation house confirmed the visitor's elevated position, while the structure of the entrance itself reiterated the plantation owner's social and financial standing.[151] In contrast, Upton explains that the rear, utilitarian entrances enslaved people used to navigate plantation homes excluded them from the social affirmation of the grand entrance.[152] Enslaved people experienced these properties differently than plantation owners and visitors did and had no opportunity to reinforce their social status (or be subjected to a rejection of elevated status), in part because they had an designated alternative means of accessing them.[153]

Building entrances continue to have embedded meaning in a contemporary setting. I have created two hypothetical examples that illustrate how entrance access can convey meaning to the user, particularly their social status. In the first example, employees are required to use an unremarkable rear entrance that is situated near commercial dumpsters instead of a highly designed public entrance in the front of the building. Even if the messaging is unintentional, this requirement can communicate that the employee sits lower within the social hierarchy than those who are permitted to use the ornate front entrance. In contrast, having the choice of using an exclusive rear private entrance, even if the design is equally

[150] Dell Upton, "White and Black Landscapes in Eigtheenth-Century Virginia," *Places* 2, no. 2 (November 1, 1984): 66.
[151] Ibid.
[152] Ibid., 66-68.
[153] Ibid.

unremarkable, or the primary public entrance may imply that the user holds an elevated position in relation to those who can only use the main building entrance.

Location and appearance overlap in these examples; it is the control of access that creates a meaningful distinction between the two. In the first scenario, employees only have one means of egress that both separates them from other users and has received less architectural care, while in the second, the user has a choice between the public entrance and the more exclusive alternative. These examples demonstrate that, as Upton explained, simply being able to use an entrance is meaningful. It is important for preservationists to be aware of this concept so that we avoid creating accessibility improvements that make people with disabilities feel lesser than people without disabilities. This means ensuring that people with disabilities can access historic buildings through the main public building entrance(s) and are not forced to use an alternative entry.

Preserving the Entrance and the Façade

Given the meaning that façades and entrances can hold, it is unsurprising that our authorized heritage discourse encourages preserving these particular elements of historic buildings. This emphasis is most conspicuous in *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards and Guidelines*, though *Preservation Briefs 14: New Exterior Additions to Historic Buildings; Preservation Concerns* further underscores the importance of protecting these areas.

In addition to a discussion of code-required work, the historic overviews within the introduction to *The Secretary of The Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties* also include sections on building entrances and porches and exterior additions. The first sentence of the entrances and porches section states that "entrances and porches are often the

focus of historic American buildings. With their functional and decorative features (such as doors, steps, balustrades, columns, pilasters, and entablatures), they can be extremely important in defining the historic character of a building."[154] Given that the *Standards* for both preservation and rehabilitation establish that "the historic character of a property [should] be retained and preserved," preserving entrances and porches is particularly important because they often contain a dense collection of character-defining features.[155]

Several recommendations within the *Rehabilitation Guidelines* further support our responsibility to preserve elements of the façade. Generally speaking, character-defining features should be preserved as much as possible during historic rehabilitation projects, regardless of their location. But, the suggestions for where material and structural changes should and should not be made subtly encourage preservationists to avoid altering the appearance of the façade. The *Rehabilitation Guidelines* recommend that new window openings should be added to a rear or secondary elevation instead of on the front of the building; they note that preservationists should avoid adding balconies to or changing the "number, location, size, or glazing pattern" of windows on primary elevations; and they state that alternative materials may be used to replace deteriorated wood on secondary, less-visible elevations, whereas matching wood should be used on primary elevations.[156]

Similarly, the *Guidelines* discourage preservationists from making changes to primary entrances, typically located on the façade, and from adding any new entrances on the primary

[154] Weeks and Grimmer, *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards,* 14.
[155] Ibid., 28, 76.
[156] Ibid., 91-92, 109-110.

elevation.[157] New entrances and porches should instead be added to secondary elevations and be designed such that it is clear they are subordinate to the primary entrance.[158] To prevent a false historic narrative, the *Guidelines* also recommend that we avoid altering utilitarian or service entrances such that they "compete visually with the historic primary entrance."[159] This helps maintain a clear distinction between entrances located on the façade and those on less visible elevations, and subtly emphasizes the façade and its character-defining features. The *Standards'* description of entrances and porches combined with extracts from the *Guidelines'* recommendations convey that building façades are particularly important for defining a building's historic character. As such, preservationists should avoid modifying them during historic rehabilitation work.

Careful reading of the *Standards'* overview for exterior additions and the *Rehabilitation Guidelines'* recommendations for these features also reveals an emphasis on preserving the façade, messaging that is even more overt in the corresponding *Preservation Briefs 14*. The overview explains that, much like new entrances, new additions should be located on secondary elevations to indicate that they are subordinate to historic buildings.[160] This is reiterated in the *Guidelines* through the recommendation that preservationists avoid constructing additions on primary elevations, as doing so can negatively impact historic character.[161] From this, preservationists can infer that the façade should be preserved as the dominant elevation, the one that significantly contributes to a building's historic character .

---

[157] Weeks and Grimmer, *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards,* 110.
[158] Ibid., 112.
[159] Ibid., 110.
[160] Ibid., 26.
[161] Ibid., 156.

Preservation Briefs 14: New Exterior Additions to Historic Buildings; Preservation Concerns incorporates a more apparent emphasis on preserving building façades. The NPS's goal with this brief is to ensure that additions do not compromise character-defining features, which aligns with the overall messaging of *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards*.[162] *Briefs 14* states that "generally speaking, preservation of historic buildings inherently implies minimal change to primary or 'public' elevations," meaning the façade, and names many elements of the façade, including "window patterns, window hoods or shutters, porticoes, entrances and doorways…[and] commercial storefronts with their special detailing, signs, and glazing patterns," as character-defining features that should be preserved.[163] To protect these façade elements, the brief, like the *Rehabilitation Guidelines*, specifically recommends that new additions be placed on a side or rear elevation, which are "usually simpler and less distinctive," than the front of the building.[164] In other words, protecting the façade is an essential component of preservation work, and any additions to a historic building should ideally be placed on a less important, less visible elevation. If the façade is the only option for a necessary addition, then the elevation's character-defining features should nonetheless remain undamaged. This messaging in *Preservation Briefs 14* clearly emphasizes the importance of preserving historic building façades.

---

[162] Anne E. Grimmer and Kay D. Weeks, *Preservation Briefs 14: New Exterior Additions to Historic Buildings; Preservation Concerns* (Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of the Interior National Park Service, 2010), 1-4, https://www.nps.gov/tps/how-to-preserve/briefs/14-exterior-additions.htm.
[163] Ibid., 3.
[164] Ibid., 5.

Façade-Focused Preservation and Accessibility

This emphasis on preserving building façades and entrances can lead to accessibility improvements that "other" people with disabilities, meaning that the accessible design creates a sense of difference between people with disabilities and people without disabilities.[165] In 2010, Jack L. Nasar conducted a study to determine if separate, retrofitted accessible entrances give "'equal enjoyment'" compared to main front entrances.[166] He found that these retrofitted entrances, most of which were located on the sides and rears of buildings, were deemed less pleasant and less appealing than those that had been designed as the main public entrance.[167] In comparison to the main entrance, the accessible routes were often less direct, longer, and had poor signage. Some also used service entrances and/or passed by the building trash bins.[168]

Nasar's findings illustrate that, though many of the entrance examples he selected were likely in compliance with ADA and the accessibility guidelines within our federal preservation resources, accessibility improvements that protect the façade can result in an experience of inequality and "othering" for the user. Creating alternative entrances for people with disabilities can deny them the opportunity to experience the special feeling of entry and uplifted spirit that using the primary entrance can convey. Meanwhile, people without disabilities maintain the opportunity to enjoy these curated experiences. Our desire to protect the material aspects of historic façades and entrances can lead to inequitable distinctions between the experiences that people with and without disabilities have when entering historic buildings.

---

[165] Jane Jackson, *The Routledge Handbook of Language and Intercultural Communication* (Routledge, 2012), 187.
[166] Nasar, "Are Retrofitted Wheelchair Entries Separate and Unequal?," 169.
[167] Ibid., 173.
[168] Ibid.

A recent newspaper article highlights the tension that can occur between accessibility and our desire to preserve the façade, as well as the "othering" this conflict can cause. In March of 2022, senior citizens in Massachusetts argued for plans for a new, accessible senior center to move forward because, among many other issues, the only accessible entrance to the existing center is in the rear of the building.[169] Fellow residents opposed to demolition of the current center to make way for a new facility have sought to protect the façade of the existing building through a local landmark designation.[170] These residents appear to value the existing historic building, and particularly its façade, over equitable access for users, and seek to use preservation as a tool to protect those elements. Interviewee quotes within the article such as "'are we not worth a front entrance?'" and "'people with disabilities like myself deserve to get in the building and around a building and upstairs and downstairs just as easily as anyone else in the public'" reinforce that creating separate types of access can lead to an "othering" division between people with disabilities and people without disabilities.[171] While this example poses demolition, instead of rehabilitation, as the alternative to preservation of the façade, it is nonetheless a relevant illustration of how focusing on preserving the façade can perpetuate "othering" experiences for people with disabilities.

This architectural "othering" that separates people with disabilities from people without disabilities can consequently deny people with disabilities the opportunity to enjoy the special feeling of entry that main entrances are often designed to convey. I argue that

---

[169] Julie M. Cohen, "Opposing Views on the Fate of NewCAL - City Grapples with How to Balance Accessibility, Historic Preservation," *Newton TAB (MA)*, March 2, 2022, Access World News.
[170] Ibid.
[171] Ibid.

reconceptualizing façades and entrances to “everyday” historic places as points of engagement between people and place de-emphasizes the need to prioritize preserving the fabric of these spaces over ensuring that everyone has the same experience of entry. This revised perspective allows for more flexible use of historic fabric, which in turn creates opportunities for preservationists to make changes to these features if they are necessary to create equitable access. Additionally, place attachment theory reminds us that people develop relationships with places through the experiences they have with and within them. Understanding these features of historic buildings as places of engagement and therefore adjusting them when needed to facilitate that engagement integrates façades and entrances into the relationship-making process. The more comprehensive these relationships are, the better positioned preservationists will be to understand and help preserve the building’s multifaceted place meanings.

Concluding Thoughts

While the ADA is a critical piece of civil rights legislation for people with disabilities that preservationists must abide by, the act contains important flaws that we must recognize if we seek to shift towards a people-focused model of preservation. These include the historic building exceptions that allow for alternative, inequivalent means of access and that prioritize material fabric over accessibility, the relatively minimal barrier removal requirements that do not necessarily guarantee that people with disabilities will be able to fully enjoy historic buildings, and the ongoing legal tensions between people with disabilities and property owners that indicate accessibility is still a challenge, despite the fact that the ADA has been a law for over thirty years.

The Secretary of the Interior's Standards and Guidelines for Rehabilitating Historic Properties and *Preservation Briefs 32*, which interpret the ADA's standards in terms of historic preservation work, encourage historic preservationists to balance accessibility and preservation when working with historic buildings, but they frequently balance in favor of preservation. According to these resources, character-defining features, those materials that are considered to convey the building's history, should determine both how accessible a building becomes and how we design it to be accessible. This is a fabric-forward approach to accessibility in historic buildings, in alignment with our field's fabric-focused roots. To work towards a people-focused preservation mindset that celebrates the experiences people have with historic buildings, I propose reordering these factors, such that equitable access becomes the determining factor in accessibility improvements for quotidian historic places. This approach brings people with disabilities and the "day-to-day" experiences they have with historic buildings to the forefront of accessibility designs in preservation. I do not ask that we disregard historic fabric, but I do argue that we reconsider preserving it in more flexible terms and cease valuing it over equitable accessibility.

When considering historic fabric, our federal resources put a particular emphasis on preserving the façade because it embodies so many of the building's character-defining features. This practice is also emblematic of our fabric-focused roots and can be problematic when it results in accessible entrances that "other" people with disabilities. Working within a people-oriented preservation framework that values the experiences and relationships people build with places requires that we reconsider our desire to protect historic façades and entrances. I encourage preservationists to reconceptualize these components of "everyday"

historic buildings as points of engagement that can be adjusted so that people with disabilities can experience them. This understanding, coupled with new emphasis on equitable access, will ultimately lead to creative accessibility improvements that help people with disabilities experience and enjoy such historic places without being “othered” from people without disabilities.

CHAPTER IV
RECONCEPTUALIZING DISABILITY AND ACCESSIBILITY

Throughout the course of the previous three chapters, I have argued that our current approach to improving accessibility in historic buildings is problematic from the perspective of a people-focused preservation model. Particularly in chapter three, I assert that our authorized heritage discourse encourages preservationists to orient accessibility improvements around the goal of preserving historic fabric, instead of around a standard of equitable access for people with disabilities. To help our field embrace and engage in people-focused preservation, we must change both how we think about accessibility and how we create access to historic buildings. Much of my emphasis thus far has been on why this shift should happen; in this and the final chapter, I discuss how we can incorporate these changes into our practice. Here, I introduce three theories, the social model of disability, critical disability studies, and Universal Design, that we can draw from to reorient around a people-focused practice. I believe that these theories can help us develop new ways of thinking about accessibility that will ultimately lead to accessibility standards that create more equitable access for people with disabilities.

Changing our Mindset

Creating change within our practice towards accessibility in historic buildings requires two kinds of shifts. We must first reconsider how we think about the relationship between

disability and accessibility, then translate that new mindset into equitable accessibility improvements. The social model of disability and critical disability theory offer perspectives on disability and accessibility that preservationists can reference to foment this changed mindset within our field.

The Social Model of Disability

Two of the most prevalent contemporary models of disability are the social model and the medical model, which pose different, oppositional ways of thinking about and understanding disability. I argue that our field should embrace aspects of the social model to reconceptualize how we understand disability as a physical experience. This model emerged in contrast to the medical model, the premise of which I have also described in this section because it offers important theoretical context for the social model and for critical disability theory, which I discuss in the following section of this chapter.

The medical model of disability interprets disability as a problem with a person's body, a condition that should be treated and/or rehabilitated.[172] This way of understating disability poses a person's physical condition as the source of any disadvantages they may experience, and thus these disadvantages can best be resolved through medical treatments and cures.[173] An essential assumption within this model is that there is a standard of "normal" body that people with disabilities do not meet.[174] Rehabilitation efforts, therefore, should seek to help people with disabilities achieve this state of "normalcy" as much as possible.[175] The "mythic average

[172] Sara Goering, "Rethinking Disability: The Social Model of Disability and Chronic Disease," *Current Reviews in Musculoskeletal Medicine* 8, no. 2 (April 11, 2015): 134, https://doi.org/10.1007/s12178-015-9273-z.
[173] Ibid.
[174] Ruthie Bonan Gomes et al., "New Dialogues in Feminist Disability Studies," *Revista Estudos Feministas* 27, no. 1 (2019): 1.
[175] Ibid.

normal" body for architectural design and other similar fields that the medical model references is considered to be "white, European, nondisabled, youthful, and often masculine."[176] This "normal" template began to appear in the nineteenth century around a statistical desire to understand "average" human features, and later manifested in eugenics and standardized designs for products and architecture.[177]

The medical model has deep roots in the practice of institutionalizing people with disabilities, a practice that is considered one of the reasons why so few historic buildings were originally designed to be accessible for people with disabilities.[178] People with disabilities did not fit this "normal" template, were sequestered from society for treatment (or simply sequestered without treatment), and in turn, were generally not physically present to experience historic buildings when they were first built.[179] Thus, these buildings were not designed with their needs in mind; some, as Aimi Hamraie argues, were even designed to actively exclude people with disabilities.[180]

The social model of disability instead asserts that disability is a social phenomenon, not a medical condition. Disability within the social model is an experience, rather than a state of being, that happens when tangible and intangible barriers negatively impact the lives of people whose bodies do not align with this sociocultural "normal."[181] Disabling barriers might include

---

[176] Hamraie, *Building Access*, 39.
[177] Hamraie, *Building Access,* 32-66; Lennard J. Davis, "Introduction: Normality, Power. and Culture," in *The Disability Studies Reader*, ed. Lennard J. Davis, Fourth Edition (New York, NY: Taylor & Francis Group, 2013), 1–12.
[178] Hamraie, "Universal Design and the Problem of 'Post-Disability' Ideology," *Design and Culture* 8, no. 3 (September 2016): 5, https://doi.org/10.1080/17547075.2016.1218714.
[179] Ibid.
[180] Ibid.
[181] Tom Shakespeare, "The Social Model of Disability," in *The Disability Studies Reader*, ed. Lennard J. Davis, Fourth Edition (New York, NY: Taylor & Francis Group, 2013), 214–21, http://ebookcentral.proquest.com/lib/goucher-ebooks/detail.action?docID=1125176.

narrow, uneven sidewalks, poorly marked and/or inaccessible entrances, broken elevators or elevators without braille, and so much more. The social model distinguishes between disability and impairment, wherein impairment describes personal physical limitations and disability is a product of environmental barriers.[182] These barriers are in place because much of our contemporary world has been designed for this idea of "normal" that does not embrace impairment.[183] This is the critical difference between the social and medical models that I emphasize for purposes of this study, that the built environment, instead of the body, is one of the sources of disability. Understanding disability from the perspective of this model indicates that preservationists can reduce disabling experiences by changing the built environment that facilitates them.

There is criticism within the critical disability studies field that the social model of disability is flawed. Disability studies scholar Tom Shakespeare notes that feminists Jenny Morris, Sally French, and Liz Crow argue that the social model of disability neglects the "individual experience of impairment," to the point that it "risks implying that impairment is not a problem."[184] Fellow disability studies scholar Tobin Siebers reiterates this concern by explaining that framing disability as a product of the environment can mask "the difficult physical realities faced by people with disabilities."[185] In other words, people with disabilities can have more challenging, uncomfortable, even painful lives than people without disabilities, regardless of the environment, and it is problematic to gloss over that reality. Preservationists

---

[182] Shakespeare, "The Social Model of Disability" in *The Disability Studies Reader,* 216.
[183] Davis, "Introduction" in *The Disability Studies Reader,* 1.
[184] Shakespeare, "The Social Model of Disability" in *The Disability Studies Reader,* 218.
[185] Tobin Siebers, "Disability in Theory: From Social Constructionism to the New Realism of the Body," *American Literary History* 13, no. 4 (April 1, 2001): 740, https://doi.org/10.1093/alh/13.4.737.

can interpret from this concern that striving to create equitable access to historic buildings will not universally eliminate disabling experiences. Even so, aiming for this standard of access is a step our field can and should take towards reducing them.

Shakespeare offers additional criticisms for this model, that it assumes disability and oppression are inseparable (i.e., one cannot have a disability without being oppressed), and that the distinction between impairment and socially-imposed disability is much more nuanced than the social model assumes.[186] While preservationists should be aware of these critiques, I argue that understanding disability from the perspective of this social model can nonetheless help us reshape how we consider accessibility in historic places. For our purposes, the idea that tangible and intangible barriers at minimum contribute to an experience of disability is important, because it indicates that we should take action, even if it is not required by the ADA, to make historic buildings as accessible as possible.

An Overview of Critical Disability Theory

Critical disability theory and the social model are closely intwined, in that the field of critical disabilities studies began to emerge in the 1980s around the social model of disability.[187] A concise explanation of this theoretical field is that it examines, challenges, and explores the consequences of sociocultural definitions of "normal," particularly "normal" bodies and minds that the medical model of disability references. In his article "Crips Strike Back: The Rise of Disabilities Studies," disability studies scholar Lennard Davis further explains that "disability studies demands a shift from the ideology of normalcy, from the rule and hegemony of

[186] Shakespeare, "The Social Model of Disability" in *The Disability Studies Reader,* 217-218.
[187] Hamraie, "Universal Design and the Problem of 'Post-Disability' Ideology," 3.

normates, to a vision of the body as changeable, unperfectable, unruly, and untidy."[188] In other words, bodies through the lens of critical disabilities studies simply (and yet not so simply) are; they exist, and they are diverse.

Through this reconsideration of bodies and people, critical disability theorists challenge any acceptance that disability is equivalent to "other than" what is normal, for there is no "normal." In her explanation of feminist disability studies, disability studies scholar Rosemarie Garland-Thomson emphasizes that this field:

> …questions our assumptions that disability is a flaw, lack, or excess. To do so, it defines disability broadly from a social rather than a medical perspective. Disability, it argues, is a cultural interpretation of human variation rather than an inherent inferiority, a pathology to cure, or an undesirable trait to eliminate. In other words, it finds disability's significance in interactions between bodies and their social and material environments.[189]

According to Garland-Tompson's description, disability is a sociocultural contrast to a manufactured "normal." Similar to the social model of disability, critical disability theory poses the idea of disability itself as a product of society's artificial standard of body and mind. Critical disability theorists assert that there is no "normal" and no "other;" all people are complex and distinct. This understanding reframes accessibility not as an accommodation for those who are other than "normal," but as truly a right that all people should have. The act, then, of creating access, is a process of dismantling and preventing obstacles that prevent all people from equitably experiencing their environments.

---

[188] Lennard J. Davis, "Crips Strike Back: The Rise of Disability Studies," *American Literary History* 11, no. 3 (March 1, 1999): 505, https://doi.org/10.1093/alh/11.3.500.
[189] Rosemarie Garland-Thomson, "Feminist Disability Studies," *Signs: Journal of Women in Culture and Society* 30, no. 2 (January 2005): 1557, https://doi.org/10.1086/423352.

The ADA poses accessibility as a mandated accommodation for people with disabilities, people who are "other than" our sociocultural understanding of "normal." The social model of disability and critical disability theory reconstrue disability not as a physical condition, but as a product of environmental barriers. According to the social model, these barriers are in place because society has embraced, and been built for, a fictional idea of what qualifies as a normal body and mind. People with disabilities have disabling experiences because their bodies and/or minds do not align with these artificial standards, standards that critical disability theory counters with the assertion that every body is unique. This perspective transforms accessibility into a process of removing and avoiding the creation of barriers that prevent people from fully engaging with their environment.

Applying a Standard of Equitable Access

Preservationists can reference the social model of disability and critical disability theory to develop new perspectives on what disability and accessibility mean. Once we have shifted our mindset about these concepts, the question then becomes: how do we apply these new patterns of thought to our practice of improving accessibility in "everyday" historic buildings? I have argued that adopting a standard of equitable access, which I have defined as that which creates an equivalency of experience for people with disabilities, will help us work towards and within a people-focused preservation model. In terms of entryways, this requires that everyone be able to use the same place and means of entering a historic building whenever possible. Borrowing from Universal Design theory can help us create these equitable accessibility improvements in historic buildings.

Ronald Mace, an architect with disabilities who specialized in designing accessible buildings and who helped write accessible building code, first introduced the idea of Universal Design in 1985, five years before the Americans with Disabilities Act was signed into law. Universal Design is a design theory, originally an approach for intentionally designing new, accessible buildings and products. Mace's explanation of Universal Design was concise: he envisioned "a way of designing a building or facility, at little or no extra cost, so that it is both attractive and functions for all people, disabled or not."[190] Aimi Hamraie emphasizes that this iteration of Universal Design prioritized access for people with disabilities, as Mace developed this theory in response to his observation that architects often did not account for the needs of people with disabilities in their designs.[191] Though the message is subtle in Mace's definition of Universal Design, an underlying assertion within his explanation is that accessibility is an essential component of "good design." Examples of this "good design" included full-length mirrors, lever door handles, and uncluttered interiors.[192] Through Universal Design, Mace sought to replace retrofits that "tacked on" accessibility with building designs that organically incorporated accessibility throughout.[193]

Hamraie identifies an important distinction between this pre-ADA understanding of Universal Design and our contemporary, post-ADA representation of the theory. Post-ADA Universal Design has evolved into a marketing tool that emphasizes access and usability for a generic all, without placing people with disabilities at the forefront of design.[194] Hamraie

---

[190] Hamraie, *Building Access,* 257.
[191] Ibid., 19-21.
[192] Hamraie, *Building Access*, 278-280; Williamson, *Accessible America,* 149.
[193] Hamraie, *Building Access,* 21; Williamson, *Accessible America,* 147.
[194] Hamraie, *Building Access,* 291.

explains that there was and is a general misconception that the ADA eliminated discrimination against people with disabilities and ensured accessibility; therefore, designing for people with disabilities gradually faded from the foreground of Universal Design.[195]

The Center for Universal Design's current definition of Universal Design as "the design of products, environments, programs, and services to be usable by all people, to the greatest extent possible, without the need for adaptation or specialized design" demonstrates this dilution of Mace's original accessibility-forward idea.[196] While this definition may seem appealing because it does not stigmatize people with disabilities, Hamraie, Rob Imrie, and other disability theorists argue that this description masks the fact that people with different types of disabilities have different needs, all of which should be taken into account when designing a "universally" accessible space.[197] Imrie further notes that some people with disabilities may *need* specialized designs that can be overlooked when designing for a generic "all."[198] He explains that bodies are complex and engage with the environment in so many ways that universal designs simply may not be appropriate or the best option for creating access in every circumstance. I believe that there is value in referencing Mace's pre-ADA theory of Universal Design to design equitable accessibility improvements, but preservationists must be aware of these criticisms of the theory. Most importantly, we must recognize that designing for "all" means designing for diverse people and communities with varying accessibility needs.

---

[195] Hamraie, "Universal Design and the Problem of 'Post-Disability' Ideology," 12, 14.
[196] "About UD," The Center for Universal Design, accessed March 8, 2022, https://projects.ncsu.edu/ncsu/design/cud/about_ud/about_ud.htm.
[197] Hamraie, *Building Access,* 308-311; Rob Imrie, "Universalism, Universal Design and Equitable Access to the Built Environment," *Disability and Rehabilitation* 34, no. 10 (May 2012): 878-880, https://doi.org/10.3109/09638288.2011.624250.
[198] Imrie, "Universalism, Universal Design and Equitable Access to the Built Environment," 879.

In 1997, the Center for Universal Design developed seven principles of Universal Design to help practitioners apply this theory, which include (1) equitable use, (2) flexibility in use, (3) simple and intuitive use, (4) perceptible information, (5) tolerance for error, (6) low physical effort, and (7) size and space for approach and use.[199] While I acknowledge these principles as part of current theory, I argue that the theory of Universal Design itself, the idea of designing for, and with, different kinds of people to create spaces that work for people who have diverse needs, is what we should bring to our practice.

Ronald Mace originally developed Universal Design theory to guide designs for new buildings, not to influence the implementation of accessibility improvements in existing properties. Nonetheless, I argue that the essence of this theory, to design for accessibility in terms of achieving the best use for *all* people in ways that do not "other" people with disabilities, can help us create equitable accessibility improvements in existing buildings. I have focused on the theory instead of the Principles that were developed in the post-ADA era of Universal Design because Mace's way of thinking encourages preservationists and those we collaborate with to be creative and innovative when designing accessibility improvements. There is a risk that focusing on the Principles could instead lead to standardized checklists and solutions that do not account for the particulars of the historic building and the needs of the people who use it.[200] In other words, I am drawn to Mace's overall theory of Universal Design

---

[199] Elaine Ostroff, "Universal Design: An Evolving Paradigm," in *Universal Design Handbook*, ed. Wolfgang F. E. Preiser and Korydon H. Smith, 2nd Edition (McGraw Hill, 2011), 1.5; Molly Follette Story, "Principles, Standards, and Guidelines," in *Universal Design Handbook*, ed. Wolfgang F. E. Preiser and Korydon H. Smith, 2nd Edition (McGraw Hill, 2011), 4.4; S. Iwarsson and A. Ståhl, "Accessibility, Usability and Universal Design—Positioning and Definition of Concepts Describing Person-Environment Relationships," *Disability and Rehabilitation* 25, no. 2 (January 2003): 61, https://doi.org/10.1080/dre.25.2.57.66.

[200] Jay Timothy Dolmage, *Academic Ableism: Disability and Higher Education*, (Ann Arbor, MI: University of Michigan Press, 2017), 116.

because it does not instruct us how to improve access; rather, it encourages preservationists to begin asking the right kinds of questions that will lead to creative, equitable access to historic places.

Critical disability theorist Jay Dolmage describes Universal Design, when adopted as a worldview, as "a form of hope, a manner of trying."[201] He further explains that "the push toward the universal is a push toward seeing space as open to multiple possibilities, as being in process."[202] It is this conceptualization of Universal Design that I encourage preservationists to reference when considering how to improve access to historic buildings. While we may not be able to make every "day-to-day" historic place comprehensively, equitably accessible for every person, we should try to do so to every extent possible. Universal Design theory emphasizes creating access according to how people, particularly people with disabilities, interact with and use spaces, not solely according to legal code-required standards. Preservationists can draw on this understanding of access that facilitates relationships between people and places to rework our federal accessibility resources, which will ultimately contribute to visible change in accessibility to and within historic properties.

Concluding Thoughts

Working towards a people-focused preservation movement both requires that preservationists reconsider how we approach accessibility in historic buildings and provides the opportunity for us to do so. I believe that changing how we understand the relationship between disability and accessibility can help us incorporate this new vision into our practice.

---

[201] Dolmage, *Academic Ableism,* 116.
[202] Ibid., 117.

Ideas from the social model of disability and critical disability theory explain that accessibility is not an accommodation, but instead a process of removing and preventing barriers that contribute to disabling experiences in historic places. Universal Design theory, which encourages designing buildings that are organically accessible for all people, can help preservationists remove and prevent these barriers within “everyday” historic buildings in ways that create equitable access, or an equivalency of experience, for everyone.

CHAPTER V
WAYS FORWARD

One of the essential arguments within this study is that that creating equitable access to historic buildings will help us preserve the relationships that people build with them, relationships that are the focus of a people-oriented preservation model. Reconsidering our understanding of disability, accessibility, and the correlation between these concepts can help us change our accessibility mindset, the first step towards revising how we improve accessibility in historic buildings. Incorporating a standard of equitable access into the federal resources our field relies on to direct preservation at all levels of practice will further infuse this change within our work.

In this final chapter, I begin with a summary of the ideas and theories explored in this study that support change within our field's accessibility practice. I then suggest ways we can bring this change forward through proposed revisions to select discussions about accessibility within *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties* and *Preservation Briefs 32: Making Historic Properties Accessible*. These examples illustrate how we can incorporate a standard of equitable access into our preservation practice. Finally, I conclude with suggestions for additional measures preservationists can take beyond the scope of this study to strengthen new, people-focused approaches to accessibility in historic places.

Theoretical Summary

Our field is oriented around a fabric-focused model of preservation that seeks to preserve the material aspects of historic buildings, especially those character-defining features that are considered to evoke a building's history and make it important, worthy of preservation. The interpretation that historic fabric embodies and conveys historic significance is essential to this model. Our emphasis on preserving historic fabric stems from the history of our field's evolution, in that U.S. preservation practice developed at a grassroots and legislative level as a reaction to pervasive loss of historic properties. The federal resources that our field references to improve accessibility in historic buildings, including The Americans with Disabilities Act*, The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation*, and the National Park Service's *Preservation Briefs 32*, echo the importance of preserving historic fabric that is emblematic of our field's roots. While these resources do encourage preservationists to balance between accessibility and preservation when improving access to historic buildings, they indicate that a building's character-defining features should determine where and how access is implemented. Our fabric-focused model not only influences how we preserve historic buildings, but also how we create access to them for people with disabilities.

Recent trends in our field argue for a shift towards people-focused preservation that celebrates the relationships between people and historic places. This model redirects our focus from preserving material fabric to preserving the meanings of the historic place. Within this people-focused model, historic fabric retains importance as the physical space where meaning-making has and continues to happen. It is less precious, however, as an embodiment of history, to be preserved, unaltered, whenever possible. In the context of this study, this people-focused

preservation model is notable for two reasons: it encourages preservationists to consider material fabric in more flexible terms, so that historic buildings can evolve as meanings and relationships change; and, it argues for preservationists to reconsider how we approach accessibility in historic places, especially in those "everyday" historic buildings that have been rehabilitated for contemporary use as restaurants, bookstores, movie theaters, etc., and that people are likely to regularly engage with throughout the course of their lives.

Research exploring place attachment theory indicates that people develop relationships with places through the experiences they have with and within them. This indicates that, if we seek to embrace a people-focused model that preserves these relationships between people and place, we must ensure people with disabilities can physically access historic buildings to develop and sustain relationships with them. Providing alternatives to physical access, such as video tours or photographs of historic buildings, in order to preserve historic fabric diminishes the opportunity for people with disabilities to develop these relationships. Without physical access, people cannot experience the sounds and smells that contribute to an experience of place, nor can they actually have experiences within the place that contribute to its meaning.

Many may argue that the ADA has ensured that people with disabilities generally do have physical access to historic buildings. While it is accurate that most public historic buildings should be accessible according to the ADA's standards, or at the very least have few barriers to access, the volume of ADA lawsuits and tensions between accessibility and historic preservation indicate that this is not always the case. Additionally, historic buildings that are accessible and compliant with the ADA may not necessarily be accessible in equitable ways. Recognizing that experiences with and within places contribute to the relationships people develop with them

underscores that not only is physical access important, but that the kind of access is also important. How access happens influences the experiences that people with disabilities have with historic buildings and in turn their relationships with them. This means that preservationists must be mindful of how people with disabilities access these places and particularly how they enter them. Designing equitable accessibility improvements so that people with disabilities have the same opportunities to build relationships with historic buildings as do people without disabilities aligns with our field's desire to shift towards a people-focused, meaning-oriented model of preservation.

I emphasize the importance of creating equitable entrances in part because the act of entering is often one of the first physical exchanges people have with historic buildings. As such, entering establishes context for relationships between people and historic places. Having no choice but to enter a building through an accessible, ill-lit rear entrance, tucked away from public view, does not provide an experience of entering comparable to entering through a welcoming, well-designed main entrance. The historic meaning entrances have embodied and our field's own emphasis on preserving the building façade reinforce that entrances, particularly main entrances, are important components of historic buildings. The reasons why our field encourages preserving the façade, including its visibility and its concentration of character-defining features, are also reasons why we should ensure that the main entrance is accessible to people with disabilities whenever possible. People with disabilities should have the same opportunity to experience this historic fabric as people without disabilities.

Our current fabric-focused approach to improving accessibility can result in inequitable means of entry for people with disabilities because this model prioritizes preserving character-

defining features over accessibility. Accessible entrances are often located around the side or in the rear of a building instead of at the primary public access point because these elevations typically contain fewer character-defining features than the façade. Therefore, modifications to create accessible entrances on these secondary elevations are less likely to obscure historic features.

Our authorized heritage discourse and examples of conflicts between accessibility and historic preservation demonstrate that our fabric-focused preservation model influences our field's mindset towards accessibility. Preservation advocates and professionals have countered petitions for access or increased access with concerns about loss of historic integrity and character-defining features. These arguments indicate that preservationists perceive accessibility as subordinate to preserving historic fabric, a perception that our federal accessibility resources echo. Working towards a people-focused preservation model and equitable accessibility improvements in historic buildings requires that we begin shifting how our field thinks of access.

I argue that adopting ideas from the social model of disability and the field of critical disability studies can help preservationists reframe our understanding of accessibility. The social model of disability interprets disability as a product of environmental barriers, and critical disability theory challenges the idea of a social, cultural "normal" body and mind with an assertion that all people are distinct. If preservationists embrace the theory that environmental barriers create disabling experiences because all bodies are diverse, this argues that we cannot treat people with disabilities as "other than" people without disabilities by prioritizing historic fabric over accessibility. Together, these theories suggest a new way of understanding

accessibility as comprehensive, equitable access that every person deserves, and that historic preservationists should provide.

As preservationists revise our mindset towards accessibility, we must also update our fabric-focused authorized heritage discourse to weave this new way of thinking into our practice. Doing so will support a shift towards people-focused preservation, which values the relationships between people and historic places, and encourage preservationists to design equitable accessibility improvements. Changes at the federal level will influence local levels of preservation practice, such that equitable access will become pervasive throughout our field.

Sample Revisions to our Authorized Heritage Discourse

In this study, I have argued that moving towards a people-focused model of preservation requires that preservationists reconsider our approach to accessibility in historic buildings. People-focused preservation embraces a more malleable understanding of historic fabric, which allows us to design accessibility improvements around the goal of facilitating equitable experiences for people, instead of around the need to protect historic materials. In this section, I present sample revisions to two pieces of our authorized heritage discourse, *Preservation Briefs 32: Making Historic Properties Accessible* and the discussions of accessibility within the overview of *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties* and the accompanying *Rehabilitation Guidelines*, to illustrate how we could incorporate this new approach into our practice.

These revisions are guided by Universal Design theory, in that they recommend that preservationists create the same means and point of access for everyone and encourage preservationists to incorporate accessibility improvements with historic fabric whenever doing

so is possible and appropriate for the type of improvement. In these examples, I continue to support the balance between historic fabric and accessibility that the original text emphasizes because ensuring that people with disabilities can experience historic fabric is an aspect of equitable access. The difference I seek to create between these examples and their original counterparts is that I pose equitable access, instead of the preservation of historic fabric, as the bellwether for where and how accessibility improvements are implemented. This approach redirects our focus towards how people with disabilities engage with historic buildings and aligns with the values of people-focused preservation.

While I encourage a standard of equitable access throughout historic buildings, I have focused my study on improving the ways that people with physical disabilities enter them. As such, the revisions I propose to these resources are tailored to the specific lens of my research. Truly accessible historic places should be comprehensively accessible to people with diverse disabilities. While discussing how to achieve this is beyond the scope of my research, all of our authorized heritage discourse should ultimately be revised to reflect this standard.

Example 1: *Preservation Briefs 32: Making Historic Properties Accessible*

In this section, I have focused on revisions to specific portions of *Preservation Briefs 32* that present a method for making historic buildings and entrances accessible, as these sections are most relevant to the topics I have reviewed in this study. I have italicized any unaltered text to distinguish between the original language and my suggested revisions.

Historically, most buildings and landscapes were not designed to be readily accessible for people with disabilities. In recent years, however, emphasis has been placed on making historic properties— *and the*	*activities within them*— accessible in ways that promote equitable experiences for everyone. *With the passage of the Americans with Disabilities Act* (ADA) *in 1990, access to properties open to the*

public is now a civil right. While preservationists must, at minimum, abide by the ADA's standards, this Preservation Brief promotes accessibility improvements in historic properties that are oriented around the goal of equitable access.

This Preservation Brief introduces the complex issue of designing accessibility improvements for *historic properties and underscores the need to* facilitate equitable access. Equitable access creates the same opportunities for everyone to experience historic properties, and should be implemented even if it is not legally required by the ADA or other codes that the building be accessible.

This Brief *provides guidance on making historic properties* equitably *accessible* and *provides examples to show that* equitable access to *historic properties can be achieved with careful planning, consultation, and* innovative *design. While the Brief focuses primarily on making buildings and their sites accessible, it also includes a section on historic landscapes. The Brief will assist historic property owners, design professionals, and administrators in evaluating their historic properties so that the highest level of* equitable *accessibility can be achieved* through creative and collaborative design. *Because many projects encompassing accessibility work are complex, it is advisable to consult with* people with disabilities *and experts in the fields of historic preservation* while planning and implementing accessibility improvements.

Modifications to historic properties to create equitable *accessibility may be as simple as a* well-conceived *ramp to overcome one entrance step, or may involve changes to exterior and interior features.* The degree of modification required will depend on how accessible the building currently is and if existing means of access are equitable. For example, preservationists may find the need to modify primary public entrances if the only existing accessible entrance is at a separate location.

The Brief does not provide a detailed explanation of local or state accessibility laws as they vary from jurisdiction to jurisdiction. A concise explanation of several federal accessibility laws, which should be referenced for minimum accessibility standards, *is included on page 13.*

Planning Accessibility Improvements

Three overarching goals of equitable access should guide accessibility planning in historic properties. Preservationists should strive to ensure that (1) everyone can access the same areas or historic properties; (2) everyone has the same type of access to those areas; and (3) accessibility improvements are incorporated with the property's historic fabric when doing so is appropriate for the location and type of improvement. Doing so, for example, may be feasible when modifying a historic entryway, yet inappropriate when adding an elevator to a historic building.

Historic properties are distinguished by tangible and intangible features that contribute to their historic character. Historic *features, materials, spaces, and spatial relationships* often create inaccessible environments for people with

disabilities. Examples of these elements that contribute to inaccessibility can include *steep terrain, monumental steps, narrow or heavy doors, decorative ornamental hardware, and narrow pathways and corridors*.

Overall, accessibility improvements should seek to ensure that everyone has the same opportunities to experience historic properties. *A three-step approach is recommended to identify and implement* improvements that will result in equitable access:

1. Assess the property to determine what access is available and how equitable it is;
2. *Review the historical significance of the property and identify character-defining features;*[203]
3. Evaluate and implement accessibility options that create equitable access.

1) Assess the Property's Existing Level of Accessibility

A building survey or assessment will provide a thorough evaluation of a property's current level of *accessibility. Most surveys identify accessibility barriers in the following areas: building and site entrances; surface textures, widths and slopes of walkways; parking; grade changes; size, weight, and configuration of doorways; interior corridors and path of travel restrictions; elevators; and public toilets and amenities.* Property owners and preservationists should audit properties in terms of how legally compliant they are with current accessibility requirements— local codes, state codes, and federal laws— and how well, if at all, the property achieves equitable access. It is strongly recommended that preservationists consult with people with diverse disabilities when assessing the equity of existing accessibility improvements. The goal of equitable access is to ensure that everyone has the same opportunity to experience the historic property, including its historic character. Some problematic accessibility improvements may be obvious, but preservationists may inadvertently overlook more subtle issues without additional consultation. It is also advisable to consult with accessibility experts when determining how compliant a property is with existing accessibility code.

All applicable accessibility requirements— local codes, state codes and federal laws— should be reviewed carefully before undertaking any accessibility improvements*. Since many states and localities have their own accessibility regulations and codes (each with their own requirements for dimensions and technical requirements), owners should use the* accessibility requirements that require the highest level of access as a minimum threshold for accessibility *when implementing* improvements*. The Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG) is the document that should be consulted when complying with*

[203] While the language of this second step matches the original text, it is the recommended first step in the original version of the Brief. I have reordered it to indicate that equitable access, not character-defining features, should drive this process.

the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

2) *Review the Historical Significance of the Property*

If the property has been designated as historic (properties that are listed in, or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places, or designated under state or local law), the property's nomination file should be reviewed to learn about its significance. Local preservation commissions and State Historic Preservation Offices can usually provide copies of the nomination file and are also resources for additional information and assistance. Review of the written documentation should always be supplemented with a physical investigation to identify character-defining features and spaces. If the documentation of *a property's significance is limited, it may be necessary to have a preservation professional identify specific features, materials, and spaces that* contribute to the building's significance*.*

For many *historic properties, the construction materials, the form and style of the property,* various *elevations, the major architectural or landscape features, and the principal public spaces constitute some of the* physical *elements* that contribute to the building's significance. Preservationists may need to consider modifying these character-defining features to achieve equitable access. While a concerted effort should be made overall to maintain these features so that everyone can experience them, they should not be preserved exactly in place at the expense of equitable access. Preservationists may adjust door widths, stairs, etc. if doing so will help achieve this goal.

Preservationists should also create equitable access to areas within historic properties that do not contain as many of these features. These spaces may include *secondary pathways, later additions, previously altered areas,* and more. Equitable access to these areas should not be created in lieu of equitable access to character-defining features and spaces, and vice versa.

3) Evaluate and Implement Equitable Accessibility Improvements

Once areas of inaccessibility and or/inequitable accessibility have been identified and *a property's significant materials and features have been* established*,* accessibility improvements *can be developed.* Accessibility improvements *should* achieve *the greatest* level *of* equitable access so that everyone has the same opportunity to experience *those materials and features that make a property significant. A team comprised of* people with diverse *disabilities, access and historic preservation professionals, and building inspectors should be consulted as accessibility improvements are developed.*

Modifications to improve accessibility should generally be based on the following priorities:

1. *Making* the main *public entrance(s) and primary public spaces accessible, including* paths to all main public entrances*;*
2. *Providing access to goods, services, and programs;*

3. *Providing accessible restroom facilities; and,*
4. *Creating access to amenities and secondary spaces.*

All proposed changes should be evaluated for conformance with the Secretary of the Interior's "Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties," which were created for property owners to guide preservation work. These Standards stress the importance of retaining and protecting the materials and features that are considered to *convey a property's historical significance. Thus, when new features are incorporated for accessibility, historic materials and features should be retained* unless alteration and/or removal is necessary to create equitable access*.* Preservationists should not preserve these features at the expense of equitable access. *Accessibility modifications should be in scale with the historic property, visually compatible, and, whenever possible, reversible. Reversible means that if the new feature were removed at a later date, the essential form and integrity of the property would be unimpaired. The design of new features should also be differentiated from the design of the historic property so that the evolution of the property is evident. See Making Historic Buildings Accessible on page 9.*

In some cases, programmatic access may be a permissible interim solution for properties that require considerable accessibility improvements. *Programmatic access for historic properties refers to alternative methods of providing services, information, and experiences when physical access* is temporarily unavailable*. It may mean offering an audio-visual program showing an inaccessible upper floor of a historic house museum, providing interpretive panels from a vista at an inaccessible terraced garden, or creating a tactile model of a historic monument for people with visual impairments.* Preservationists should replace programmatic access with equitable accessibility improvements as soon as is feasible.

***Accessibility* Improvements**

The goal in selecting appropriate accessibility improvements *for specific historic properties is to provide* equitable access so that everyone has the same opportunity to experience the property's *significant features* and *the overall character of the property. The following sections describe accessibility* improvements *and offer guidance on specific historic property components, namely the building site, entrances, interiors, landscapes, amenities, and new additions. Several* improvements *are discussed in each section, referencing dimensions and technical requirements from the ADA's accessibility guidelines, ADAAG. State and local requirements, however, may differ from the ADA requirements. Before making any modification, owners should be aware of all applicable accessibility requirements*. While preservationists must satisfy these legal requirements, they should adopt modifications that create equitable experiences for everyone as their standard for designing accessibility improvements. It is important for preservationists to remember that different accessibility improvements will work best for people

with different types of disabilities– there are no all-purpose modifications for equitable accessibility improvements. Preservationists should consult with people with disabilities and access experts to create as much balance as possible between any conflicting modifications.

Entrances

Preservationists should ensure that principle public entrance(s) are equitably accessible and that no public entrance excludes people with disabilities while permitting access for people without disabilities.

In cases where the historic main entrance has remained the main public entrance for the property, preservationists should strive to make that entrance equitably accessible for everyone. If this is structurally unfeasible, preservationists should relocate the primary public entrance(s) to other, accessible location(s) so that everyone has the same means and point of entering the property.

Some accessible entrance designs may require little to no modification to character-defining features, while others may require preservationists to modify character-defining features. Preservationists should avoid removing character-defining features so that everyone has an opportunity to experience them. However, there may be instances where it is necessary to remove or significantly alter character-defining features to facilitate equitable access. The examples below suggest how preservationists could work through various barriers to achieve this standard of access.

Example 1: The main entrance to a historic building that has been converted into a bookstore is accessed via a flight of three steps that lead to a single door that is somewhat ornate and that is too narrow for a wheelchair to pass through. This entrance is currently not accessible to people with disabilities and provides the principle public access to the site.

Accessibility Improvement Design Process:

The preservationist should consult with a team of people with diverse disabilities and access specialists to better understand what improvements would make the entrance equitably accessible. The two most evident obstacles are the stairs and the narrow doorway.

The steps: After consultation, it is determined that regrading the entrance to create a sloped access is the ideal option because it facilitates the same point and means of entry for every person. Additional questions to consider may include:

- What material(s) should be used for the regrading?
- Should any texture be added to the regraded surface?
- If so, should texture be added to all of the surface?
- Are there any auditory improvements or signage that would make the entrance more identifiable or that would otherwise be beneficial?

The doorway: Local access code requires that the doorway be at least 34 inches wide. To create equitable access, it is determined that the doorway must be widened so that everyone can use this entryway. Research on the property's significance indicates that the door is a character-defining feature for the building. The preservationist must consider if a wider replica of the door can be made or if instead an alternative must be pursued. In this case, a replica is preferable so that everyone has the opportunity to experience this feature. If a replica is unavailable, then an alternative, such as a more contemporary door, may be used for the accessibility improvement. Additional questions to consider may include:

- Are the door handles easily usable for people with disabilities and situated at the correct height?
- If not, what design would be more beneficial?
- Is there a way to make the door open automatically?
- If so, is there any benefit to this?

Example 2: The main entrance to a historic building that has been converted into a restaurant is accessed via a flight of seven steps that lead to an ornate front porch. The porch protrudes from the façade and has a decorative wooden railing. The original front door has been replaced, but the doorframe remains too narrow for a wheelchair to pass through. This entrance is currently not accessible to people with disabilities and provides the principle public access to the site.

Accessibility Improvement Design Process:

The preservationist should consult with a team of people with diverse disabilities and access specialists to better understand what improvements would make the entrance equitably accessible. The two most evident obstacles are the stairs and the narrow doorway.

The steps: Research on the building's significance indicates that the porch overall, including the steps, is a character-defining feature for the property. It is also determined that the terrain is too steep for a ramp to be added at the front of the building, or for the landscape to be regraded to slope up to the porch floor. Preservationists can add ramps on either side of porch so that everyone can use that entrance or create a new primary public entrance along the side of the building that everyone uses instead. A new primary public entrance may be more equitable because it will create the same point and means of access for everyone. Whereas, adding ramps to the existing primary public entrance will allow everyone to engage with the historic entryway, though some people with disabilities will only have the option of using the ramps instead of the front steps. It is recommended that preservationists first pursue making the front porch accessible so that everyone can use the existing historic entrance, and consider a new primary entrance as a secondary option.

Additional questions to consider may include:

- What material(s) will provide the most pleasant and accessible experience for those who use the ramps?
- Is any signage or extra lighting necessary to increase visibility of the ramps?
- Are there any decorative elements or designs that can be added to the ramps such that they offer a similar experience to using the front steps?
- How can the ramp distance be minimized so that those who use the ramps are not unnecessarily separated from people who use the steps?

The doorway: Research indicates that the door is not a character-defining feature of the building. Local access code requires that the doorway be at least 34 inches wide, and it is determined that the doorway will be widened regardless of how the step project proceeds. This will allow everyone to access the historic character of the front porch even if its use as a primary entrance is discontinued. The existing replacement door can be replaced with an option that fits the wider opening and is compatible with the historic building.

Additional questions to consider may include (these are also referenced in Example 1):

- Are the door handles easily usable for people with disabilities and situated at the correct height?
- If not, what design would be more beneficial?
- Is there a way to make the door open automatically?
- If so, is there any benefit to this?

Example 2: Accessibility within *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties*

In this example, I have proposed thorough revisions to the accessibility overview included in the introduction to *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties* and the accessibility subsection of *The Secretary of the Interior's Guidelines for Rehabilitating Historic Properties*. In contrast to *Preservation Briefs 32*, this document focuses on a general approach to accessibility improvements, which I have mirrored in the edits to maintain a consistent tone. As in Example #1, I have italicized the original text to distinguish between it and my proposed revisions.

Part I: Revisions to the overview on accessibility in the introduction to *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties*

It is often necessary to make modifications to a historic building so that it is equitably accessible for everyone. There are three federal laws that require certain historic buildings to be accessible: the Architectural Barriers Act of 1968, Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, and the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990. *Federal rules, regulations, and standards provide guidance on how to* ensure historic properties are compliant with the accessibility standards in these laws. While preservationists must, at minimum, abide by these standards, these Guidelines promote accessibility improvements in historic properties that are oriented around the goal of equitable access. Accessibility improvements should strive to create the same type and point of access for everyone. They should also be incorporated with the property's historic fabric when doing so is appropriate for the location and type of improvement. Doing so, for example, may be feasible when modifying a historic entryway, yet inappropriate when adding an elevator to a historic building. Following these recommendations will lead to equitable accessibility improvements that provide the same opportunities for everyone to experience historic properties.

The question is not if access should be provided, the question is how to make sure historic properties are equitably accessible so that everyone has the same opportunity to experience their character-defining features. Thus, *work must be carefully planned and undertaken* so that it achieves this goal of equitable access. Preservationists may need to consider adjusting character-defining features to achieve this goal. While a concerted effort should be made overall to maintain these features so that everyone can experience them, they should not be preserved in place at the expense of equitable access. Preservationists may adjust door widths, stairs, etc. if doing so will help achieve equitable access. It is critical to acknowledge that different accessibility improvements will work best for people with different types of disabilities. Preservationists should consult with people with disabilities and access experts to create as much balance as possible between any conflicting modifications.

Part II: Revisions to the accessibility subsection within the *Rehabilitation Guidelines* for code-required work

Creative accessibility improvements are an important part of facilitating equitable access to historic properties. Thus, options for providing this level of access *should be considered early in planning a* ***Rehabilitation*** *of a historic building for a new use. Because* each project is distinct, some properties will *require* more extensive improvements *than others. Early coordination* between people with disabilities, historic preservationists, and access specialists is encouraged to develop effective designs that support equitable access.	
Recommended	**Not Recommended**

Working with people with diverse abilities, access specialists, and historic preservation specialists to develop creative accessibility improvements that result in equitable access for everyone.[204]	• *Making changes to historic buildings, their sites, or setting without first consulting with* people with diverse disabilities and *specialists in accessibility and historic preservation to* develop accessibility improvements*.* • Designing accessibility improvements that provide inequitable access for people with disabilities, such as creating an accessible entrance that is separate from the primary public entrance.
Identifying the historic building's character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting so that they can be incorporated into accessibility designs.	*Undertaking* accessibility improvements *before identifying those exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting which are character-defining.*
• Creating accessibility improvements that incorporate *character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting* into the design whenever possible*.* • Altering character-defining features if doing so is necessary to facilitate equitable access.	• Preserving character-defining features at the expense of equitable access. • Removing character-defining features without first considering if they can be altered and incorporated into the accessibility design*.*
Designing equitable accessibility improvements *that promote independence for* people with disabilities *to the highest degree* possible*.*	Favoring accessibility improvements that require people with disabilities to rely on others for access*.*
• Creating the same point and means of entry for everyone. • *Adding a gradual slope or grade to the sidewalk, if appropriate, to access the entrance rather than installing a ramp.*	Adding accessible ramps or lifts without exploring options for creating the same point and means of entry for everyone.
Adding an exterior stair or elevator tower that is compatible with the historic character of the building in a prominent location that is easily accessible and marked with clear signage.	Adding exterior stairs and/or elevators in locations that are difficult to access and that lack discrete, plentiful signage indicating their location

[204] In the existing *Guidelines*, the "recommended" and "not recommended" consultation approaches are the third item in the table. In these revisions, I have reordered them as the first topic to reinforce the importance of collaboration when creating equitable accessibility improvements.

If necessary, designing new or additional means of access that are compatible with the historic property and its setting without compromising equitable access.	• Designing new or additional means of access without considering the impact on the historic property and its setting. • Designing inequitable means of access in order to preserve the historic property and its setting.

There are many instances of repetition between these two rewritten examples. In both, I include a pervasive emphasis on equitable access and encourage preservationists to create a balance between historic fabric and accessibility whenever possible without compromising equitable access. This replication promotes consistent messaging across distinct components of our authorized heritage discourse. The more thoroughly we incorporate these ideas into our practice, the more likely they are to create change within our field.

Ways Forward Beyond this Study

These reworked components of our authorized heritage discourse are only two examples of how preservationists could incorporate this new way of thinking about and designing for accessibility into our preservation practice. I chose these examples because they directly address accessibility improvements in historic buildings and are therefore most relevant to the topic of this study. For this new way of thinking to truly have influence on our work, our field will need to adopt this mindset consistently across our authorized heritage discourse, and ultimately within local areas of practice. In the following section, I suggest additional actions we could take to weave this new approach into our preservation practice.

Updating Our Authorized Heritage Discourse

Updating *Preservation Briefs 32* and select sections of *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards and Guidelines* will have little impact if the overarching *Standards* for preserving,

rehabilitating, restoring, and reconstructing historic properties remain unaltered. These *Standards* are significant, influential components of our authorized heritage discourse. The Preservation Briefs frequently reference them, the *Rehabilitation Standards* impact tax credits for historic rehabilitation projects, and alterations that contradict these *Standards* are considered "adverse effects" that endanger a property's significance according to the Section 106 review process, which identifies effects that federally-funded projects will have on historic projects.[205] Within this review process, planned alterations, including accessibility improvements, that do not align with these *Standards* can impact if and how a federally-funded project proceeds.[206]

As previously discussed, these *Standards* currently reflect our fabric-focused model of preservation that emphasizes the importance of protecting historic materials whenever possible. Revising these *Standards* and the accompanying *Guidelines* to reflect a people-focused preservation model and the value it places on our relationships with and the meaning we draw from historic places is an important next step, arguably an important first step, to creating this paradigm shift in our practice. These revisions will impact not only the *Standards* themselves, but also the other areas of practice the *Standards* influence, including the Preservation Briefs, the Historic Tax Credit program, the Section 106 review process, any local preservation commissions that model their preservation guidelines on these *Standards*, and beyond.

---

[205] The National Endowment for the Humanities, "Frequently Asked Questions about Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act," accessed March 13, 2022, https://www.neh.gov/grants/manage/frequently-asked-questions-about-section-106-the-national-historic-preservation-act; Technical Preservation Services, "The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation & Illustrated Guidelines for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings: Introduction to the Standards."

[206] The National Endowment for the Humanities, "Frequently Asked Questions about Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act."

Moving Beyond the Entrance

This study explores how preservationists can reconsider the relationship between accessibility and historic buildings overall, with an emphasis on revising our mindset towards accessible historic entrances. I have focused on the entrance because it is one of the first physical barriers to equitable access, and because the act of entering is one of the first physical exchanges people with disabilities have with historic properties. But, building entrances are only one of the many components that preservationists will need to consider when designing equitable accessibility improvements. Universal Design theory emphasizes designing buildings, not just entrances, that function for all people. We can borrow from the premise of this theory to create comprehensive accessibility improvements in historic buildings. This will include making hallways, restrooms, staircases, and more equitably accessible for people with diverse disabilities.

I acknowledge that it is impractical to expect that preservationists can design historic buildings to be universally and comprehensively accessible for every person with every kind of disability. However, I do argue that we should strive to make historic places as equitably accessible as possible for as many kinds of people as we can if we seek to work towards a people-focused model of preservation. Consulting with people with disabilities will help us achieve this goal, because doing so will help preservationists learn about the various design elements that are beneficial to people with different kinds of abilities. Aimi Hamraie reminds us that people with disabilities are experts in the design elements that will and will not work for them; this is an idea that preservationists should respect and embrace.[207] We should build

[207] Hamraie, *Building Access,* 142-192.

relationships with local and national disability organizations and conduct outreach directly within communities to develop a network of consultants who will collaborate with us on accessibility designs.

My final suggestion for taking these ideas beyond this study is that preservationists should begin developing an equitable access catalogue, either through the National Trust for Historic Preservation or at a more grassroots level. This resource can serve as an idea bank for modifications that have achieved equitable access within historic places, with examples of both "in progress" partial modifications and completed projects that have created as comprehensive access as possible. This idea bank should not evolve into a checklist or a pamphlet of rote accessibility improvements. Rather, it should be a valuable resource for inspiration, and a starting point for preservationists and property owners who may not have the financial resources or the knowledge to design equitable accessibility improvements without assistance.

Incorporating this new mindset towards accessibility and historic preservation requires pervasive change throughout our field. Updating our authorized heritage discourse, consulting with people with disabilities, and developing resources preservationists can draw from are important steps that will help move this shift forward, but this list is certainly not comprehensive. Preservationists should continue to question how we can further support equitable access in historic places and what additional changes and resources will help incorporate this mindset into our practice.

Final Thoughts

This study is intended to argue for change in our field's day-to-day response when we encounter historic places that are not fully, equitably accessible to every person who wants to

experience them. I encourage preservationists to ask *why* historic buildings continue to exclude and/or "other" people with disabilities when we support reorienting our practice around preserving what these places mean to people. I believe we should actively challenge arguments for preserving historic fabric at the expense of equitable access and have proposed changes to our authorized heritage discourse that give more agency for preservation practitioners to do so. I do not propose that we adopt a policy of demolishing historic fabric without thought to create access, because the fabric and those character-defining features contribute to the experience of place. Instead, I argue that a people-focused preservation model both requires and allows preservationists to alter historic features so that everyone can enjoy them. This revised relationship between accessibility and historic fabric seeks to reconceptualize historic buildings into engaging places of experience for all people.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

APA Style. “Disability.” Bias-Free Language, August 2021. https://apastyle.apa.org/style-grammar-guidelines/bias-free-language/disability.

Cohen, Julie M. “Opposing Views on the Fate of NewCAL - City Grapples with How to Balance Accessibility, Historic Preservation.” *Newton TAB (MA)*, March 2, 2022. Access World News.

Cross, Jennifer Eileen. “Processes of Place Attachment: An Interactional Framework.” *Symbolic Interaction* 38, no. 4 (November 2015): 493–520. https://doi.org/10.1002/symb.198.

Davis, Lennard J. “Crips Strike Back: The Rise of Disability Studies.” *American Literary History* 11, no. 3 (March 1, 1999): 500–512. https://doi.org/10.1093/alh/11.3.500.

———. *Enabling Acts: The Hidden Story of How The Americans with Disabilities Act Gave the Largest U.S. Minority Its Rights*. Boston, MA: Beacon Press, 2015.

———. “Introduction: Normality, Power. and Culture.” In *The Disability Studies Reader*, edited by Lennard J. Davis, Fourth Edition., 1–14. New York, NY: Taylor & Francis Group, 2013.

———, ed. *The Disability Studies Reader*. Fourth Edition. New York, NY: Taylor & Francis Group, 2013. http://ebookcentral.proquest.com/lib/goucher-ebooks/detail.action?docID=1125176.

Department of Justice. *2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design*. Washington, D.C.: Department of Justice, 2010.

Dolmage, Jay Timothy. *Academic Ableism: Disability and Higher Education*. Ann Arbor, MI: University of Michigan Press, 2017.

Dubrow, Gail. “From Minority to Majority: Building On and Moving Beyond the Politics of Identity in Historic Preservation.” In *Bending the Future: 50 Ideas for the Next 50 Years of Historic Preservation in the United States*, edited by Max Page and Marla R. Miller, 72–75. Amherst and Boston, MA: University of Massachusetts Press, 2016.

Fowler, John M. “The Federal Preservation Program.” In *A Richer Heritage : Historic Preservation in the Twenty-First Century*, edited by Robert E. Stipe, 35–79. Chapel Hill, NC: University of North Carolina Press, 2003.

Garland-Thomson, Rosemarie. “Feminist Disability Studies.” *Signs: Journal of Women in Culture and Society* 30, no. 2 (January 2005): 1557–87. https://doi.org/10.1086/423352.

Goering, Sara. “Rethinking Disability: The Social Model of Disability and Chronic Disease.” *Current Reviews in Musculoskeletal Medicine* 8, no. 2 (April 11, 2015): 134–38. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12178-015-9273-z.

Gomes, Ruthie Bonan, Paula Helena Lopes, Marivete Gesser, and Maria Juracy Filgueiras Toneli. “New Dialogues in Feminist Disability Studies.” *Estudos Feministas* 27, no. 1 (2019): 1–13.

Grimmer, Anne E., and Kay D. Weeks. *Preservation Briefs 14: New Exterior Additions to Historic Buildings; Preservation Concerns*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of the Interior National Park Service, 2010. https://www.nps.gov/tps/how-to-preserve/briefs/14-exterior-additions.htm.

Hamraie, Aimi. *Building Access: Universal Design and the Politics of Disability*. Minneapolis, MN: University of Minnesota Press, 2017.

———. “Universal Design and the Problem of ‘Post-Disability’ Ideology.” *Design and Culture* 8, no. 3 (September 2016): 1–25. https://doi.org/10.1080/17547075.2016.1218714.

Herman, Bernard L. *Town House: Architecture and Material Life in the Early American City, 1780-1830*. Chapel Hill, NC: University of North Carolina Press, 2005.

Imrie, Rob. “Universalism, Universal Design and Equitable Access to the Built Environment.” *Disability and Rehabilitation* 34, no. 10 (May 2012): 873–82. https://doi.org/10.3109/09638288.2011.624250.

Iwarsson, S., and A. Ståhl. “Accessibility, Usability and Universal Design—Positioning and Definition of Concepts Describing Person-Environment Relationships.” *Disability and Rehabilitation* 25, no. 2 (January 2003): 57–66. https://doi.org/10.1080/dre.25.2.57.66.

Jackson, Jane. *The Routledge Handbook of Language and Intercultural Communication*. New York, NY: Routledge, 2012.

Jester, Thomas C., and Sharon C. Park. *Preservation Briefs 32: Making Historic Properties Accessible*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of the Interior National Park Service, 1993. https://www.nps.gov/tps/how-to-preserve/briefs/32-accessibility.htm.

Kelley, Gail S. “ADA Requirements for Historic Properties.” *Structure Magazine*, November 2014. https://www.structuremag.org/?p=7540.

Disability Cultural Center. “Language Guide.” Accessed March 28, 2022. https://ese.syr.edu/dcc/resources/language-guide/.

Lea, Diane. “America’s Preservation Ethos: A Tribute to Enduring Ideals.” In *A Richer Heritage : Historic Preservation in the Twenty-First Century*, edited by Robert E. Stipe, 1–20. Chapel Hill, NC: University of North Carolina Press, 2003.

Lyon, Elizabeth A., and David L. S. Brook. “The States: The Backbone of Preservation.” In *A Richer Heritage : Historic Preservation in the Twenty-First Century*, edited by Robert E. Stipe, 81–116. Chapel Hill, NC: University of North Carolina Press, 2003.

Mackintosh, Barry. *The National Historic Preservation Act & The National Park Service: A History*. Washington, D.C.: History Division, National Park Service Department of the Interior, 1986. https://heinonline.org/HOL/P?h=hein.beal/nhisprks0001&i=1.

Manzo, Lynne C. “For Better or Worse: Exploring Multiple Dimensions of Place Meaning.” *Journal of Environmental Psychology* 25, no. 1 (March 2005): 67–86. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvp.2005.01.002.

Manzo, Lynne C., and Patrick Devine-Wright. “Introduction.” In *Place Attachment: Advances in Theory, Methods, and Applications*, edited by Lynne C. Manzo and Patrick Devine-Wright, Second Edition., 1–9. London: Routledge, 2020.

Markham, Lauren. “The Man Who Filed More Than 180 Disability Lawsuits.” *The New York Times Magazine*, July 21, 2021. https://www.nytimes.com/2021/07/21/magazine/americans-with-disabilities-act.html.

Mason, Randall. “Fixing Historic Preservation: A Constructive Critique of ‘Significance.’” *Places* 16, no. 1 (2004): 64–71.

———. “Theoretical and Practical Arguments for Values-Centered Preservation.” *CRM: The Journal of Heritage Stewardship* 3 (Summer 2006). https://home1.nps.gov/CRMJournal/Summer2006/view2.html.

Matthews, Christopher N. “A People’s Preservation: Urban Erasures in Essex County, NJ.” *Journal for the Anthropology of North America* 23, no. 1 (March 2020): 47–66. https://doi.org/10.1002/nad.12125.

Najafi, Mina, and Mustafa Kamal. “The Concept of Place Attachment in Environmental Psychology.” *Sustainable Architecture* 45 (2012): 7637–41.

Nasar, Jack L. “Are Retrofitted Wheelchair Entries Separate and Unequal?” *Landscape and Urban Planning* 95, no. 4 (April 2010): 169–74. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.landurbplan.2009.12.014.

National Trust for Historic Preservation. “Preservation for People: A Vision for the Future,” May 2017. https://forum.savingplaces.org/HigherLogic/System/DownloadDocumentFile.ashx?DocumentFileKey=57133684-4c32-4863-5965-96476f7b4dab&forceDialog=1.

Ollove, Michael. “Mr. Accessibility.” *The Sun*. March 29, 2004, sec. Today.

Ostroff, Elaine. “Universal Design: An Evolving Paradigm.” In *Universal Design Handbook*, edited by Wolfgang F. E. Preiser and Korydon H. Smith, 2nd Edition., 1.3-1.11. McGraw Hill, 2011.

Page, Max, and Marla R. Miller. “Introduction.” In *Bending the Future: 50 Ideas for the Next 50 Years of Historic Preservation in the United States*, edited by Max Page and Marla R. Miller, 1–43. Amherst and Boston, MA: University of Massachusetts Press, 2016.

Rhoads, Marcela A. *Applying the ADA: Designing for the 2010 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Accessible Design in Multiple Building Types*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, Incorporated, 2013. http://ebookcentral.proquest.com/lib/goucher-ebooks/detail.action?docID=1161974.

Scannell, Leila, and Robert Gifford. “Defining Place Attachment: A Tripartite Organizing Framework.” *Journal of Environmental Psychology* 30, no. 1 (March 2010): 1–10. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jenvp.2009.09.006.

Shakespeare, Tom. “The Social Model of Disability.” In *The Disability Studies Reader*, edited by Lennard J. Davis, Fourth Edition., 214–21. New York, NY: Taylor & Francis Group, 2013. http://ebookcentral.proquest.com/lib/goucher-ebooks/detail.action?docID=1125176.

Siebers, Tobin. “Disability in Theory: From Social Constructionism to the New Realism of the Body.” *American Literary History* 13, no. 4 (April 1, 2001): 737–54. https://doi.org/10.1093/alh/13.4.737.

Silverman, Amy. “Disability Language Style Guide.” National Center on Disability and Journalism, August 2021. https://ncdj.org/style-guide/.

Smith, Laurajane. *Uses of Heritage*. London, England: Routledge, 2006.

Sprinkle, Jr., John H. *Crafting Preservation Criteria: The National Register of Historic Places and American Historic Preservation*. New York, NY: Routledge, 2014.

Story, Molly Follette. “Principles, Standards, and Guidelines.” In *Universal Design Handbook*, edited by Wolfgang F. E. Preiser and Korydon H. Smith, 2nd Edition., 4.3-4.12. McGraw Hill, 2011.

Tyler, Norman, Ted J. Ligibel, and Ilene R. Tyler. *Historic Preservation: An Introduction to Its History, Principles, and Practice*. Second Edition. New York, NY: W.W. Norton & Company, 2009.

United States Department of Justice. "ADA Enforcement." Information and Technical Assistance on the Americans with Disabilities Act. Accessed February 12, 2022. https://www.ada.gov/enforce_current.htm#TitleIII.

———. "File a Complaint." Accessed April 6, 2022. https://beta.ada.gov/file-a-complaint/.

Upton, Dell. "White and Black Landscapes in Eighteenth-Century Virginia." *Places* 2, no. 2 (November 1, 1984): 59–72.

Vu, Minh, Kristina Launey, and Susan Ryan. "ADA Title III Federal Mid-Year Lawsuit Numbers at an All-Time High." ADA Title III: News and Insights, August 18, 2021. https://www.adatitleiii.com/2021/08/ada-title-iii-federal-mid-year-lawsuit-numbers-at-an-all-time-high/.

Weeks, Kay D., and Anne E. Grimmer. *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings*. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of the Interior, National Park Service, 2017.

Williamson, Bess. *Accessible America: A History of Disability and Design*. New York, NY: New York University Press, 2019.

The NCCSD Clearinghouse and Resource Library. "Writing About Disability." Accessed March 28, 2022. https://www.nccsdclearinghouse.org/writing-about-disability.html.

APPENDIX

This appendix includes the three examples of our authorized heritage discourse that I have analyzed in this study, (1) *Preservation Briefs 14: New Exterior Additions to Historic Buildings; Preservation Concerns*, (2) *Preservation Briefs 32: Making Historic Buildings Accessible*, and (3) *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, & Reconstructing Historic Buildings*.

14 PRESERVATION BRIEFS

New Exterior Additions to Historic Buildings: Preservation Concerns

Anne E. Grimmer and Kay D. Weeks

National Park Service
U.S. Department of the Interior

Technical Preservation Services

A new exterior addition to a historic building should be considered in a rehabilitation project only after determining that requirements for the new or adaptive use cannot be successfully met by altering non-significant interior spaces. If the new use cannot be accommodated in this way, then an exterior addition may be an acceptable alternative. Rehabilitation as a treatment "is defined as the act or process of making possible a compatible use for a property through repair, alterations, and *additions* while preserving those portions or features which convey its historical, cultural, or architectural values."

The topic of new additions, including rooftop additions, to historic buildings comes up frequently, especially as it relates to rehabilitation projects. It is often discussed and it is the subject of concern, consternation, considerable disagreement and confusion. Can, in certain instances, a historic building be enlarged for a new use without destroying its historic character? And, just what is significant about each particular historic building that should be preserved? Finally, what kind of new construction is appropriate to the historic building?

The vast amount of literature on the subject of additions to historic buildings reflects widespread interest as well as divergence of opinion. New additions have been discussed by historians within a social and political framework; by architects and architectural historians in terms of construction technology and style; and by urban planners as successful or unsuccessful contextual design. However, within the historic preservation and rehabilitation programs of the National Park Service, the focus on new additions is to ensure that they preserve the character of historic buildings.

Figure 1. The addition to the right with its connecting hyphen is compatible with the Collegiate Gothic-style library. The addition is set back from the front of the library and uses the same materials and a simplified design that references, but does not copy, the historic building. Photo: David Wakely Photography.

Most historic districts or neighborhoods are listed in the National Register of Historic Places for their significance within a particular time frame. This period of significance of historic districts as well as individually-listed properties may sometimes lead to a misunderstanding that inclusion in the National Register may prohibit any physical change outside of a certain historical period—particularly in the form of exterior additions. National Register listing does not mean that a building or district is frozen in time and that no change can be made without compromising the historical significance. It does mean, however, that a new addition to a historic building should preserve its historic character.

Figure 2. The new section on the right is appropriately scaled and reflects the design of the historic Art Deco-style hotel. The apparent separation created by the recessed connector also enables the addition to be viewed as an individual building.

Guidance on New Additions

To meet Standard 1 of the *Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation*, which states that "a property shall be used for its historic purpose or be placed in a new use that requires minimal change to the defining characteristics of the building and its site and environment," it must be determined whether a historic building can accommodate a new addition. Before expanding the building's footprint, consideration should first be given to incorporating changes—such as code upgrades or spatial needs for a new use—within secondary areas of the historic building. However, this is not always possible and, after such an evaluation, the conclusion may be that an addition is required, particularly if it is needed to avoid modifications to character-defining interior spaces. An addition should be designed to be compatible with the historic character of the building and, thus, meet the *Standards for Rehabilitation*. Standards 9 and 10 apply specifically to new additions:

> (9) "New additions, exterior alterations, or related new construction shall not destroy historic materials that characterize the property. The new work shall be differentiated from the old and shall be compatible with the massing, size, scale, and architectural features to protect the historic integrity of the property and its environment."
>
> (10) "New additions and adjacent or related new construction shall be undertaken in such a manner that if removed in the future, the essential form and integrity of the historic property and its environment would be unimpaired."

The subject of new additions is important because a new addition to a historic building has the potential to change its historic character as well as to damage and destroy significant historic materials and features. A new addition also has the potential to confuse the public and to make it difficult or impossible to differentiate the old from the new or to recognize what part of the historic building is genuinely historic.

The intent of this Preservation Brief is to provide guidance to owners, architects and developers on how to design a compatible new addition, including a rooftop addition, to a historic building. A new addition to a historic building should preserve the building's *historic character.* To accomplish this and meet the *Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation*, a new addition should:

- Preserve significant historic materials, features and form;
- Be compatible; and
- Be differentiated from the historic building.

Every historic building is different and each rehabilitation project is unique. Therefore, the guidance offered here is not specific, but general, so that it can be applied to a wide variety of building types and situations. To assist in interpreting this guidance, illustrations of a variety of new additions are provided. Good examples, as well as some that do not meet the Standards, are included to further help explain and clarify what is a compatible new addition that preserves the character of the historic building.

Figure 3. The red and buff-colored parking addition with a rooftop playground is compatible with the early-20th century school as well as with the neighborhood in which it also serves as infill in the urban setting.

Preserve Significant Historic Materials, Features and Form

Attaching a new exterior addition usually involves some degree of material loss to an external wall of a historic building, but it should be minimized. Damaging or destroying significant materials and craftsmanship should be avoided, as much as possible.

Generally speaking, preservation of historic buildings inherently implies minimal change to primary or "public" elevations and, of course, interior features as well. Exterior features that distinguish one historic building or a row of buildings and which can be seen from a public right of way, such as a street or sidewalk, are most likely to be the most significant. These can include many different elements, such as: window patterns, window hoods or shutters; porticoes, entrances and doorways; roof shapes, cornices and decorative moldings; or commercial storefronts with their special detailing, signs and glazing patterns. Beyond a single building, entire blocks of urban or residential structures are often closely related architecturally by their materials, detailing, form and alignment. Because significant materials and features should be preserved, not damaged or hidden, the first place to consider placing a new addition is in a location where the least amount of historic material and character-defining features will be lost. In most cases, this will be on a secondary side or rear elevation.

Figure 4. This glass and brick structure is a harmonious addition set back and connected to the rear of the Colonial Revival-style brick house. Cunningham/Quill Architects. Photos: © Maxwell MacKenzie.

One way to reduce overall material loss when constructing a new addition is simply to keep the addition smaller in proportion to the size of the historic building. Limiting the size and number of openings between old and new by utilizing existing doors or enlarging windows also helps to minimize loss. An often successful way to accomplish this is to link the addition to the historic building by means of a hyphen or connector. A connector provides a physical link while visually separating the old and new, and the connecting passageway penetrates and removes only a small portion of the historic wall. A new addition that will abut the historic building along an entire elevation or wrap around a side and rear elevation, will likely integrate the historic and the new interiors, and thus result in a high degree of loss of form and exterior walls, as well as significant alteration of interior spaces and features, and will not meet the Standards.

Compatible but Differentiated Design

In accordance with the Standards, a new addition must preserve the building's historic character and, in order to do that, it must be differentiated, but compatible, with the historic building. A new addition must retain the essential form and integrity of the historic property. Keeping the addition smaller, limiting the removal of historic materials by linking the addition with a hyphen, and locating the new addition at the rear or on an inconspicuous side elevation of a historic building are techniques discussed previously that can help to accomplish this.

Rather than differentiating between old and new, it might seem more in keeping with the historic character

simply to repeat the historic form, material, features and detailing in a new addition. However, when the new work is highly replicative and indistinguishable from the old in appearance, it may no longer be possible to identify the "real" historic building. Conversely, the treatment of the addition should not be so different that it becomes the primary focus. The difference may be subtle, but it must be clear. A new addition to a historic building should protect those visual qualities that make the building eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places.

The National Park Service policy concerning new additions to historic buildings, which was adopted in 1967, is not unique. It is an outgrowth and continuation of a general philosophical approach to change first expressed by John Ruskin in England in the 1850s, formalized by William Morris in the founding of the Society for the Protection of Ancient Buildings in 1877, expanded by the Society in 1924 and, finally, reiterated in the 1964 Venice Charter—a document that continues to be followed by the national committees of the International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS). The 1967 *Administrative Policies for Historical Areas of the National Park System* direct that "...a modern addition should be readily distinguishable from the older work; however, the new work should be harmonious with the old in scale, proportion, materials, and color. Such additions should be as inconspicuous as possible from the public view." As a logical evolution from these Policies specifically for National Park Service-owned historic structures, the 1977 *Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation*, which may be applied to **all** historic buildings listed in, or eligible for listing in the National Register, also state that "the new work shall be differentiated from the old and shall be compatible with the massing, size, scale, and architectural features to protect the historic integrity of the property and its environment."

Preserve Historic Character

The goal, of course, is a new addition that preserves the building's historic character. The historic character of each building may be different, but the methodology of establishing it remains the same. Knowing the uses and functions a building has served over time will assist in making what is essentially a physical evaluation. But, while written and pictorial documentation can provide a framework for establishing the building's history, to a large extent the historic character is embodied in the physical aspects of the historic building itself—shape, materials, features, craftsmanship, window arrangements, colors, setting and interiors. Thus, it is important to identify the historic character before making decisions about the extent—or limitations—of change that can be made.

Figure 5. This addition (a) is constructed of matching brick and attached by a recessed connector (b) to the 1914 apartment building (c). The design is compatible and the addition is smaller and subordinate to the historic building (d).

Figure 6. A new addition (left) is connected to the garage which separates it from the main block of the c. 1910 former florist shop (right). The addition is traditional in style, yet sufficiently restrained in design to distinguish it from the historic building.

A new addition should always be subordinate to the historic building; it should not compete in size, scale or design with the historic building. An addition that bears no relationship to the proportions and massing of the historic building—in other words, one that overpowers the historic form and changes the scale—will usually compromise the historic character as well. The appropriate size for a new addition varies from building to building; it could never be stated in a square or cubic footage ratio, but the historic building's existing proportions, site and setting can help set some general parameters for enlargement. Although even a small addition that is poorly designed can have an adverse impact, to some extent, there is a predictable relationship between the size of the historic resource and what is an appropriate size for a compatible new addition.

Generally, constructing the new addition on a secondary side or rear elevation—in addition to material preservation—will also preserve the historic character. Not only will the addition be less visible, but because a secondary elevation is usually simpler and less distinctive, the addition will have less of a physical and visual impact on the historic building. Such placement will help to preserve the building's historic form and relationship to its site and setting.

Historic landscape features, including distinctive grade variations, also need to be respected. Any new landscape features, including plants and trees, should be kept at a scale and density that will not interfere with understanding of the historic resource itself. A traditionally landscaped property should not be covered with large paved areas for parking which would drastically change the character of the site.

Despite the fact that in most cases it is recommended that the new addition be attached to a secondary elevation, sometimes this is not possible. There simply may not be a secondary elevation—some important freestanding buildings have significant materials and features on all sides. A structure or group of structures together with its setting (for example, a college campus) may be of such significance that any new addition would not only damage materials, but alter the buildings' relationship to each other and the setting. An addition attached to a highly-visible elevation of a historic building can radically alter the historic form or obscure features such as a decorative cornice or window ornamentation. Similarly, an addition that fills

Figure 7. A vacant side lot was the only place a new stair tower could be built when this 1903 theater was rehabilitated as a performing arts center. Constructed with matching materials, the stair tower is set back with a recessed connector and, despite its prominent location, it is clearly subordinate and differentiated from the historic theater.

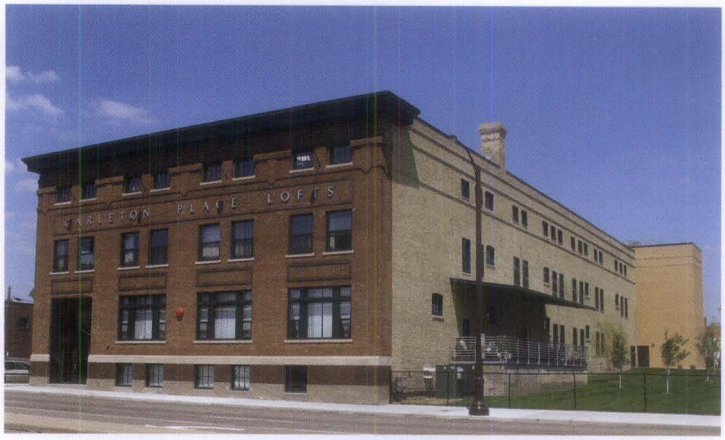


Figure 8. The rehabilitation of this large, early-20th century warehouse (left) into affordable artists' lofts included the addition of a compatible glass and brick elevator/stair tower at the back (right).

Figure 9. A simple, brick stair tower replaced two non-historic additions at the rear of this 1879 school building when it was rehabilitated as a women's and children's shelter. The addition is set back and it is not visible from the front of the school.

Figure 10. The small size and the use of matching materials ensures that the new addition on the left is compatible with the historic Romanesque Revival-style building.

in a planned void on a highly-visible elevation (such as a U-shaped plan or a feature such as a porch) will also alter the historic form and, as a result, change the historic character. Under these circumstances, an addition would have too much of a negative impact on the historic building and it would not meet the Standards. Such situations may best be handled by constructing a separate building in a location where it will not adversely affect the historic structure and its setting.

In other instances, particularly in urban areas, there may be no other place but adjacent to the primary façade to locate an addition needed for the new use. It may be possible to design a lateral addition attached on the side that is compatible with the historic building, even though it is a highly-visible new element. Certain types of historic structures, such as government buildings, metropolitan museums, churches or libraries, may be so massive in size that a relatively large-scale addition may not compromise the historic character, provided, of course, the addition is smaller than the historic building. Occasionally, the visible size of an addition can be reduced by placing some of the spaces or support systems in a part of the structure that is underground. Large new additions may sometimes be successful if they read as a separate volume, rather than as an extension of the historic structure, although the scale, massing and proportions of the addition still need to be compatible with the historic building. However, similar expansion of smaller buildings would be dramatically out of scale. In summary, where any new addition is proposed, correctly assessing the relationship between actual size and relative scale will be a key to preserving the character of the historic building.

Figure 11. The addition to this early-20th century Gothic Revival-style church provides space for offices, a great hall for gatherings and an accessible entrance (left). The stucco finish, metal roof, narrow gables and the Gothic-arched entrance complement the architecture of the historic church. Placing the addition in back where the ground slopes away ensures that it is subordinate and minimizes its impact on the church (below).

Design Guidance for Compatible New Additions to Historic Buildings

There is no formula or prescription for designing a new addition that meets the Standards. A new addition to a historic building that meets the Standards can be any architectural style—traditional, contemporary or a simplified version of the historic building. However, there must be a balance between differentiation and compatibility in order to maintain the historic character and the identity of the building being enlarged. New additions that too closely resemble the historic building or are in extreme contrast to it fall short of this balance. *Inherent in all of the guidance is the concept that an addition needs to be subordinate to the historic building.*

A new addition **must preserve significant historic materials, features and form**, and **it must be compatible but differentiated from the historic building**. To achieve this, it is necessary to carefully consider the **placement or location** of the new addition, and its **size, scale and massing** when planning a new addition. To preserve a property's historic character, a new addition must be visually distinguishable from the historic building. This does not mean that the addition and the historic building should be glaringly different in terms of design, materials and other visual qualities. Instead, the new addition should take its design cues from, but not copy, the historic building.

A variety of design techniques can be effective ways to differentiate the new construction from the old, while respecting the architectural qualities and vocabulary of the historic building, including the following:

- Incorporate a simple, recessed, small-scale hyphen to physically separate the old and the new volumes or set the addition back from the wall plane(s) of the historic building.
- Avoid designs that unify the two volumes into a single architectural whole. The new addition may include simplified architectural features that reflect, but do not duplicate, similar features on the historic building. This approach will not impair the existing building's historic character as long as the new structure is subordinate in size and clearly differentiated and distinguishable so that the identity of the historic structure is not lost in a new and larger composition. The historic building must be clearly identifiable and its physical integrity must not be compromised by the new addition.

Figure 12. This 1954 synagogue (left) is accessed through a monumental entrance to the right. The new education wing (far right) added to it features the same vertical elements and color and, even though it is quite large, its smaller scale and height ensure that it is secondary to the historic resource.

Figure 13. A glass and metal structure was constructed in the courtyard as a restaurant when this 1839 building was converted to a hotel. Although such an addition might not be appropriate in a more public location, it is compatible here in the courtyard of this historic building.

Figure 14. This glass addition was erected at the back of an 1895 former brewery during rehabilitation to provide another entrance. The addition is compatible with the plain character of this secondary elevation.

- Use building materials in the same color range or value as those of the historic building. The materials need not be the same as those on the historic building, but they should be harmonious; they should not be so different that they stand out or distract from the historic building. (Even clear glass can be as prominent as a less transparent material. Generally, glass may be most appropriate for small-scale additions, such as an entrance on a secondary elevation or a connector between an addition and the historic building.)

- Base the size, rhythm and alignment of the new addition's window and door openings on those of the historic building.

- Respect the architectural expression of the historic building type. For example, an addition to an institutional building should maintain the architectural character associated with this building type rather than using details and elements typical of residential or other building types.

These techniques are merely examples of ways to differentiate a new addition from the historic building while ensuring that the addition is compatible with it. Other ways of differentiating a new addition from the historic building may be used as long as they maintain the primacy of the historic building. Working within these basic principles still allows for a broad range of architectural expression that can range from stylistic similarity to contemporary distinction. The recommended design approach for an addition is one that neither copies the historic building exactly nor stands in stark contrast to it.

Revising an Incompatible Design for a New Addition to Meet the Standards

Figure 15. The rehabilitation of a c. 1930 high school auditorium for a clinic and offices proposed two additions: a one-story entrance and reception area on this elevation (a); and a four-story elevator and stair tower on another side (b). The gabled entrance (c) first proposed was not compatible with the flat-roofed auditorium and the design of the proposed stair tower (d) was also incompatible and overwhelmed the historic building. The designs were revised (e-f) resulting in new additions that meet the Standards (g-h).

Incompatible New Additions to Historic Buildings

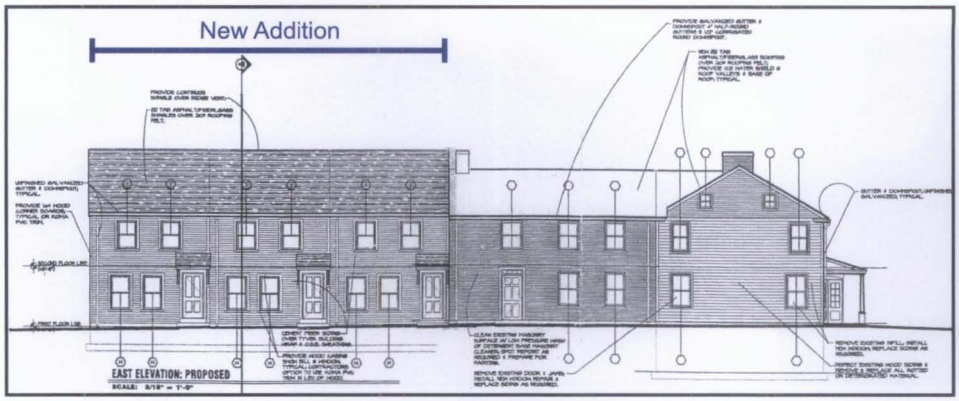


Figure 16. The proposal to add three row houses to the rear ell of this early-19th century residential property doubles its size and does not meet the Standards..

Figure 17. The small addition on the left is starkly different and it is not compatible with the eclectic, late-19th century house.

Figure 18. The expansion of a one- and one-half story historic bungalow (left) with a large two-story rear addition (right) has greatly altered and obscured its distinctive shape and form.

Figure 19. The upper two floors of this early-20th century office building were part of the original design, but were not built. During rehabilitation, the two stories were finally constructed. This treatment does not meet the Standards because the addition has given the building an appearance it never had historically.

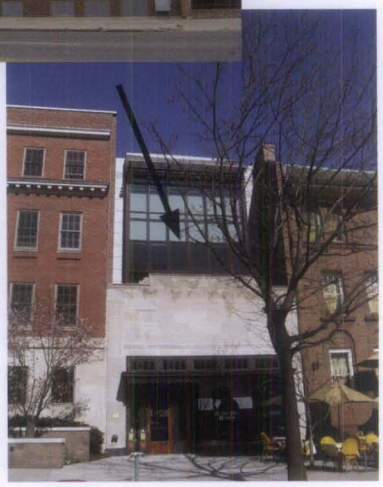


Figure 20. The height, as well as the design, of these two-story rooftop additions overwhelms the two-story and the one-story, low-rise historic buildings.

New Additions in Densely-Built Environments

In built-up urban areas, locating a new addition on a less visible side or rear elevation may not be possible simply because there is no available space. In this instance, there may be alternative ways to help preserve the historic character. One approach when connecting a new addition to a historic building on a primary elevation is to use a hyphen to separate them. A subtle variation in material, detailing and color may also provide the degree of differentiation necessary to avoid changing the essential proportions and character of the historic building.

A densely-built neighborhood such as a downtown commercial core offers a particular opportunity to design an addition that will have a minimal impact on the historic building. Often the site for such an addition is a vacant lot where another building formerly stood. Treating the addition as a separate or infill building may be the best approach when designing an addition that will have the least impact on the historic building and the district. In these instances there may be no need for a direct visual link to the historic building. Height and setback from the street should generally be consistent with those of the historic building and other surrounding buildings in the district. Thus, in most urban commercial areas the addition should not be set back from the façade of the historic building. A tight urban setting may sometimes even accommodate a larger addition if the primary elevation is designed to give the appearance of being several buildings by breaking up the facade into elements that are consistent with the scale of the historic building and adjacent buildings.

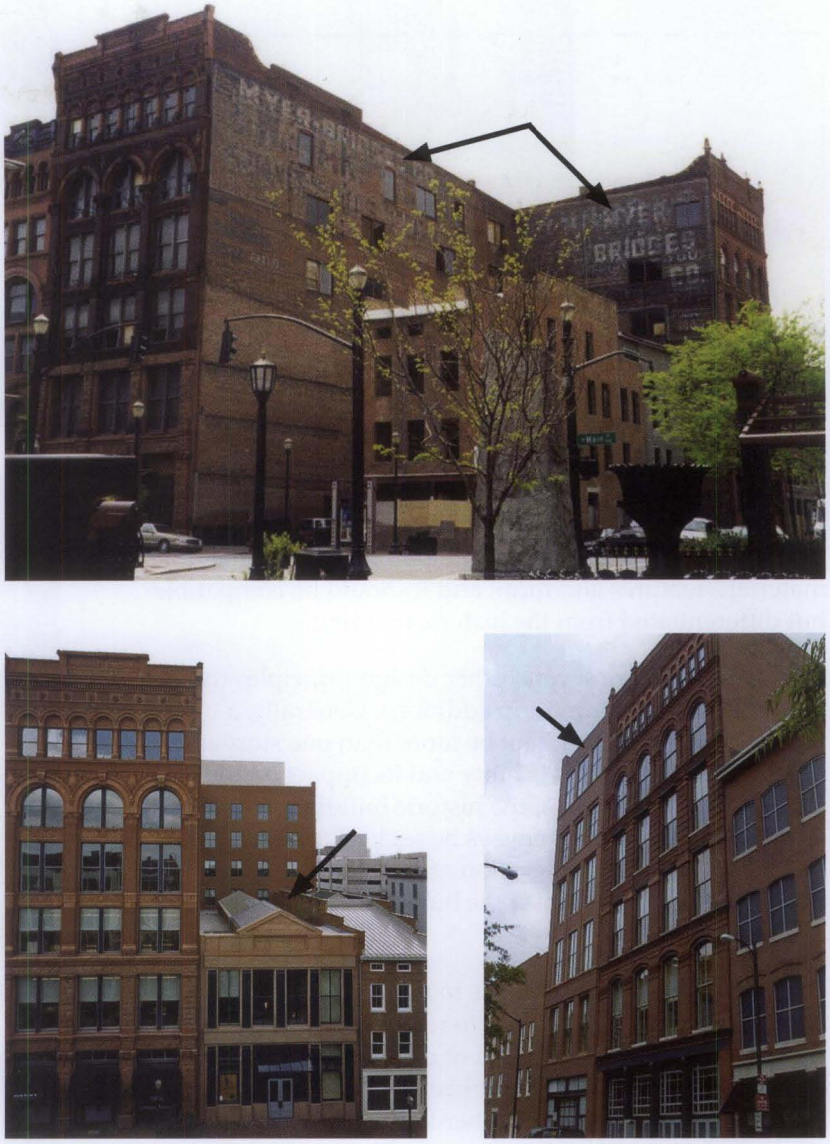


Figure 21. Both wings of this historic L-shaped building (top), which fronts on two city streets, adjoined vacant lots. A two-story addition was constructed on one lot (above, left) and a six-story addition was built on the other (above, right). Like the historic building, which has two different facades, the compatible new additions are also different and appear to be separate structures rather than part of the historic building.

Figure 22. The proposed new addition is compatible with the historic buildings that remain on the block. Its design with multiple storefronts helps break up the mass.

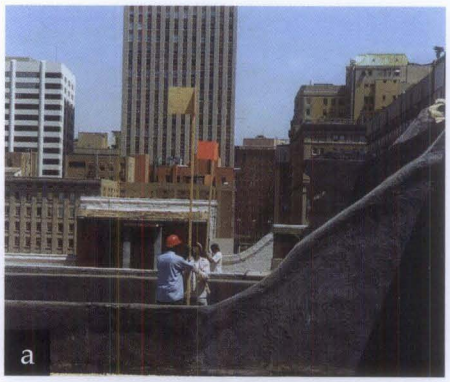


Figure 23. Colored flags marking the location of a proposed penthouse addition (a) were placed on the roof to help evaluate the impact and visibility of an addition planned for this historic furniture store (b). Based on this evaluation, the addition was constructed as proposed. It is minimally visible and compatible with the 1912 structure (c). The tall parapet wall conceals the addition from the street below (d).

Rooftop Additions

The guidance provided on designing a compatible new addition to a historic building applies equally to new rooftop additions. A rooftop addition should preserve the character of a historic building by preserving historic materials, features and form; and it should be compatible but differentiated from the historic building.

However, there are several other design principles that apply specifically to rooftop additions. Generally, a rooftop addition should not be more than one story in height to minimize its visibility and its impact on the proportion and profile of the historic building. A rooftop addition should almost always be set back at least one full bay from the primary elevation of the building, as well as from the other elevations if the building is free-standing or highly visible.

It is difficult, if not impossible, to minimize the impact of adding an entire new floor to relatively low buildings, such as small-scale residential or commercial structures, even if the new addition is set back from the plane of the façade. Constructing another floor on top of a small, one, two or three-story building is seldom appropriate for buildings of this size as it would measurably alter the building's proportions and profile, and negatively impact its historic character. On the other hand, a rooftop addition on an eight-story building, for example, in a historic district consisting primarily of tall buildings might not affect the historic character because the new construction may blend in with the surrounding buildings and be only minimally visible within the district. A rooftop addition in a densely-built urban area is more likely to be compatible on a building that is adjacent to similarly-sized or taller buildings.

A number of methods may be used to help evaluate the effect of a proposed rooftop addition on a historic building and district, including pedestrian sight lines, three-dimensional schematics and computer-generated design. However, drawings generally do not provide a true "picture" of the appearance and visibility of a proposed rooftop addition. For this reason, it is often necessary to construct a rough, temporary, full-size or skeletal mock up of a portion of the proposed addition, which can then be photographed and evaluated from critical vantage points on surrounding streets.

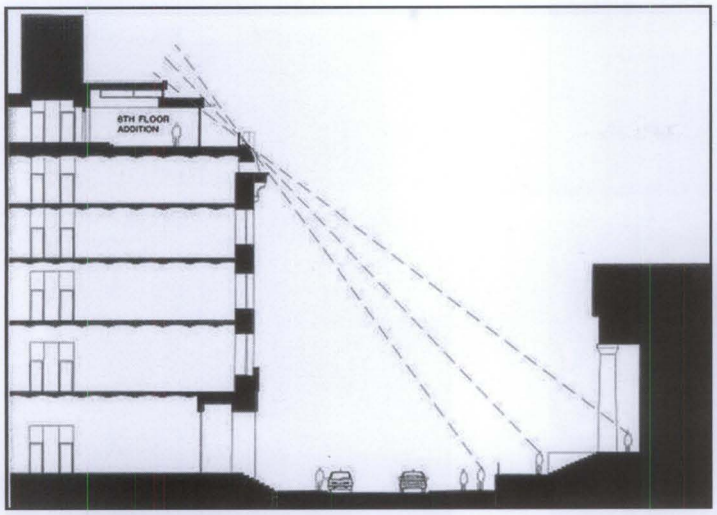


Figure 24. ***How to Evaluate a Proposed Rooftop Addition.*** *A sight-line study (above) only factors in views from directly across the street, which can be very restrictive and does not illustrate the full effect of an addition from other public rights of way. A mock up (above, right) or a mock up enhanced by a computer-generated rendering (below, right) is essential to evaluate the impact of a proposed rooftop addition on the historic building.*

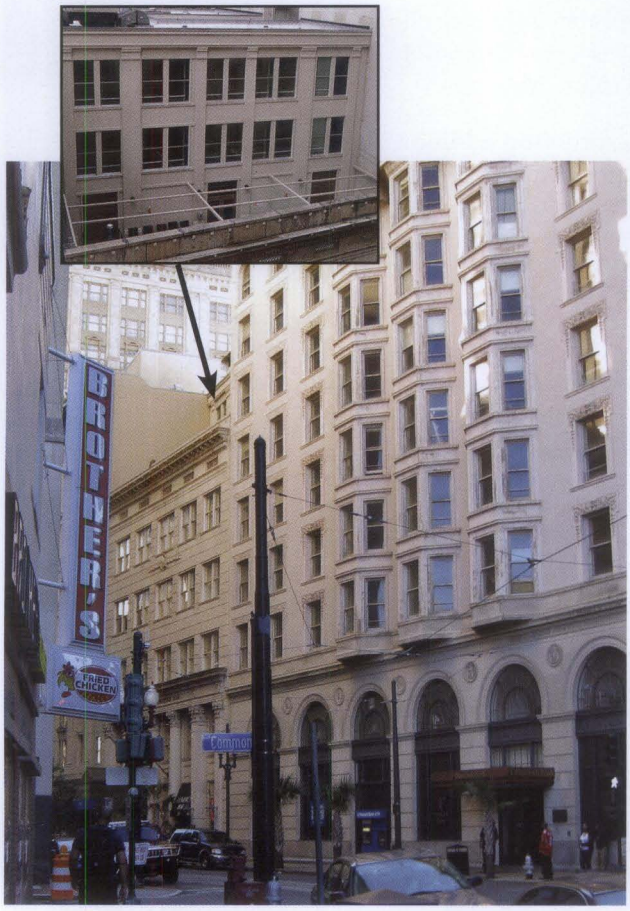


Figure 25. It was possible to add a compatible, three-story, penthouse addition to the roof of this five-story, historic bank building because the addition is set far back, it is surrounded by taller buildings and a deep parapet conceals almost all of the addition from below.

Figure 26. A rooftop addition would have negatively impacted the character of the primary facade (right) of this mid-19th century, four-story structure and the low-rise historic district. However, a third floor was successfully added on the two-story rear portion (below) of the same building with little impact to the building or the district because it blends in with the height of the adjacent building.

Figure 27. Although the new brick stair/elevator tower (left) is not visible from the front (right), it is on a prominent side elevation of this 1890 stone bank. The compatible addition is set back and does not compete with the historic building. Photos: Chadd Gossmann, Aurora Photography, LLC.

Designing a New Exterior Addition to a Historic Building

This guidance should be applied to help in designing a compatible new addition that that will meet the *Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation*:

- A new addition should be simple and unobtrusive in design, and should be distinguished from the historic building—a recessed connector can help to differentiate the new from the old.
- A new addition should not be highly visible from the public right of way; a rear or other secondary elevation is usually the best location for a new addition.
- The construction materials and the color of the new addition should be harmonious with the historic building materials.
- The new addition should be smaller than the historic building—it should be subordinate in both size and design to the historic building.

The same guidance should be applied when designing a compatible **rooftop** addition, plus the following:

- A rooftop addition is generally not appropriate for a one, two or three-story building—and often is not appropriate for taller buildings.
- A rooftop addition should be minimally visible.
- Generally, a rooftop addition must be set back at least one full bay from the primary elevation of the building, as well as from the other elevations if the building is freestanding or highly visible.
- Generally, a rooftop addition should not be more than one story in height.
- Generally, a rooftop addition is more likely to be compatible on a building that is adjacent to similarly-sized or taller buildings.

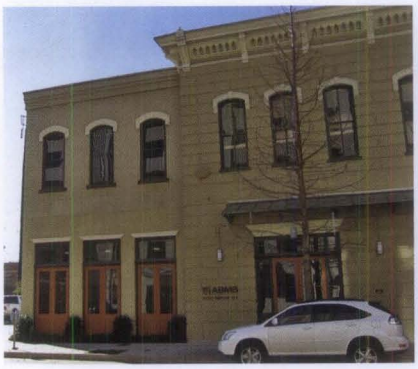


Figure 28. A small addition (left) was constructed when this 1880s train station was converted for office use. The paired doors with transoms and arched windows on the compatible addition reflect, but do not replicate, the historic building (right).

Figure 29. This simple glass and brick entrance (left) added to a secondary elevation of a 1920s school building (right) is compatible with the original structure.

Summary

Because a new exterior addition to a historic building can damage or destroy significant materials and can change the building's character, an addition should be considered only after it has been determined that the new use cannot be met by altering non-significant, or secondary, interior spaces. If the new use cannot be met in this way, then an attached addition may be an acceptable alternative if carefully planned and designed. A new addition to a historic building should be constructed in a manner that preserves significant materials, features and form, and preserves the building's historic character. Finally, an addition should be differentiated from the historic building so that the new work is compatible with—and does not detract from—the historic building, and cannot itself be confused as historic.

Additional Reading

Byard, Paul Spencer. *The Architecture of New Additions: Design and Regulation*. New York, NY: W.W. Norton & Company, 1998.

Day, Steven, AIA. "Modernism Meets History: New Additions to Historic Structures." *Preservation Seattle* [Historic Seattle's online monthly preservation magazine.] May 2003. www.historicseattle.org/preservationseattle/publicpolicy/defaultmay2.htm.

Incentives! A Guide to the Federal Historic Preservation Tax Incentives Program for Income-Producing Properties. "Avoiding Incompatible Treatments: New Additions & Rooftop Additions." Technical Preservation Services Branch, National Park Service. Online at www.nps.gov/history/hps/tps/.

Interpreting the Standards Bulletins (ITS). Technical Preservation Services Branch, National Park Service. Online at www.nps.gov/history/hps/tps/.

New Additions to Historic Buildings. Technical Preservation Services Branch, National Park Service. Online at www.nps.gov/history/hps/tps/.

O'Connell, Kim A. "Making Connections." *Traditional Building*. March/April 2004. (Vol. 17, No. 2), pp. 12-15.

The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation and Guidelines for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Preservation Assistance Division, rev. 1990.

The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation & Illustrated Guidelines for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings. (Authors: W. Brown Morton, III, Gary L. Hume, Kay D. Weeks, and H. Ward Jandl. Project Directors: Anne E. Grimmer and Kay D. Weeks.) Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Preservation Assistance Division, 1992. Online at www.nps.gov/history/hps/tps/.

Semes, Steven W. "Differentiated and Compatible: The Secretary's Standards revisited." *Traditional Building*. February 2009. (Vol. 22, No. 1), pp. 20-23.

Semes, Steven W. *The Future of the Past: A Conservation Ethic for Architecture, Urbanism, and Historic Preservation*. (In association with The Institute of Classical Architecture and Classical America.) New York, NY: W.W. Norton & Company, 2009.

Figure 30. The small addition on the right of this late-19th century commercial structure is clearly secondary and compatible in size, materials and design with the historic building.

Figure 31. An elevator/stair tower was added at the back of this Richardsonian Romanesque-style theater when it was rehabilitated. Rough-cut stone and simple cut-out openings ensure that the addition is compatible and subordinate to the historic building. Photo: Chuck Liddy, AIA.

Acknowledgements

Anne E. Grimmer, Senior Architectural Historian, Technical Preservation Services Branch, National Park Service, revised *Preservation Brief 14*, written by Kay D. Weeks and first published in 1986. The revised Brief features all new illustrations and contains expanded and updated design guidance on the subject of new additions that has been developed by the Technical Preservation Services Branch since the original publication of the Brief. Several individuals generously contributed their time and expertise to review the revision of this *Preservation Brief*, including: Sharon C. Park, FAIA, Chief, Architectural History and Historic Preservation, Smithsonian Institution; Elizabeth Tune and Karen Brandt, Department of Historic Resources, Commonwealth of Virginia; and Phillip Wisley and David Ferro, Division of Historical Resources, Florida Department of State. The Technical Preservation Services professional staff, in particular Michael J. Auer, Jo Ellen Hensley, Gary Sachau and Rebecca Shiffer, also provided important guidance in the development of this publication. All illustrations are from National Park Service files unless otherwise credited. Front cover image: Detail of new addition shown in Figure 4. Photo: © Maxwell MacKenzie.

This publication has been prepared pursuant to the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966, as amended, which directs the Secretary of the Interior to develop and make available information concerning historic properties. The Technical Preservation Services Branch, National Park Service, prepares standards, guidelines and other educational materials on responsible historic preservation treatments for a broad public audience. Additional information about the programs of Technical Preservation Services is available on the website at www.nps.gov/history/hps/tps. Comments about this publication should be addressed to: Charles E. Fisher, Technical Preservation Publications Program Manager, Technical Preservation Services-2255, National Park Service, 1849 C Street, NW, Washington, DC 20240.

This publication is not copyrighted and can be reproduced without penalty. Normal procedures for credit to the author and the National Park Service are appreciated.

ISBN: 978-0-16-085869-7
U.S. Government Printing Office Stock Number: 024-005-01280-0 August 2010

32 PRESERVATION BRIEFS

Making Historic Properties Accessible

Thomas C. Jester and Sharon C. Park, AIA

U.S. Department of the Interior
National Park Service
Cultural Resources

Heritage Preservation Services

Historically, most buildings and landscapes were not designed to be readily accessible for people with disabilities. In recent years, however, emphasis has been placed on preserving historically significant properties, and on making these properties—and the activities within them—more accessible to people with disabilities. With the passage of the Americans with Disabilities Act in 1990, access to properties open to the public is now a civil right.

This Preservation Brief introduces the complex issue of providing accessibility at historic properties, and underscores the need to balance accessibility and historic preservation. It provides guidance on making historic properties accessible while preserving their historic character; the Brief also provides examples to show that independent physical accessibility at historic properties can be achieved with careful planning, consultation, and sensitive design. While the Brief focuses primarily on making buildings and their sites accessible, it also includes a section on historic landscapes. The Brief will assist historic property owners, design professionals, and administrators in evaluating their historic properties so that the highest level of accessibility can be provided while minimizing changes to historic materials and features. Because many projects encompassing accessibility work are complex, it is advisable to consult with experts in the fields of historic preservation and accessibility before proceeding with permanent physical changes to historic properties.

Modifications to historic properties to increase accessibility may be as simple as a small, inexpensive ramp to overcome one entrance step, or may involve changes to exterior and interior features. The Brief does not provide a detailed explanation of local or State accessibility laws as they vary from jurisdiction to jurisdiction. A concise explanation of several federal accessibility laws is included on page 13.

Planning Accessibility Modifications

Historic properties are distinguished by features, materials, spaces, and spatial relationships that contribute to their historic character. Often these elements, such as steep terrain, monumental steps, narrow or heavy doors, decorative ornamental hardware, and narrow pathways and corridors, pose barriers to persons with disabilities, particularly to wheelchair users (See Figure 1).

A three-step approach is recommended to identify and implement accessibility modifications that will protect the integrity and historic character of historic properties:

1) Review the historical significance of the property and identify character-defining features;
2) Assess the property's existing and required level of accessibility; and
3) Evaluate accessibility options within a preservation context.

1) Review the Historical Significance of the Property

If the property has been designated as historic (properties that are listed in, or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places, or designated under State or local law), the property's nomination file should be reviewed to learn about its significance. Local preservation commissions and State Historic Preservation Offices can usually provide

Figure 1. It is important to identify the materials, features, and spaces that should be preserved when planning accessibility modifications. These may include stairs, railings, doors, and door surrounds. Photo: National Park Service files.

copies of the nomination file and are also resources for additional information and assistance. Review of the written documentation should always be supplemented with a physical investigation to identify which character-defining features and spaces must be protected whenever any changes are anticipated. If the level of documentation for a property's significance is limited, it may be necessary to have a preservation professional identify specific historic features, materials, and spaces that should be protected.

For most historic properties, the construction materials, the form and style of the property, the principal elevations, the major architectural or landscape features, and the principal public spaces constitute some of the elements that should be preserved. Every effort should be made to minimize damage to the materials and features that convey a property's historical significance when making modifications for accessibility. Very small or highly significant properties that have never been altered may be extremely difficult to modify.

Secondary spaces and finishes and features that may be less important to the historic character should also be identified; these may generally be altered without jeopardizing the historical significance of a property. Non-significant spaces, secondary pathways, later additions, previously altered areas, utilitarian spaces, and service areas can usually be modified without threatening or destroying a property's historical significance.

2) Assess the Property's Existing and Required Level of Accessibility

A building survey or assessment will provide a thorough evaluation of a property's accessibility. Most surveys identify accessibility barriers in the following areas: building and site entrances; surface textures, widths and slopes of walkways; parking; grade changes; size, weight and configuration of doorways; interior corridors and path of travel restrictions; elevators; and public toilets and amenities (See Figure 2). Simple audits can be completed by property owners using readily available checklists (See Further Reading). Accessibility specialists can be hired to assess barriers in more complex properties, especially those with multiple buildings, steep terrain, or interpretive programs. Persons with disabilities can be particularly helpful in assessing specific barriers.

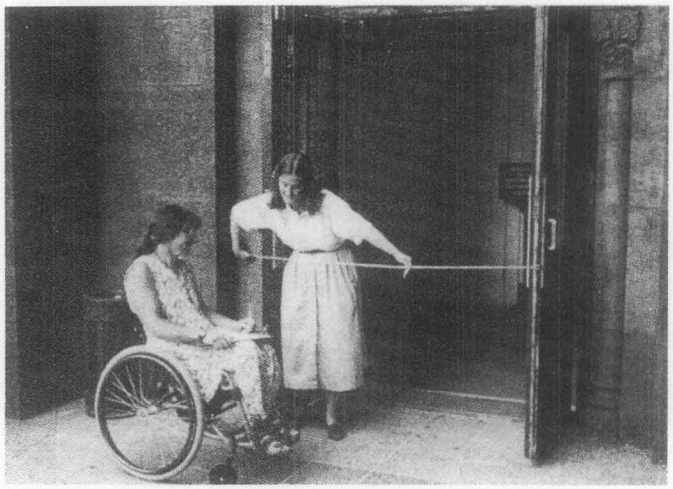


Figure 2. Surveys of historic properties can identify accessibility barriers. Persons with disabilities and accessibility consultants should participate whenever possible. Photo: Thomas Jester.

All applicable accessibility requirements—local codes, State codes and federal laws— should be reviewed carefully before undertaking any accessibility modification. Since many States and localities have their own accessibility regulations and codes (each with their own requirements for dimensions and technical requirements), owners should use the most stringent accessibility requirements when implementing modifications. The Americans with Disability Act Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG) is the document that should be consulted when complying with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

3) Identify and Evaluate Accessibility Options within a Preservation Context

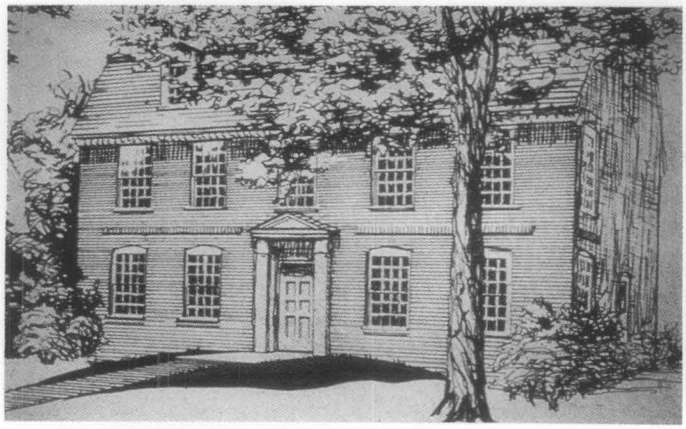
Once a property's significant materials and features have been identified, and existing and required levels of accessibility have been established, solutions can be developed (See Figure 3). Solutions should provide the greatest amount of accessibility without threatening or destroying those materials and features that make a property significant. Modifications may usually be phased over time as funds are available, and interim solutions can be considered until more permanent solutions are implemented. A team comprised of persons with disabilities, accessibility and historic preservation professionals, and building inspectors should be consulted as accessibility solutions are developed.

Modifications to improve accessibility should generally be based on the following priorities:

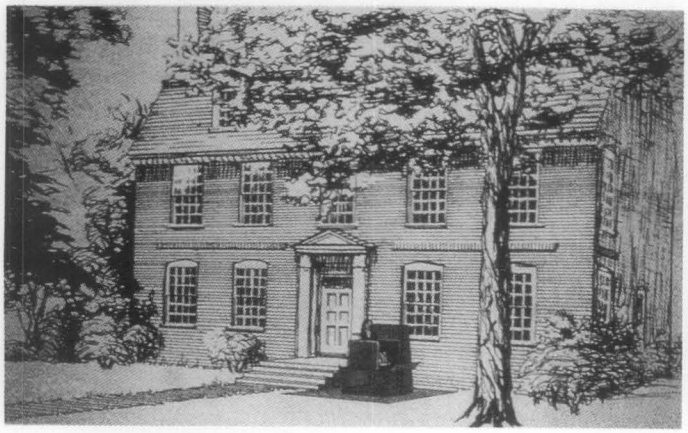
1) Making the main or a prominent public entrance and primary public spaces accessible, including a path to the entrance;
2) Providing access to goods, services, and programs;
3) Providing accessible restroom facilities; and,
4) Creating access to amenities and secondary spaces.

All proposed changes should be evaluated for conformance with the Secretary of the Interior's "Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties," which were created for property owners to guide preservation work. These Standards stress the importance of retaining and protecting the materials and features that convey a property's historical significance. Thus, when new features are incorporated for accessibility, historic materials and features should be retained whenever possible. Accessibility modifications should be in scale with the historic property, visually compatible, and, whenever possible, reversible. Reversible means that if the new feature were removed at a later date, the essential form and integrity of the property would be unimpaired. The design of new features should also be differentiated from the design of the historic property so that the evolution of the property is evident. See Making Historic Buildings Accessible on page 9.

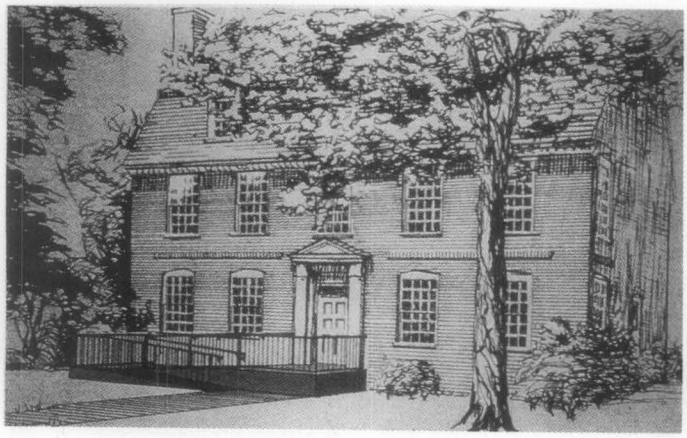
In general, when historic properties are altered, they should be made as accessible as possible. However, if an owner or a project team believes that certain modifications would threaten or destroy the significance of the property, the State Historic Preservation Officer should be consulted to determine whether or not any special accessibility provisions may be used. Special accessibility provisions for historic properties will vary depending on the applicable accessibility requirements.



A.



B.



C.

Figure 3. Before implementing accessibility modifications, owners should consider the potential effect on their historic property. At the Derby House in Salem, Massachusetts, several solutions to make the entrance accessible were considered, including regrading (a); a lift (b); and a ramp (c). The solution, an entrance on a secondary elevation, preserves the building's architectural significance and is convenient to designated parking. Drawings: National Park Service Files..

In some cases, programmatic access may be the only option for extremely small or unaltered historic properties, such as a two-story house museum with no internal elevator. Programmatic access for historic properties refers to alternative methods of providing services, information, and experiences when physical access cannot be provided. It may mean offering an audio-visual program showing an inaccessible upper floor of a historic house museum, providing interpretive panels from a vista at an inaccessible terraced garden, or creating a tactile model of a historic monument for people with visual impairments.

Accessibility Solutions

The goal in selecting appropriate solutions for specific historic properties is to provide a high level of accessibility without compromising significant features or the overall character of the property. The following sections describe accessibility solutions and offer guidance on specific historic property components, namely the building site, entrances, interiors, landscapes, amenities, and new additions. Several solutions are discussed in each section, referencing dimensions and technical requirements from the ADA's accessibility guidelines, ADAAG. State and local requirements, however, may differ from the ADA requirements. Before making any modification owners should be aware of all applicable accessibility requirements.

The Building Site

An accessible route from a parking lot, sidewalk, and public street to the entrance of a historic building or facility is essential. An accessible route, to the maximum extent possible, should be the circulation route used by the general public. Critical elements of accessible routes are their widths, slopes, cross slopes, and surface texture. Each of these route elements must be appropriately designed so that the route can be used by everyone, including people with disabilities. The distance between the arrival and destination points should also be as short as possible. Sites containing designed landscapes should be carefully evaluated before making accessibility modifications. Historic landscapes are described in greater detail on pages 10 and 11.

Providing Convenient Parking. If parking is provided, it should be as convenient as possible for people with disabilities. Specially designated parking can often be created to improve accessibility (See Figure 4). Modifications to parking configurations and pathways should not alter significant landscape features.

Creating an Accessible Route. The route or path through a site to a historic building's entrance should be wide enough, generally at least 3 feet (91 cm), to accommodate visitors

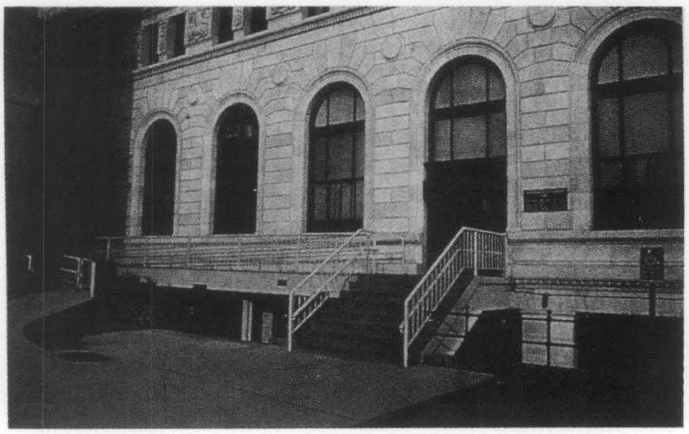


Figure 4. Parking designated for people with disabilities is provided near an accessible entrance to the Springfield Library in Springfield, Massachusetts. Photo: William Smith.

with disabilities and must be appropriately graded with a stable, firm, and slip-resistant surface. Existing paths should be modified to meet these requirements whenever possible as long as doing so would not threaten or destroy significant materials and features.

Existing surfaces can often be stabilized by providing a new base and resetting the paving materials, or by modifying the path surface. In some situations it may be appropriate to create a new path through an inaccessible area. At large properties, it may be possible to regrade a slope to less than 1:20 (5%), or to introduce one or more carefully planned ramps. Clear directional signs should mark the path from arrival to destination.

Entrances

Whenever possible, access to historic buildings should be through a primary public entrance. In historic buildings, if this cannot be achieved without permanent damage to character-defining features, at least one entrance used by the public should be made accessible. If the accessible entrance is not the primary public entrance, directional signs should direct visitors to the accessible entrance (See Figure 5). A rear or service entrance should be avoided as the only mean of entering a building.

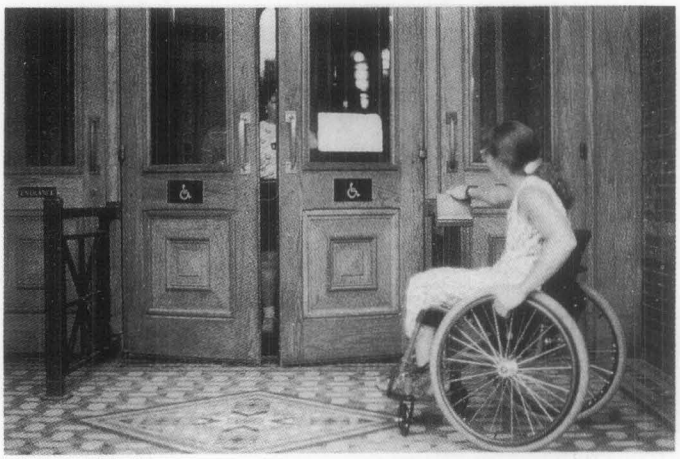


Figure 5. A universal access symbol clearly marks the Arts and Industries Building in Washington, D.C., and a push plate (right) engages the automatic door-opener. Photo: Thomas Jester.

Creating an accessible entrance usually involves overcoming a change in elevation. Steps, landings, doors, and thresholds, all part of the entrance, often pose barriers for persons with disabilities. To preserve the integrity of these features, a number of solutions are available to increase accessibility. Typical solutions include regrading, incorporating ramps, installing wheelchair lifts, creating new entrances, and modifying doors, hardware, and thresholds.

Regrading an Entrance. In some cases, when the entrance steps and landscape features are not highly significant, it may be possible to regrade to provide a smooth entrance into a building. If the existing steps are historic masonry, they should be buried, whenever possible, and not removed (See Figure 6).

Incorporating Ramps. Permanent ramps are perhaps the most common means to make an entrance accessible. As a new feature, ramps should be carefully designed and appropriately located to preserve a property's historic character (See Figure 7). Ramps should be located at public

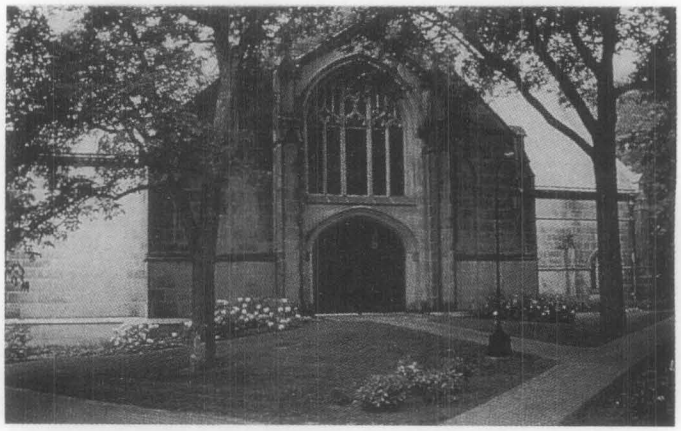


Figure 6. Entrances can be regraded to make a building accessible as long as no significant landscape features will be destroyed and as long as the building's historic character is preserved. The Houghton Chapel (a) in Wellesley, Massachusetts, was made accessible by regrading over the historic steps (b). Photos: Carol R. Johnson & Associates.

Figure 7. This ramp is convenient for visitors with disabilities and preserves the building's historic character. The design is also compatible in scale with the building. Photo: William Smith.

entrances used by everyone whenever possible, preferably where there is minimal change in grade. Ramps should also be located to minimize the loss of historic features at the connection points—porch railings, steps, and windows—and should preserve the overall historic setting and character of the property. Larger buildings may have below grade areas that can accommodate a ramp down to an entrance (See Figure 8). Below grade entrances can be considered if the ramp leads to a publicly used interior, such as an auditorium, or if the building is serviced by a public elevator. Ramps can often be incorporated behind

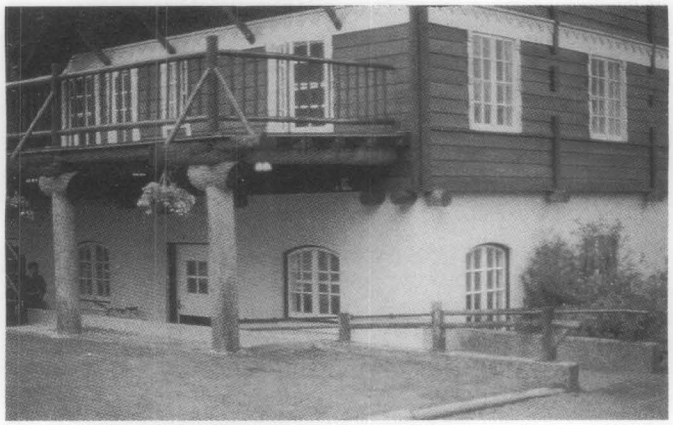


Figure 8. A new below-grade ramp provides access to Lake MacDonald Lodge in Glacier National Park. Photo: Thomas Jester

historic features, such as cheek-walls or railings, to minimize the visual effect (See Figure 9).

The steepest allowable slope for a ramp is usually 1:12 (8%), but gentler slopes should be used whenever possible to accommodate people with limited strength. Greater changes in elevation require larger and longer ramps to meet accessibility scoping provisions and may require an intermediate landing. Most codes allow a slightly steeper ramp for historic buildings to overcome one step.

Ramps can be faced with a variety of materials, including wood, brick, and stone. Often the type and quality of the materials determines how compatible a ramp design will be with a historic property (See Figure 10). Unpainted pressure-treated wood should not be used to construct ramps because it usually appears temporary and is not visually compatible with most historic properties. Railings

Figure 9. This ramp was created by infilling the window-well and slightly modifying the historic railing. The ramp preserves this building's historic character. Photo: Thomas Jester.

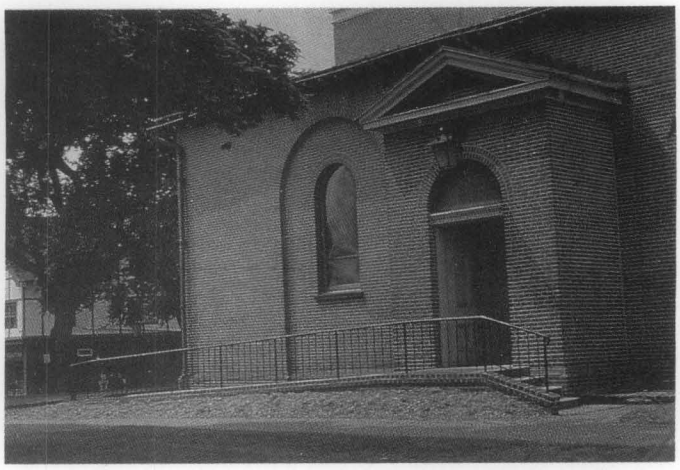


Figure 10. This brick ramp provides access to St. Anne's Episcopal Church in Annapolis, Maryland. Its design is compatible with the historic building. Photo: Charity V. Davidson.

should be simple in design, distinguishable from other historic features, and should extend one foot beyond the sloped area (See Figure 11).

Ramp landings must be large enough for wheelchair users, usually at least 5 feet by 5 feet (152.5 cm by 152.5 cm), and the top landing must be at the level of the door threshold. It may be possible to reset steps by creating a ramp to accommodate minor level changes and to meet the threshold without significantly altering a property's historic character. If a building's existing landing is not wide or deep enough to accommodate a ramp, it may be

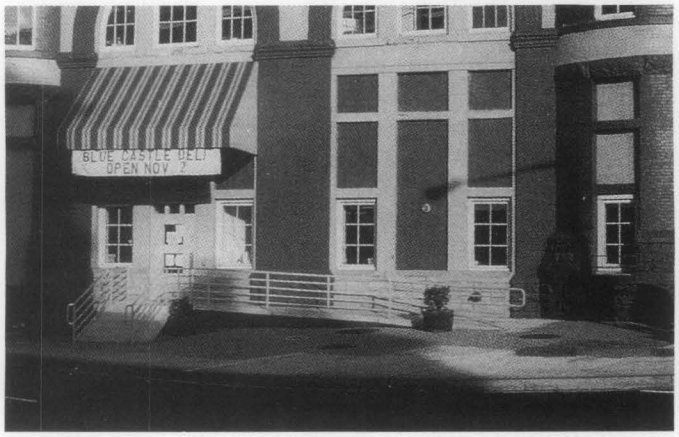


Figure 11. Simple, contemporary railings that extend beyond the ramp slope make this ramp compatible with the industrial character of this building. Photo: Thomas Jester.

necessary to modify the entry to create a wider landing. Long ramps, such as switchbacks, require intermediate landings, and all ramps should be detailed with an appropriate edge and railing for wheelchair users and visually impaired individuals.

Temporary or portable ramps are usually constructed of light-weight materials and, thus, are rarely safe or visually compatible with historic properties. Moreover, portable ramps are often stored until needed and, therefore, do not meet accessibility requirements for independent access. Temporary and portable ramps, however, may be an acceptable interim solution to improve accessibility until a permanent solution can be implemented (See Figure 12).

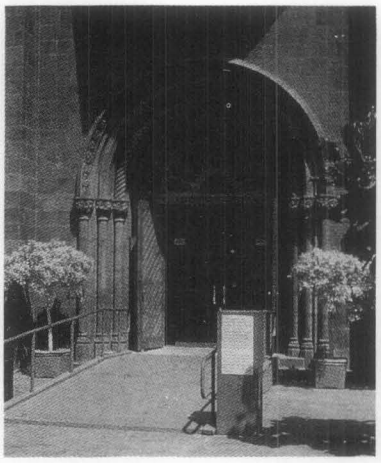


Figure 12. The Smithsonian Institution installed a temporary ramp on its visitor's center to allow adequate time to design an appropriate permanent ramp. Photo: Thomas Jester.

Installing Wheelchair Lifts. Platforms lifts and inclined stair lifts, both of which accommodate only one person, can be used to overcome changes of elevation ranging from three to 10 feet (.9 m-3 m) in height. However, many States have restrictions on the use of wheelchair lifts, so all applicable codes should be reviewed carefully before installing one. Inclined stair lifts, which carry a wheelchair on a platform up a flight of stairs, may be employed selectively. They tend to be visually intrusive, although they are relatively reversible. Platform lifts can be used when there is inadequate space for a ramp. However, such lifts should be installed in unobtrusive locations and under cover to minimize maintenance if at all possible (See Figure 13). A similar, but more expensive platform lift has a retracting railing that lowers into the ground, minimizing the visual effect to historic properties (See Figure 14). Mechanical lifts have drawbacks at historic properties with high public visitation because their capacity is limited, they sometimes cannot be operated independently, and they require frequent maintenance.

Considering a New Entrance. When it is not possible to modify an existing entrance, it may be possible to develop a new entrance by creating an entirely new opening in an appropriate location, or by using a secondary window for an opening. This solution should only be considered after exhausting all possibilities for modifying existing entrances (See Figure 15).

Retrofitting Doors. Historic doors generally should not be replaced, nor should door frames on the primary elevation be widened, as this may alter an important feature of a historic design. However, if a building's historic doors have been removed, there may be greater latitude in designing a compatible new entrance. Most accessibility standards require at least a 32" (82 cm) clear opening with manageable door opening pressures. The most desirable preservation solution to improve accessibility is retaining historic doors and upgrading the door pressure with one of several devices. Automatic door openers

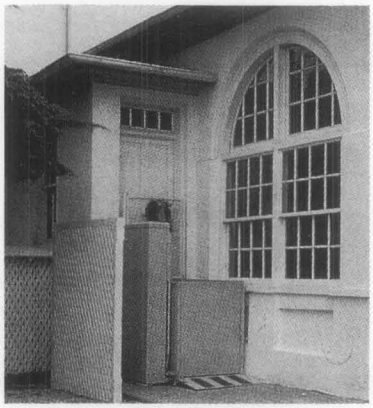
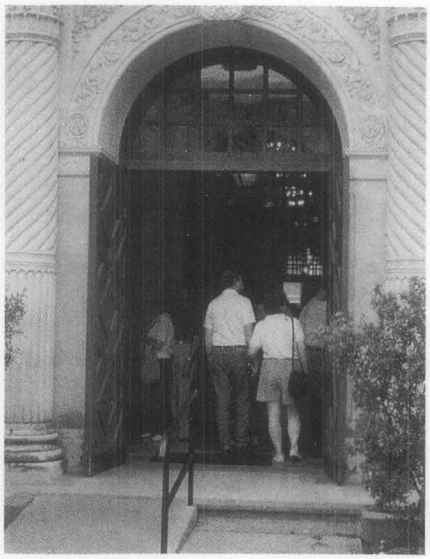


Figure 13. Platform lifts like the one used on this building require minimal space and can be removed without damaging historic materials. Shielded with lattice work, this lift is also protected by the roof eaves. Approach path should be stable, firm, and slip resistant. Photo: Sharon Park.

Readily Achievable Accessibility Modifications



Many accessibility solutions can be implemented easily and inexpensively without destroying the significance of historic properties. While it may not be possible to undertake all of the modifications listed below, each change will improve accessibility.

Sites and Entrances

- Creating a designated parking space.
- Installing ramps.
- Making curb cuts.

Interiors

- Repositioning shelves.
- Rearranging tables, displays, and furniture.
- Repositioning telephones.
- Adding raised markings on elevator control buttons.
- Installing flashing alarm lights.
- Installing offset hinges to widen doorways.
- Installing or adding accessible door hardware.
- Adding an accessible water fountain, or providing a paper cup dispenser at an inaccessible water fountain.

Restrooms

- Installing grab bars in toilet stalls.
- Rearranging toilet partitions to increase maneuvering space.
- Insulating lavatory pipes under sinks to prevent burns.
- Installing a higher toilet seat.
- Installing a full-length bathroom mirror.
- Repositioning the paper towel dispenser.

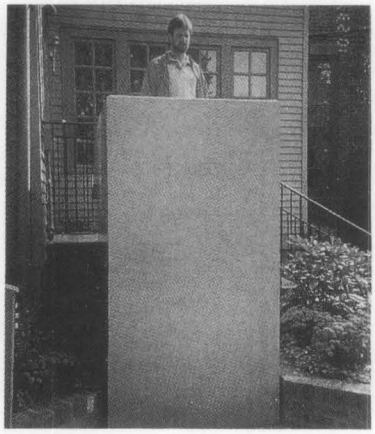


Figure 14. At the Lieutenant Governor's Mansion in Frankfort, Kentucky, a retracting lift (b) was installed to minimize the visual effect on this historic building when not in use (a). Photos: Aging Technology Incorporated.

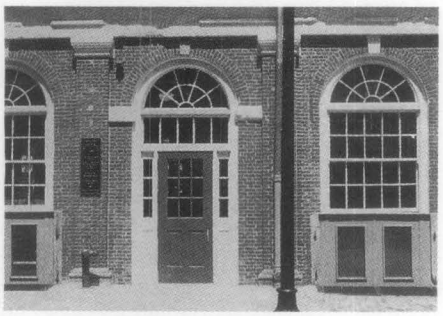


Figure 15. A new entrance to the elevator lobby replaces a window at Faneuil Hall in Boston, Massachusetts. The new entrance is appropriately differentiated from the historic design. Photo: Paul Holtz.

(operated by push buttons, mats, or electronic eyes) and power-assisted door openers can eliminate or reduce door pressures that are accessibility barriers, and make single or double-leaf doors fully operational (See Figure 16).

Adapting Door Hardware. If a door opening is within an inch or two of meeting the 32" (81 cm) clear opening requirement, it may be possible to replace the standard hinges with off-set hinges to increase the size of the door opening as much as 1 1/2" (3.8 cm). Historic hardware can be retained in place, or adapted with the addition of an automatic opener, of which there are several types. Door hardware can also be retrofitted to reduce door pressures. For example, friction hinges can be retrofitted with ball-bearing inserts, and door closers can be rethreaded to reduce the door pressure.

Altering Door Thresholds. A door threshold that exceeds the allowable height, generally 1/2" (1.3 cm), can be altered or removed with one that meets applicable accessibility

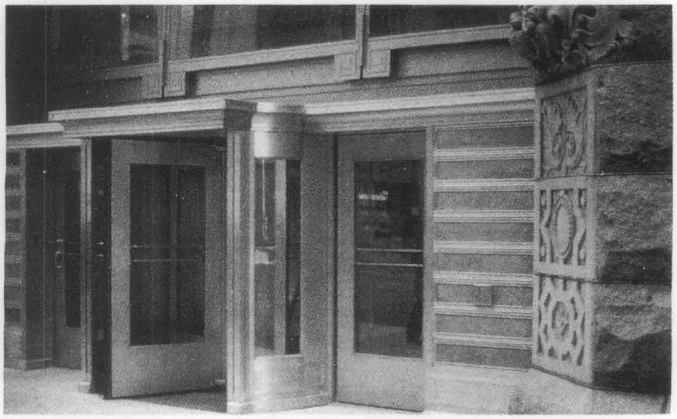


Figure 16. During the rehabilitation of the Rookery in Chicago, the original entrance was modified to create an accessible entrance. Two revolving doors were replaced with a new one flanked by new doors, one of which is operated with a push-plate door opener. Photo: Thomas Jester.

requirements. If the threshold is deemed to be significant, a bevel can be added on each side to reduce its height (See Figure 17). Another solution is to replace the threshold with one that meets applicable accessibility requirements and is visually compatible with the historic entrance.

Moving Through Historic Interiors

Persons with disabilities should have independent access to all public areas and facilities inside historic buildings. The extent to which a historic interior can be modified depends on the significance of its materials, plan, spaces, features, and finishes. Primary spaces are often more difficult to modify without changing their character. Secondary spaces may generally be changed without compromising a building's historic character. Signs should clearly mark the route to accessible restrooms, telephones, and other accessible areas.

Installing Ramps and Wheelchair Lifts. If space permits, ramps and wheelchair lifts can also be used to increase accessibility inside buildings (See Figures 18 & 19). However, some States and localities restrict interior uses of wheelchair lifts for life-safety reasons. Care should be taken to install these new features where they can be readily accessed. Ramps and wheelchair lifts are described in detail on pages 4–6.

Upgrading Elevators. Elevators are an efficient means of providing accessibility between floors. Some buildings have existing historic elevators that are not adequately accessible for persons with disabilities because of their size, location, or detailing, but they may also contribute to the historical significance of a building. Significant historic elevators can usually be upgraded to improve accessibility. Control panels can be modified with a "wand" on a cord to make the control panel accessible, and timing devices can usually be adjusted.

Retrofitting Door Knobs. Historic door knobs and other hardware may be difficult to grip and turn. In recent years, lever-handles have been developed to replace door knobs. Other lever-handle devices can be added to existing hardware. If it is not possible or appropriate to retrofit existing door knobs, doors can be left open during operating hours (unless doing so would violate life safety codes), and power-assisted door openers can be installed. It may only be necessary to retrofit specific doorknobs to create an accessible path of travel and accessible restrooms.

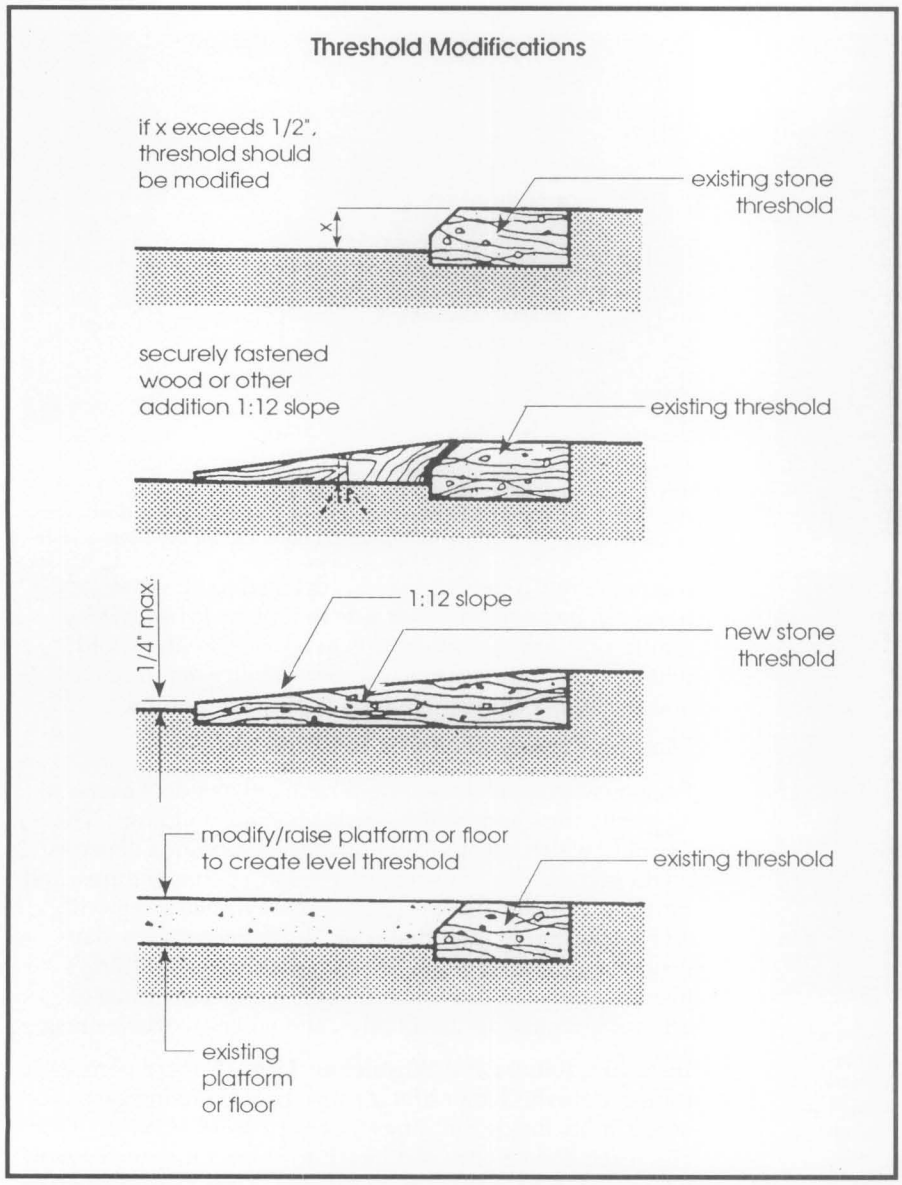


Figure 17. Thresholds that exceed allowable heights can be modified several ways to increase accessibility. Source: Uniform Federal Accessibility Standard (UFAS) Retrofit Manual.

Modifying Interior Stairs. Stairs are the primary barriers for many people with disabilities. However, there are some ways to modify stairs to assist people who are able to navigate them. It may be appropriate to add hand railings if none exist. Railings should be 1 1/4" (3.8 cm) in diameter and return to the wall so straps and bags do not catch. Color-contrasting, slip-resistant strips will help people with visual impairments. Finally, beveled or closed risers are recommended unless the stairs are highly significant, because open risers catch feet (See Figure 20).

Building Amenities

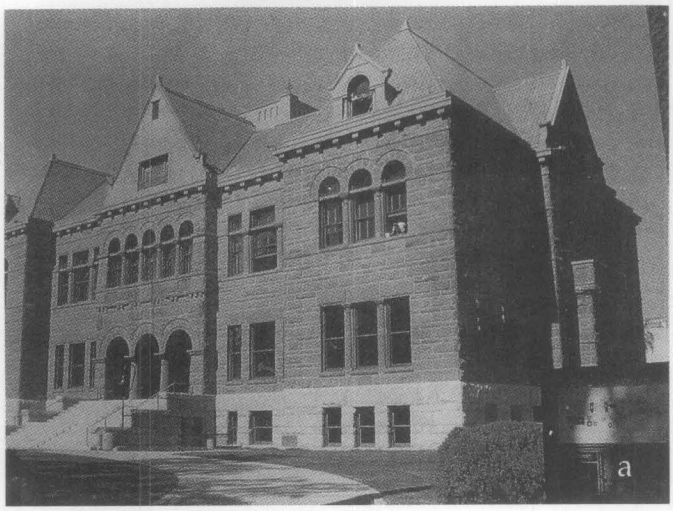
Some amenities in historic buildings, such as restrooms, seating, telephones, drinking fountains, counters, may contribute to a building's historic character. They will often require modification to improve their use by persons with disabilities. In many cases, supplementing existing amenities, rather than changing or removing them, will increase access and minimize changes to historic features and materials.

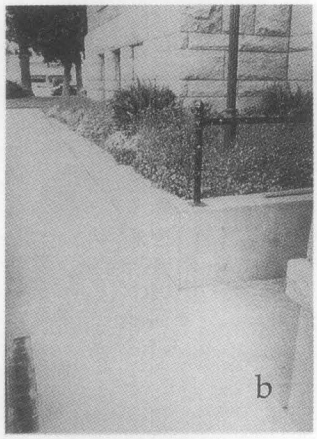
Upgrading Restrooms. Restrooms may have historic fixtures such as sinks, urinals, or marble partitions that can be retained in the process of making modifications. For example, larger restrooms can sometimes be reconfigured by relocating or combining partitions to create an accessible toilet stall. Other changes to consider are adding grab bars around toilets, covering hot water pipes under sinks with insulation to prevent burns, and providing a sink, mirror, and paper dispenser at a height suitable for wheelchair users. A unisex restroom may be created if it is technically infeasible to create two fully accessible restrooms, or if doing so would threaten or destroy the significance of the building. It is important to remember that restroom fixtures, such as sinks, urinals, and partitions, may be historic, and therefore, should be preserved whenever possible.

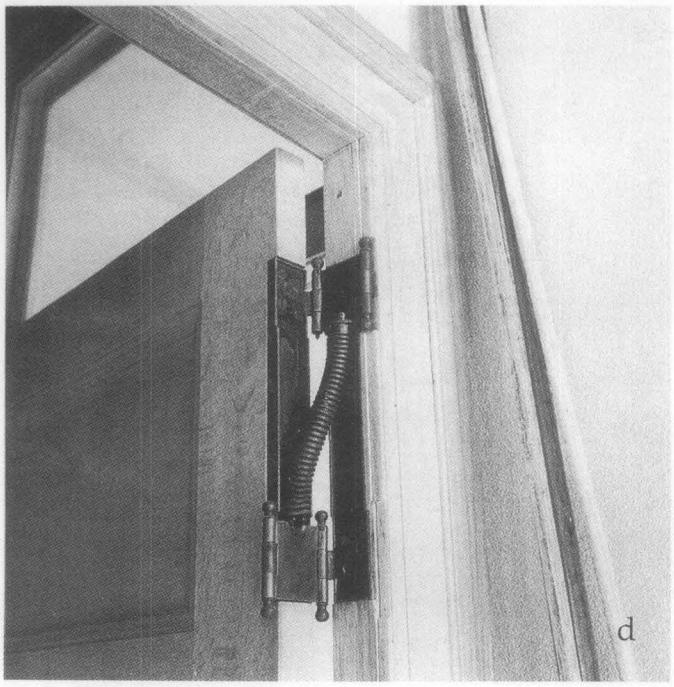
Modifying Other Amenities. Other amenities inside historic buildings may require modification. Seating in a theater, for example, can be made accessible by removing some seats in several areas (See Figure 21). New seating that is accessible can also be added at the end of existing rows, either with or without a level floor surface. Readily removable seats may be installed in wheelchair spaces when the spaces are not required to accommodate wheelchair users. Historic water fountains can be retained and new, two-tiered fountains installed if space permits. If public telephones are provided, it may be necessary to install at least a Text Telephone (TT), also known as a Telecommunication Device for the Deaf (TDD) (See Figure 22). Historic service counters commonly found in banks, theaters, and hotels generally should not be altered. It is preferable to add an accessible counter on the end of a historic counter if feasible. Modified or new counters should not exceed 36" (91.5 cm) in height.

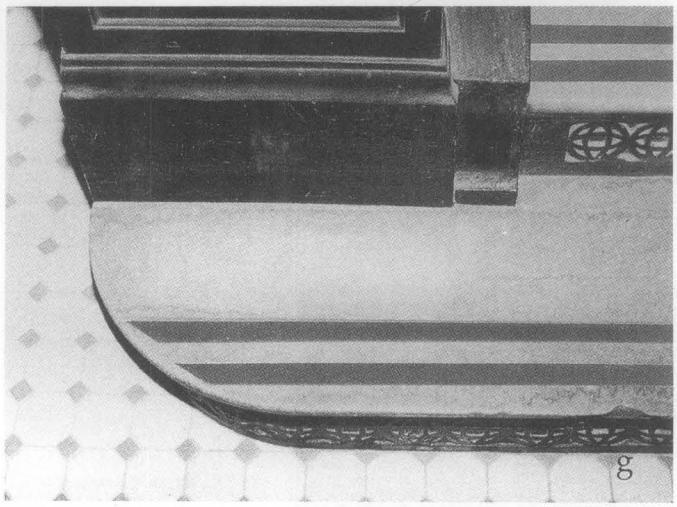
Figure 18. Symmetrical ramps at the Mayflower Hotel in Washington, D.C., provide access to the hotel's lower level. The design for the ramps respects the historic character of this landmark building. Photo: Thomas Jester.

MAKING A HISTORIC BUILDING ACCESSIBLE









The Orange County Courthouse (a), located in Santa Ana, California, was rehabilitated in the late 1980s as a county museum. As part of the rehabilitation, the architect sensitively integrated numerous modifications to increase accessibility. To preserve the building's primary elevation, a new public entrance was created on the rear elevation where parking spaces are located. A ramp (b) leads to the accessible entrance that can be opened with a push-plate automatic door-opener (c). Modifications to interior features also increased accessibility. To create an accessible path of travel, offset hinges (d) were installed on doors that were narrower than 32 inches (81.3 cm). Other doors were rethreaded to reduce the door pressure. Beveling the 1" high thresholds (e) reduced their height to approximately 1/4 inch (.64 cm). The project architect also converted a storeroom into an accessible restroom (f). The original stairway, which has open grillwork, was made more accessible by applying slip-resistant pressure tape to the marble steps (g). And the original elevator was upgraded with raised markings, alarm lights, and voice floor indicators. Photos: Milford Wayne Donaldson, FAIA.

MAKING HISTORIC LANDSCAPES ACCESSIBLE

To successfully incorporate access into historic landscapes, the planning process is similar to that of other historic properties. Careful research and inventory should be undertaken to determine which materials and features convey the landscape's historical significance. As part of this evaluation, those features that are character-defining (topographical variation, vegetation, circulation, structures, furnishings, objects) should be identified. Historic finishes, details, and materials that also contribute to a landscape's significance should also be documented and evaluated prior to determining an approach to landscape accessibility. For example, aspects of the pedestrian circulation system that need to be understood include walk width, aggregate size, pavement pattern, texture, relief, and joint details. The context of the walk should be understood including its edges and surrounding area. Modifications to surface textures or widths of pathways can often be made with minimal effect on significant landscape features (a) and (b).

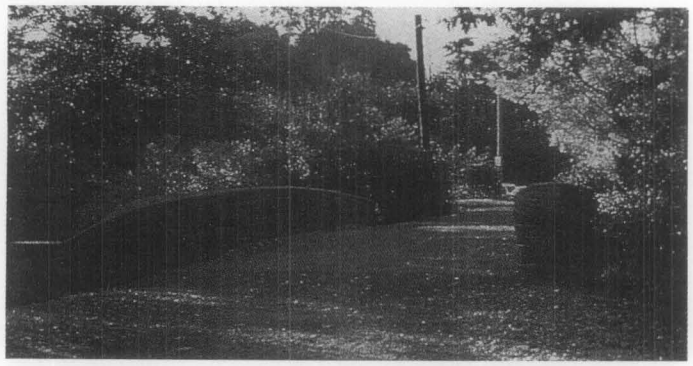
Additionally, areas of secondary importance such as altered paths should be identified -- especially those where the accessibility modifications will not destroy a landscape's significance. By identifying those features that are contributing or non-contributing, a sympathetic circulation experience can then be developed.

After assessing a landscape's integrity, accessibility solutions can be considered. Full access throughout a historic landscape may not always be possible. Generally, it is easier to provide accessibility to larger, more open sites where there is a greater variety of public experiences. However, when a landscape is uniformly steep, it may only be possible to make discrete portions of a historic landscape accessible, and viewers may only be able to experience the landscape from selected vantage points along a prescribed pedestrian or vehicular access route. When defining such a route, the interpretive value of the user experience should be considered; in other words, does the route provide physical or visual access to those areas that are critical to understand the meaning of the landscape?

The following accessibility solutions address three common landscape situations: 1) structures with low integrity landscapes; 2) structures and landscapes of equal significance; and, 3) landscapes of primary significance with inaccessible terrain.

1. The Hunnewell Visitors Center at the Arnold Arboretum in Jamaica Plain, Massachusetts, was constructed in 1892. Its immediate setting has changed considerably over time (c). Since the existing landscape immediately surrounding this structure has little remaining integrity, the new accessibility solution has the latitude to integrate a broad program including site orientation, circulation, interpretation, and maintenance.

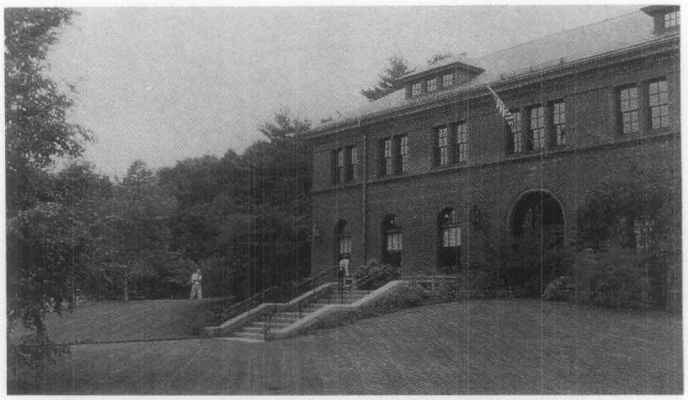
   The new design, which has few ornamental plants, references the original planting design principles, with a strong emphasis on form, color, and texture. In contrast with the earlier designs, the new plantings were set away from the facade of this historic building,



(a.) To improve accessibility in Boston's Emerald Necklace Parks, standard asphalt paving was replaced in selected areas with an imbedded aggregate surface that is more in keeping with the landscape's historic appearance. Photo: Charles Birnbaum.

(b.) The Friendly Garden at Ranchos Los Alamitos, a historic estate with designed gardens in southern California, was made accessible with limited widening of its existing approach path. Photo: Ranchos Los Alamitos Foundation.

(c.) Hunnewell Visitor's Center before rehabilitation, revealing the altered landscapes. Photo: Jennifer Jones, Carol R. Johnson and associates.

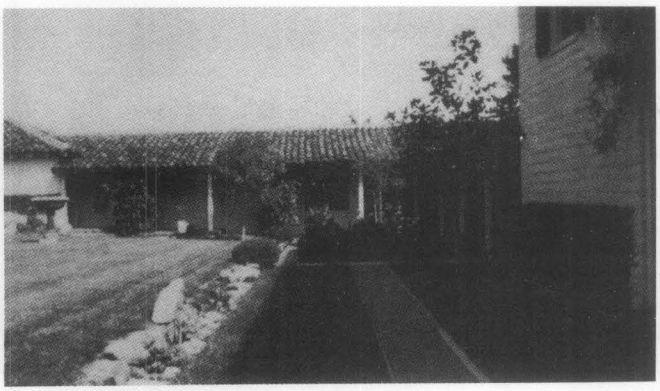


(d.) Hunnewell Visitors Center's entrance following rehabilitation, integrating an accessible path (left), platform, and new steps. Photo: Charles Birnbaum.

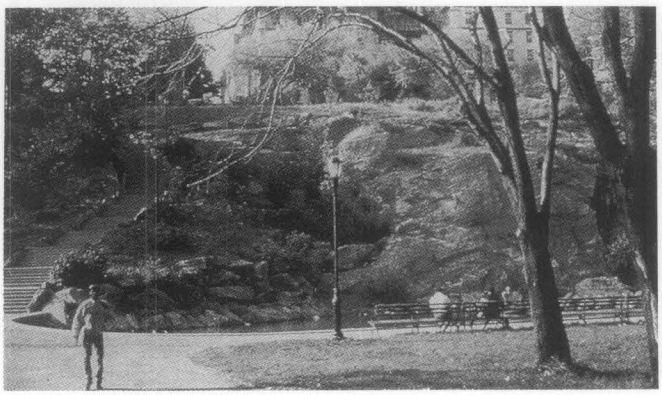
allowing the visitor to enjoy its architectural detail. A new walk winds up the gentle earthen berm and is vegetated with plantings that enhance the interpretive experience from the point of orientation (d). The new curvilinear walks also provide a connection to the larger arboretum landscape for everyone.

2. The Eugene O'Neill National Historic Site overlooks the San Ramon Valley, twenty-seven miles east of San Francisco, California. The thirteen-acre site includes a walled courtyard garden on the southeast side of the Tao House, which served as the O'Neill residence from 1937-44 (e). Within this courtyard are character-defining walks that are too narrow by today's accessibility standards, yet are a character-defining element of the historic design. To preserve the garden's integrity, the scale and the characteristics of the original circulation were maintained by creating a wheelchair route which, in part, utilizes reinforced turf. This route allows visitors with disabilities to experience the main courtyard as well.

3. Morningside Park in New York City, New York, designed by Frederick Olmstead, Sr., and Calvert Vaux in 1879, is sited on generally steep, rocky terrain (f). Respecting these dramatic grade changes, which are only accessible by extensive flights of stone stairs, physical access cannot be provided without destroying the park's integrity. In order to provide some accessibility, scenic overlooks were created that provide broad visual access to the park.



(e.) This view shows the new reinforced turf path at the Eugene O'Neill National Historic Site that preserved the narrow Historic Path. Photo: Patricia M. O'Donnell.



(f.) Steep terrain at Morningside Park in New York City cannot be made accessible without threating or destroying this landscape's integrity. Photo: Quennell Rothschild Associates.

Figure 19. Inclined lifts can sometimes overcome interior changes of elevation where space is limited. This lift in Boston's Faneuil Hall created access to the floor and stage level of the State Room. Photo: Paul Holtz.

Considering a New Addition as an Accessibility Solution

Many new additions are constructed specifically to incorporate modern amenities such as elevators, restrooms, fire stairs, and new mechanical equipment. These new additions often create opportunities to incorporate access for people with disabilities. It may be possible, for example, to create an accessible entrance, path to public levels via a ramp, lift, or elevator (See Figure 23). However, a new addition has the potential to change a historic property's appearance and destroy significant building and landscape features. Thus, all new additions should be compatible with the size, scale, and proportions of historic features and materials that characterize a property (See Figure 24).

New additions should be carefully located to minimize connection points with the historic building, such that if the addition were to be removed in the future, the essential form and integrity of the building would remain intact. On the other hand, new additions should also be conveniently located near parking that is connected to an accessible route for people with disabilities. As new additions are incorporated, care should be taken to protect significant landscape features and archeological resources. Finally, the design for any new addition should be differentiated from the historic design so that the property's evolution over time is clear. New additions frequently make it possible to increase accessibility, while simultaneously reducing the level of change to historic features, materials, and spaces.

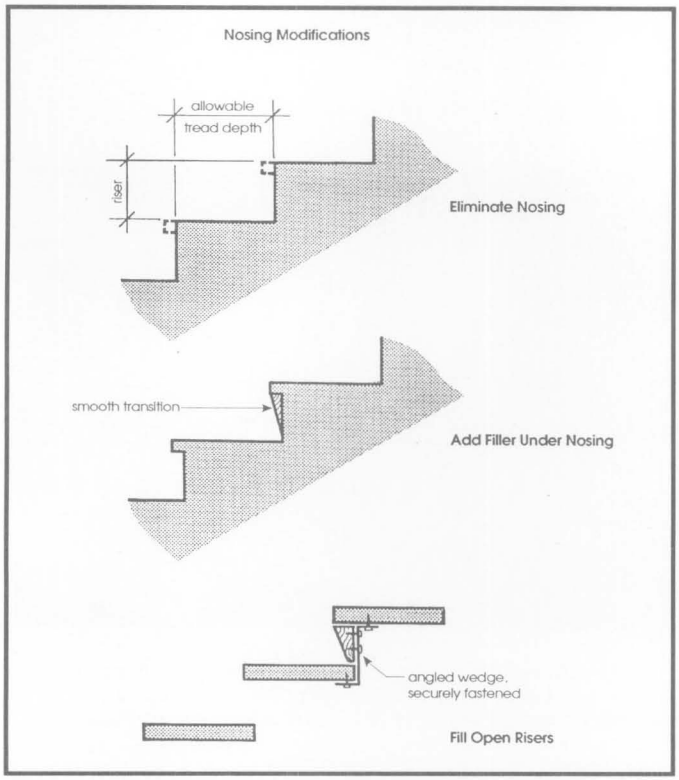


Figure 20. In certain situations it may be appropriate to modify stair nosings for persons with mobility impairments. Whenever possible, stairs should be modified by adding new materials rather than removing historic materials. Source: UFAS Retrofit Manual.

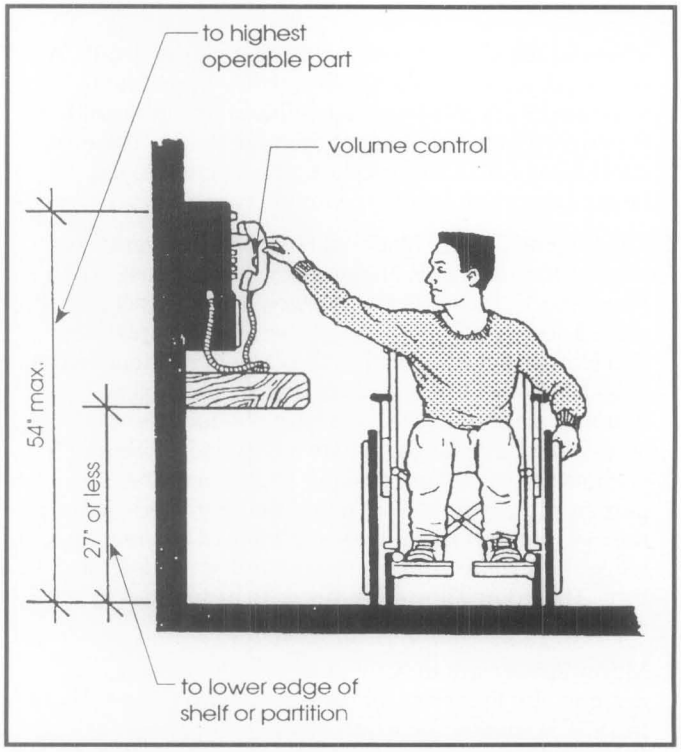


Figure 22. Amenities such as telephones should be at height that wheelchair users can reach. Changes to many amenities can be adapted with minimal effect on historic materials, features, and spaces. Source: UFAS Retrofit Manual.

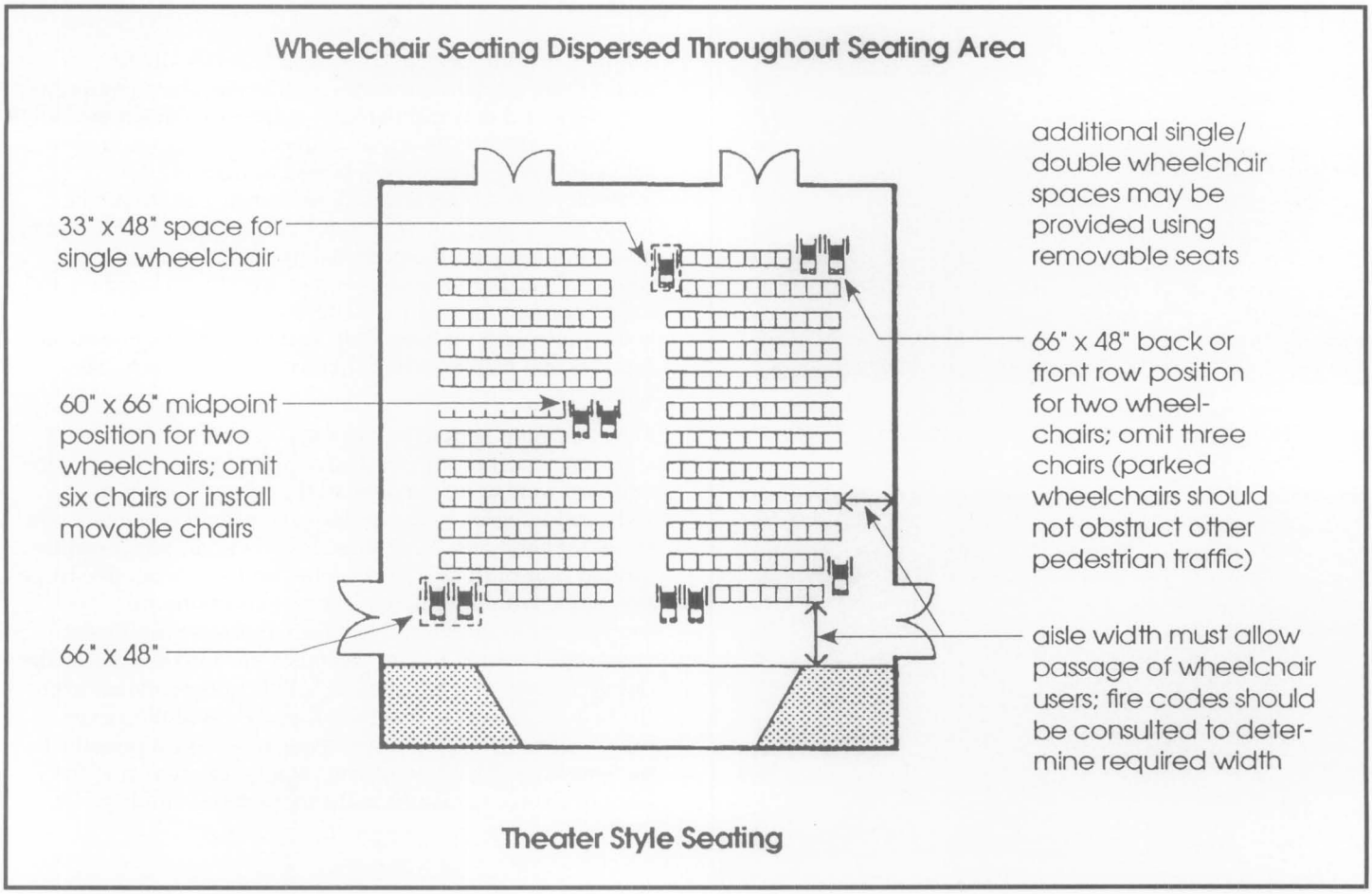


Figure 21. Seating in historic theaters and auditoriums can be changed to accommodate wheelchair users. Accessible seating areas should be connected to an accessible route from the building entrance. Source: UFAS Retrofit Manual.

Federal Accessibility Laws

Today, few building owners are exempt from providing accessibility for people with disabilities. Before making any accessibility modification, it is imperative to determine which laws and codes are applicable. In addition to local and State accessibility codes, the following federal accessibility laws are currently in effect:

Architectural Barriers Act (1968)

The Architectural Barriers Act stipulates that all buildings designed, constructed, and altered by the Federal Government, or with federal assistance, must be accessible. Changes made to federal buildings must meet the Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards (UFAS). Special provisions are included in UFAS for historic buildings that would be threatened or destroyed by meeting full accessibility requirements.

Rehabilitation Act (1973)

The Rehabilitation Act requires recipients of federal financial assistance to make their programs and activities accessible to everyone. Recipients are allowed to make their properties accessible by altering their building, by moving programs and activities to accessible spaces, or by making other accommodations.

Americans with Disabilities Act (1990)

Historic properties are not exempt from the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements. To the greatest extent possible, historic buildings must be as accessible as non-historic buildings. However, it may not be possible for some historic properties to meet the general accessibility requirements.

Under Title II of the ADA, State and local governments must remove accessibility barriers either by shifting services and programs to accessible buildings, or by making alterations to existing buildings. For instance, a licensing office may be moved from a second floor to an accessible first floor space, or if this is not feasible, a mail service might be provided. However, State and local government facilities that have historic preservation as their main purpose—State-owned historic museums, historic State capitols that offer tours—must give priority to physical accessibility.

Under Title III of the ADA, owners of "public accommodations" (theaters, restaurants, retail shops, private museums) must make "readily achievable" changes; that is, changes that can be easily accomplished without much expense. This might mean installing a ramp, creating accessible parking, adding grab bars in bathrooms, or modifying door hardware. The requirement to remove barriers when it is "readily achievable" is an ongoing responsibility. When alterations, including restoration and rehabilitation work, are made, specific accessibility requirements are triggered.

Recognizing the national interest in preserving historic properties, Congress established alternative requirements for properties that cannot be made accessible without "threatening or destroying" their significance. A consultation process is outlined in the ADA's Accessibility Guidelines for owners of historic properties who believe that making specific accessibility modifications would "threaten or destroy" the significance of their property. In these situations, after consulting with persons with disabilities and disability organizations, building owners should contact the State Historic Preservation Officer (SHPO) to determine if the special accessibility provisions for historic properties may be used. Further, if it is determined in consultation with the SHPO that compliance with the minimum requirements would also "threaten or destroy" the significance of the property, alternative methods of access, such as home delivery and audio-visual programs, may be used.

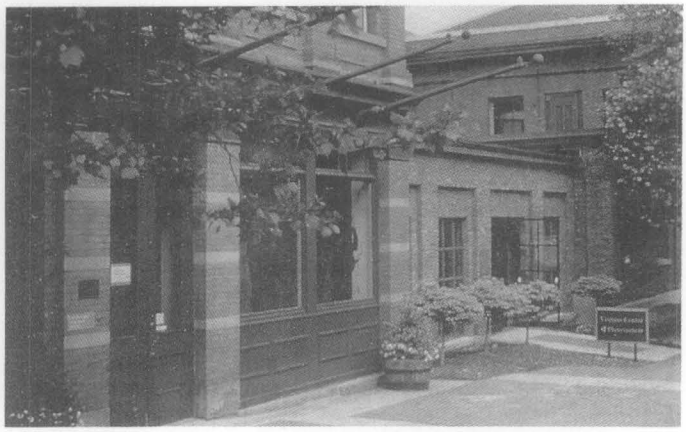


Figure 23. New additions to historic buildings can be designed to increase accessibility. A new addition links two adjacent buildings used for the Albany, New York, Visitor's Center, and incorporates an accessible entrance, restrooms, and signage. Photo: Clare Adams.

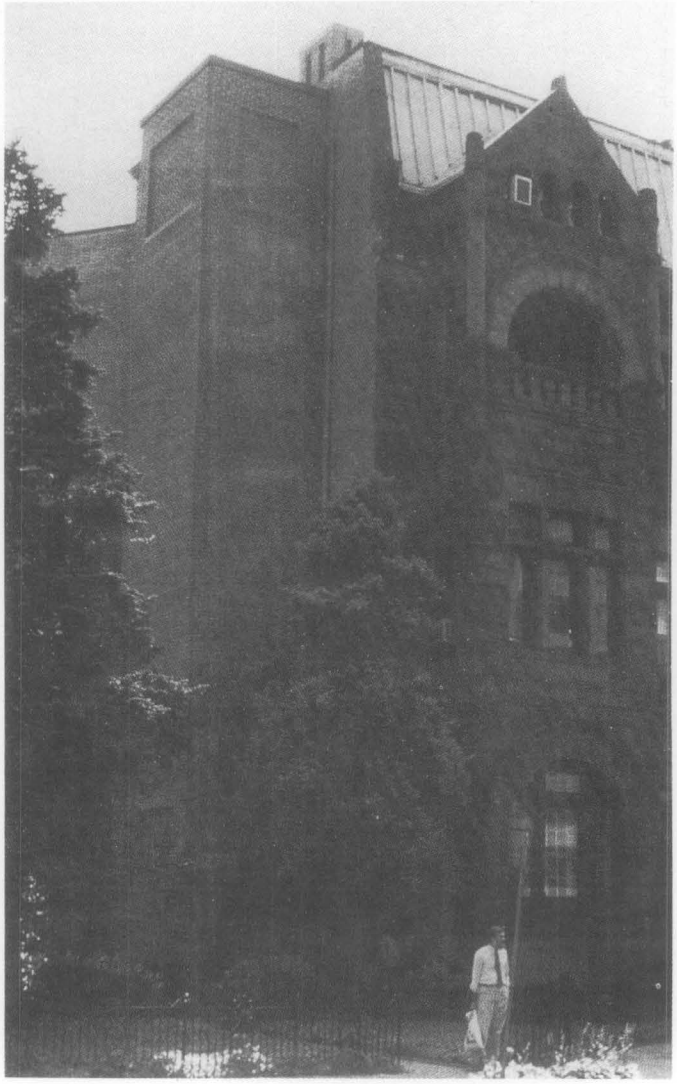


Figure 24. Creating an accessible entrance with a new elevator tower requires a compatible design. This elevator addition blends in with the historic building's materials and provides access to all public levels. Photo: Sharon Park.

Conclusion

Historic properties are irreplaceable and require special care to ensure their preservation for future generations. With the passage of the Americans with Disabilities Act, access to historic properties open to the public is a now civil right, and owners of historic properties must evaluate existing buildings and determine how they can be made more accessible. It is a challenge to evaluate properties thoroughly, to identify the applicable accessibility requirements, to explore alternatives and to implement solutions that provide independent access and are consistent with accepted historic preservation standards. Solutions for accessibility should not destroy a property's significant materials, features and spaces, but should increase accessibility as much as possible. Most historic buildings are not exempt from providing accessibility, and with careful planning, historic properties can be made more accessible, so that all citizens can enjoy our Nation's diverse heritage.

Photo: Massachusetts Historical Commission.

Additional Reading

Ballantyne, Duncan S. and Harold Russell Associates, Inc. *Accommodation of Disabled Visitors at Historic Sites in the National Park System.* Washington, D.C.: Park Historic Architecture Division, National Park Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, 1983.

Goldman, Nancy. Ed. *Readily Achievable Checklist: A Survey for Accessibility.* Boston: Adaptive Environments Center, 1993.

Hayward, Judith L. and Thomas C. Jester, compilers. *Accessibility and Historic Preservation Resource Guide.* Windsor, Vermont: Historic Windsor, Inc., 1992, revised 1993.

Jester, Thomas C. *Preserving the Past and Making it Accessible for People with Disabilities.* Washington, D.C.: Preservation Assistance Division , National Park Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, 1992.

Parrott, Charles. *Access to Historic Buildings for the Disabled.* Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of the Interior, 1980.

Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties. Washington, D.C.: Preservation Assistance Division, National Park Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, 1993.

Smith, William D. and Tara Goodwin Frier. *Access to History: A Guide to Providing Access to Historic Buildings for People with Disabilities.* Boston: Massachusetts Historical Commission, 1989.

Standards for Accessible Design: ADA Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG). Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Justice, 1991.

Acknowledgements

Thomas C. Jester is an Architectural Historian with the Preservation Assistance Division of the National Park Service. Sharon C. Park, AIA, is the Senior Historical Architect with the Preservation Assistance Division, National Park Service.

The authors wish to thank Charles A. Birnbaum, ASLA, Historical Landscape Architect with the Preservation Assistance Division, National Park Service, for contributing the section on historic landscapes. The authors gratefully acknowledge the invaluable comments made by the following individuals who reviewed the draft manuscript: William Smith, Massachusetts Historical Commission; Kay Weeks, H. Ward Jandl, Michael Auer, and Charles A. Birnbaum, Preservation Assistance Division, National Park Service; Clare Adams, New York Department of Parks, Recreation and Historic Preservation; Lauren Bowlin, Maryland Historical Trust; Tom Mayes, National Trust for Historic Preservation; Elizabeth Igleheart, Maine Historic Preservation Commission; Milford Wayne Donaldson, FAIA; Paul Beatty, U.S. Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board; Mid-Atlantic Regional Office, National Park Service; Western Regional Office, National Park Service.

This publication has been prepared pursuant to the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966, as amended, which directs the Secretary of the Interior to develop and make available information concerning historic properties. Comments about this publication should be directed to H. Ward Jandl, Deputy Chief, Preservation Assistance Division, National Park Service, P.O. Box 37127, Washington, D.C. 20013-7127.

This publication is not copyrighted and can be reproduced without penalty. Normal procedures for credit to the authors and the National Park Service are appreciated.

ISSN: 0885-7016 September 1993

THE SECRETARY OF THE INTERIOR'S **STANDARDS** FOR THE TREATMENT OF HISTORIC PROPERTIES

WITH

GUIDELINES FOR PRESERVING, REHABILITATING, RESTORING & RECONSTRUCTING HISTORIC BUILDINGS

U.S. Department of the Interior
National Park Service
Technical Preservation Services

Under the National Historic Preservation Act (NHPA), the Secretary of the Interior is responsible for establishing professional standards and for providing guidance on the preservation of the nation's historic properties. *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties* apply to all grants-in-aid projects assisted through the Historic Preservation Fund (authorized by the NHPA) and are intended to be applied to a wide variety of resource types, including buildings, sites, structures, objects, and districts. The Standards address four treatments: preservation, rehabilitation, restoration, and reconstruction. The treatment Standards, developed in 1992, were codified as 36 CFR Part 68 in the July 12, 1995, Federal Register (Vol. 60, No. 133). They replaced the 1978 and 1983 versions of 36 CFR Part 68, entitled *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Historic Preservation Projects.* The revised Guidelines herein replace the Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring, and Reconstructing Historic Buildings, published in 1995 to accompany the treatment Standards.

The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties are regulatory only for projects receiving Historic Preservation Fund grant assistance and other federally-assisted projects. Otherwise, these Guidelines are intended to provide general guidance for work on any historic building.

Another regulation, 36 CFR Part 67, focuses on "certified historic structures" as defined by the Internal Revenue Service Code of 1986. The Standards for Rehabilitation cited in 36 CFR Part 67 should always be used when property owners are seeking certification for federal tax benefits.

THE SECRETARY OF THE INTERIOR'S **STANDARDS** FOR THE TREATMENT OF HISTORIC PROPERTIES WITH **GUIDELINES** FOR PRESERVING, REHABILITATING, RESTORING & RECONSTRUCTING HISTORIC BUILDINGS

Revised by Anne E. Grimmer

from *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring & Reconstructing Historic Buildings*
Kay D. Weeks and Anne E. Grimmer (1995)

U.S. Department of the Interior
National Park Service
Technical Preservation Services
Washington, D.C.

2017

CONTENTS

IV PHOTO CREDITS

VI ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

VII PREFACE

2 INTRODUCTION
Using the Standards and Guidelines for a Preservation, Rehabilitation, Restoration, or Reconstruction Project

Choosing an Appropriate Treatment for the Historic Building

4 HISTORICAL OVERVIEW
Building Materials
Masonry • Wood • Metals

Building Features and Systems
Roofs • Windows • Entrances and Porches • Storefronts • Curtain Walls • Structural Systems • Mechanical Systems

Interior Spaces, Features, and Finishes

Building Site

Setting (District/Neighborhood)

Code-Required Work:
Accessibility • Life Safety

Resilience to Natural Hazards

Sustainability

New Exterior Additions to Historic Buildings and Related New Construction

27 STANDARDS FOR PRESERVATION & GUIDELINES FOR PRESERVING HISTORIC BUILDINGS

29 INTRODUCTION

31 BUILDING MATERIALS
31 Masonry
37 Wood
41 Metals

44 BUILDING FEATURES AND SYSTEMS
44 Roofs
46 Windows
49 Entrances and Porches
51 Storefronts
53 Curtain Walls
55 Structural Systems
58 Mechanical Systems

60 INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

63 BUILDING SITE

66 SETTING (DISTRICT/NEIGHBORHOOD)

69 CODE-REQUIRED WORK
69 Accessibility
71 Life Safety

72 RESILIENCE TO NATURAL HAZARDS

74 SUSTAINABILITY

75 STANDARDS FOR REHABILITATION & GUIDELINES FOR REHABILITATING HISTORIC BUILDINGS

77 INTRODUCTION

80 BUILDING MATERIALS
80 Masonry
88 Wood
93 Metals

98 BUILDING FEATURES AND SYSTEMS
98 Roofs
102 Windows
110 Entrances and Porches
113 Storefronts
117 Curtain Walls
121 Structural Systems
125 Mechanical Systems

128 INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

137 BUILDING SITE

143 SETTING (DISTRICT/NEIGHBORHOOD)

147 CODE-REQUIRED WORK
147 Accessibility
150 Life Safety

153 RESILIENCE TO NATURAL HAZARDS

155 SUSTAINABILITY

156 NEW EXTERIOR ADDITIONS TO HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND RELATED NEW CONSTRUCTION

163 STANDARDS FOR RESTORATION & GUIDELINES FOR RESTORING HISTORIC BUILDINGS

165 INTRODUCTION

Contents Restoration (cont.)

168 MATERIALS
168 Masonry
176 Wood
180 Metals

184 BUILDING FEATURES AND SYSTEMS
184 Roofs
187 Windows
190 Entrances and Porches
193 Storefronts
196 Curtain Walls
199 Structural Systems
202 Mechanical Systems

204 INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

209 BUILDING SITE

214 SETTING (DISTRICT/NEIGHBORHOOD)

218 CODE-REQUIRED WORK
218 Accessibility
220 Life Safety

222 RESILIENCE TO NATURAL HAZARDS

224 SUSTAINABILITY

225 STANDARDS FOR RECONSTRUCTION & GUIDELINES FOR RECONSTRUCTING HISTORIC BUILDINGS

227 INTRODUCTION

230 OVERVIEW

232 BUILDING EXTERIOR

234 BUILDING INTERIOR

236 BUILDING SITE

238 BUILDING SETTING (DISTRICT/NEIGHBORHOOD)

PHOTO CREDITS

Front Cover: Spooner Hall, University of Kansas, Lawrence, KS, Henry van Brunt, 1894.

HISTORICAL OVERVIEW

Masonry. Detail, decorative sandstone door surround.

Wood. Detail, Pope-Leighey House, Alexandria, VA, Frank Lloyd Wright, 1940. Photo: Courtesy National Trust for Historic Preservation, Paul Burk, photographer.

Metals. Detail, Dunbar Molasses Factory, New Orleans, LA, c. 1920.

Glass. Detail, St. John's Abbey, Collegeville, MN, Marcel Breuer, 1958-61.

Paint and Other Coatings. Interior detail, Mabel Tainter Memorial Theater, Menomonie, WI, Harvey Ellis, 1889. Photo: Miller Dunwiddie Architecture.

Composite Materials. Composite siding, Private Residence, Washington, DC, William Lescaze, 1940.

Simulative Materials. Detail, wood used to simulate cut stone.

Roofs. Asphalt roof shingles on a 1920s-era house.

Windows. Paired wood windows with stained glass lunette on a Romanesque revival-style rowhouse.

Entrances and Porches. Decorative stone entrance with etched-glass revolving door on early-20th century office building.

Storefronts. Ellicott City, MD.

Curtain Walls. Simms Building, Albuquerque, NM, Flatow & Moore, 1954. Photo: Harvey M. Kaplan.

Structural Systems. Boiler Maker Shops, Navy Yard Annex, Washington, DC, 1919.

Mechanical Systems. Historic Radiator.

Spaces, Features, and Finishes. Interior, Saenger Theater, New Orleans, LA, Emile Weil, 1927. Photo: Courtesy Saenger Theater.

Site. Vineyard, Charles Krug Winery, St. Helena, CA. Photo: Rocco Ceselin. Inset: Redwood Cellar, 1872, Charles Krug Winery. Photo: Rien van Rijthoven.

Setting. Late-19th-century residential historic district.

Accessibility. Gradual slope added to sidewalk and paving for accessibility. Schmidt Brewery, St. Paul, MN, late 19th–early 20th century.

Life Safety. Code-required, supplemental stair railing.

Resilience to Natural Hazards. Farnsworth House, Plano, IL, Mies van der Rohe, 1951. Photo: Courtesy Farnsworth, A Site of the National Trust for Historic Preservation.

Sustainability. Traditional sustainable features include deep porches and window shutters in southern architecture.

New Additions and Related New Construction. Private Residence, Washington, DC, Cunningham/Quill Architects. Photo: © Maxwell MacKenzie.

CHAPTER HEADS

Preservation. Old Santa Fe Trail Building (National Park Service Intermountain Regional Office), Santa Fe, NM. This adobe building was designed by John Gaw Meem in the Spanish-Pueblo Revival style, and constructed for the National Park Service through the auspices of the Civilian Conservation Corps (CCC) and the Works Project Administration (WPA) in 1939. Photo: MRWM Landscape Architects.

Rehabilitation. The Arcade, Providence, RI, 1828. Photo: Northeast Collaborative Architects, Ben Jacobson, photographer.

Restoration. Montpelier, Montpelier Station, VA. National Trust for Historic Preservation, Administered by The Montpelier Foundation. Photo: Courtesy The Montpelier Foundation.

Reconstruction. The Cathedral of Saint Michael the Archangel, Sitka, AK, built early 1840s, reconstructed 1961. Photo: Barek at Wikimedia Commons.

Photographs not individually credited are from National Park Service files.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This edition of *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring and Reconstructing Historic Buildings* has been produced in part to ensure that the National Park Service continues to fulfill its responsibility to promote the preservation of the historic buildings that are part of the nation's cultural heritage. This has been a collaborative effort undertaken by the office of Technical Preservation Services (TPS) in the National Park Service, with the assistance of other National Park Service programs, State Historic Preservation Offices (SHPO), the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation, Federal Agency Historic Preservation Officers, the National Trust for Historic Preservation, and others. The comments and suggestions provided by these agencies and organizations, together with important contributions from the TPS professional staff, have been invaluable in the development of this revised and updated guidance on preserving, rehabilitating, restoring, and reconstructing historic buildings that accompany *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties.*

PREFACE

The year 2016 was significant as the Centennial of the National Park Service, which was established as a new bureau within the Department of the Interior by the Organic Act on August 25, 1916. As directed in this legislation, the National Park Service has served for one hundred years as steward of the "Federal areas known as national parks, monuments and reservations...to conserve the scenery and the natural and historic objects and the wild life therein and to...leave them unimpaired for the enjoyment of future generations."

The year 2016 also marked the 50th anniversary of the passage of the National Historic Preservation Act on October 15, 1966. The Act increased the scope and responsibilities of the National Park Service with regard to the preservation of cultural resources. The National Historic Preservation Act charges the National Park Service (through authority delegated by the Secretary of the Interior) to establish and administer a national historic preservation program and to develop and promulgate standards and guidelines for the treatment of historic properties.

The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Historic Preservation Projects were first issued in 1978. In 1979 they were published with Guidelines for Applying the Standards and reprinted in 1985. The Standards were revised in 1992, when they were retitled *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties*. The Standards were codified in the Federal Register in 1995, the same year that they were published with guidelines as *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring and Reconstructing Historic Buildings*. These Standards and Guidelines provide a critical part of the framework of the national preservation program. They are widely used at the federal, state, and local levels to guide work on historic buildings, and they also have been adopted by Certified Local Governments and historic preservation commissions across the nation.

In 2010 the National Park Service issued *A Call to Action: Preparing for a Second Century of Stewardship and Engagement*, a plan to chart a path for its next 100 years. This plan identified a number of actions with the goal to "preserve America's special places in the next century," which included updating National Park Service policies and guidance. The project to update *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring and Reconstructing Historic Buildings* was undertaken as part of this broader effort.

Since these Guidelines were first published in 1995, a greater number of buildings and building types, telling a broader range of stories that are part of the nation's heritage, have been recognized as "historic"

and eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places. These guidelines have been updated and expanded to address the treatment of these buildings constructed with newer materials and systems from the mid- and late-20th century.

The updated Guidelines have the same organization as the prior version, beginning with an introduction and a historical overview, followed by chapters that focus on each of the four treatments: preservation, rehabilitation, restoration, and reconstruction. The historical overview has been expanded; not only has the information on historic materials, systems, features, and special issues that comprised the previous edition been more fully developed, but new entries have been added on glass, paint and other coatings, composite materials, imitative materials, and curtain walls.

In each of the four chapters, the "Recommended" and "Not Recommended" treatments have been updated and revised throughout to ensure that they continue to promote the best practices in preservation. The section on exterior additions to historic buildings in the Rehabilitation Guidelines has been broadened also to address related new construction on a building site. A section on code-required work is now included in all of the chapters. "Energy Efficiency" has been eliminated, since it is more fully covered by the guidance provided on sustainability in *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation and Illustrated Guidelines on Sustainability for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings* (published in 2011), which has general applicability to all the treatments and is incorporated here by reference. Sections on "Resilience to Natural Hazards" have been added, but these topics will be more fully addressed in separate documents and web features. Finally, the updated Guidelines feature all new, and many more, illustrations in color.

Herewith Technical Preservation Services issues the National Park Service Centennial edition of *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring and Reconstructing Historic Buildings*, updated and revised in recognition of the 50th anniversary of the National Historic Preservation Act, to ensure that the preservation guidance for historic buildings provided by the National Park Service continues to be meaningful and relevant in the 21st century.

Technical Preservation Services
National Park Service

Technical Preservation Services National Park Service

The office of Technical Preservation Services (TPS) in the Cultural Resources directorate of the National Park Service is responsible for developing and promulgating preservation standards and guidance specifically as it relates to historic buildings. TPS has produced an extensive amount of technical, educational, and policy guidance on the maintenance and preservation of historic buildings. TPS developed the original and current versions of *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties with Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring and Reconstructing Historic Buildings*. The many technical publications and web features on preserving historic buildings prepared by TPS are well known, especially the *Preservation Briefs* and the *Preservation Tech Notes* series. It is not feasible to include a complete list here of all the materials available from TPS because of the sheer volume of information. Materials developed by TPS are available in printed form and/or online from the TPS website at https://www.nps.gov/tps (or search for Technical Preservation Services at https://www.nps.gov). TPS also administers the Federal Historic Preservation Tax Incentives Program, which encourages private sector investment in the rehabilitation and reuse of historic buildings.

INTRODUCTION

Using the Standards and Guidelines for Preservation, Rehabilitation, Restoration, and Reconstruction Projects

The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties address four treatments: preservation, rehabilitation, restoration, and reconstruction. As stated in the regulations (36 CFR Part 68) promulgating the Standards, "one set of standards ...will apply to a property undergoing treatment, depending upon the property's significance, existing physical condition, the extent of documentation available, and interpretive goals, when applicable. The Standards will be applied taking into consideration the economic and technical feasibility of each project." These Standards apply not only to historic buildings but also to a wide variety of historic resource types eligible to be listed in the National Register of Historic Places. This includes buildings, sites, structures, objects, and districts.

Guidelines, however, are developed to help apply the Standards to a specific type of historic resource. Thus, in addition to these Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring and Reconstructing Historic Buildings, there are also guidelines for cultural landscapes, historic lighthouses, historic vessels, historic furnished interiors, and historic covered bridges.

The purpose of *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties and Guidelines for Preserving, Rehabilitating, Restoring and Reconstructing Historic Buildings* is to provide guidance to historic building owners and building managers, preservation consultants, architects, contractors, and project reviewers prior to beginning work. It is always recommended that preservation professionals be consulted early in any project.

The Guidelines are intended as an aid to assist in applying the Standards to all types of historic buildings. They are not meant to give case-specific advice or address exceptions or unusual conditions. They address both exterior and interior work on historic buildings. Those approaches to work treatments and techniques that are consistent with The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties are listed in the "Recommended" column on the left; those which are inconsistent with the Standards are listed in the "Not Recommended" column on the right.

There are four sections, each focusing on one of the four treatment Standards: Preservation, Rehabilitation, Restoration, and Reconstruction. Each section includes one set of Standards with accompanying Guidelines that are to be used throughout the course of a project.

Preservation *is defined as the act or process of applying measures necessary to sustain the existing form, integrity, and materials of an historic property. Work, including preliminary measures to protect and stabilize the property, generally focuses upon the ongoing maintenance and repair of historic materials and features rather than extensive replacement and new construction. The limited and sensitive upgrading of mechanical, electrical, and plumbing systems and other code-required work to make properties functional is appropriate within a preservation project. However, new exterior additions are not within the scope of this treatment.* The Standards for Preservation require retention of the greatest amount of historic fabric along with the building's historic form.

Rehabilitation *is defined as the act or process of making possible a compatible use for a property through repair, alterations, and additions while preserving those portions or features which convey its historical, cultural, or architectural values.* The Rehabilitation Standards acknowledge the need to alter or add to a historic building to meet continuing or new uses while retaining the building's historic character.

Restoration *is defined as the act or process of accurately depicting the form, features, and character of a property as it appeared at a particular period of time by means of the removal of features from other periods in its history and reconstruction of missing features from the restoration period. The limited and sensitive upgrading of mechanical, electrical, and plumbing systems and other code-required work to make properties functional is appropriate within a restoration project.* The Restoration Standards allow for the depiction of a building at a particular time in its history by preserving materials, features, finishes, and spaces from its period of significance and removing those from other periods.

Reconstruction *is defined as the act or process of depicting, by means of new construction, the form, features, and detailing of a non-surviving site, landscape, building, structure, or object for the purpose of replicating its appearance at a specific period of time and in its historic location.* The Reconstruction Standards establish a limited framework for recreating a vanished or non-surviving building with new materials, primarily for interpretive purposes.

The Guidelines are introduced with a brief overview of the primary materials used in historic buildings; the exterior and interior architectural features and systems; the building's site and setting; code-compliance requirements regarding accessibility and life-safety resilience to natural hazards; sustainability; and new additions and related new construction. This overview establishes the format of the Guidelines that follow.

Choosing an Appropriate Treatment for the Historic Building

The Guidelines are intended to promote responsible preservation practices that help protect the nation's irreplaceable cultural resources. For example, they cannot, in and of themselves, be used to make essential decisions about which features of the historic building should be saved and which can be changed. But, once a treatment is selected, the Standards and Guidelines provide a consistent philosophical approach to the work.

Choosing the most appropriate treatment for a building requires careful decision making about a building's historical significance, as well as taking into account a number of other considerations:

Level of Significance. National Historic Landmarks, designated for their "exceptional significance in American history," and other properties important for their interpretive value may be candidates for *Preservation* or *Restoration*. *Rehabilitation*, however, is the most commonly used treatment for the majority of historic buildings *Reconstruction* has the most limited application because so few resources that are no longer extant can be documented to the degree necessary to accurately recreate the property in a manner that conveys its appearance at a particular point in history.

Physical condition. *Preservation* may be appropriate if distinctive materials, features, and spaces are essentially intact and convey the building's historical significance. If the building requires more extensive repair and replacement, or if alterations or a new addition are necessary for a new use, then *Rehabilitation* is probably the most appropriate treatment.

Proposed use. Many historic buildings can be adapted for a new use or updated for a continuing use without seriously impacting their historic character. However, it may be very difficult or impossible to convert some special-use properties for new uses without major alterations, resulting in loss of historic character and even integrity.

Code and other regulations. Regardless of the treatment, regulatory requirements must be addressed. But without a sensitive design approach such work may damage a building's historic materials and negatively impact its character. Therefore, because the ultimate use of the building determines what requirements will have to be met, some potential uses of a historic building may not be appropriate if the necessary modifications would not preserve the building's historic character. This includes adaptations to address natural hazards as well as sustainability.

HISTORICAL OVERVIEW

Masonry

Stone is one of the more lasting masonry building materials and has been used throughout the history of American building construction. Stones most commonly used in historic buildings in the U.S. are quarried stone, including sandstone, limestone, marble, granite, slate, basalt, and coral stone, and gathered stone, such as fieldstone, river rock, and boulders. Types of stone differ considerably in hardness, durability, and other qualities. Building stones were usually laid with mortar, but sometimes they were laid without mortar using a dry-stack method of construction. Brick varies in size and permanence. Before 1870, brick clays were pressed into molds and were often unevenly fired. The quality of historic brick depended on the type of clay available and the brick-making technique; by the 1870s, with the perfection of an extrusion process, bricks became more uniform and durable. ***Architectural terra cotta*** is also a kiln-fired clay product popular from the late 19th century until the 1930s. Its use became more widespread with the development of steel-frame, high-rise office buildings in the early 20th century. ***Glazed ceramic architectural siding*** was also used as cladding in high-rise buildings somewhat later. ***Adobe,*** which consists of sun-dried earthen bricks, was one of the earliest building materials used in the U.S., primarily in the Southwest where it is still popular.

Mortar is used to bond together masonry units. Historic mortar was generally quite soft, consisting primarily of lime and sand with other additives. Portland cement, which creates a more rigid mortar, was first manufactured in the U.S. in the early 1870s, but it was not in common use throughout the country until the early 20th century. Thus, mortar used in buildings from around 1873 until the 1930s ranged from a traditional lime-cement mix to a variety of sand and Portland cement combinations. After this time, most mortar mixes were based on Portland cement. Like historic mortar, early ***stucco*** was also heavily lime based, increasing in hardness with the addition of Portland cement in the late 19th century.

Concrete has a long history. It is composed of sand, crushed stone, or gravel bound together with lime and, sometimes, natural hydraulic cements. As a construction material concrete is used in a variety of forms, including blocks or units, poured or cast-in-place, and precast panels. ***Cast stone*** and other manufactured products began to be used around the 1860s as substitutes for natural stone. There are also cementitious materials specific to certain regions, such as ***tabby,*** which includes crushed shells and is found primarily in coastal areas in the southeastern part of the country. In the 20th century, ***reinforced concrete*** was developed and has since become one of the most commonly used materials in modern building construction.

While masonry is one of the most durable historic building materials, it is also very susceptible to damage by exposure, improper maintenance or repairs, abrasive cleaning, or the application of non-permeable coatings.

Wood

Wood is one of the most essential materials used in American buildings of every period and style. Its many and varied attributes make it suitable for multiple uses, including structural members, siding, roofing, interior finishes, and decorative features. Many of the first structures in the earliest settlements were built with logs, which were readily available, did not require much finishing, and could be quickly erected with basic tools.

Water-powered sawmills cut logs into timbers and boards, but detailed ornamental features were generally crafted on site using hand tools until after the Civil War. Mechanized production increased the efficiency of cutting logs into timbers, boards, and more intricate components, and the structural and decorative potential of wood's use in building construction expanded. With more efficient production came lower costs, but also the standardization of ready-made moldings and assemblies for windows, doors, and decorative features. Initially, wood was primarily sourced locally, but improved transportation systems made a greater variety of wood species more accessible all over the country. With broader availability, a particular wood could be selected for its suitability in a specific application; however, local species were used most often.

The extensive use of wood in buildings can be attributed to its many properties that include strength in both tension and compression; ease with which it can be cut and shaped; capability to be connected using a variety of fasteners and adhesives; ability to be painted or varnished; and resistance to wear and weather. All of these characteristics, and some more than others, vary according to the species of wood. Although many types and species of wood used historically are no longer available, wood selection and construction practices have always capitalized on its attributes and compensated for it is weaknesses. Their resistance to decay made white oak and cedar common choices for roofing shingles, while oak and maple were frequently chosen for flooring because of their hardness. Pine and yellow poplar have often been used for siding and trim because of their straight grain and ease of milling, but they must be painted to protect them from decay.

Plywood is an engineered product formed by laminating thin sheets of wood together; it was introduced to the U.S. building industry in the early 20th century. Because plywood has greater structural potential than wood, and as a sheet can be installed more efficiently, it soon replaced boards as sheathing before being replaced itself by less-expensive ***particle board*** for many applications. By applying surface veneers and adhesives, plywood can also be used as siding or for fine interior finishes on paneling or cabinetry. ***Glued laminated timber*** (glulam), first manufactured in the 1930s, is another engineered wood material. It is an important material in mid-20th-century buildings and often used for massive arches and trusses in sports arenas and similar large, open, column-free spaces.

Many historic buildings have wood structural systems and features, such as stairs or columns. The majority of both practical and decorative features, particularly on the interior, are made of wood, such as flooring and paneling.

Metals

Metal features—including steps, porches, railings, balconies, and entire facades; cornices, siding, cladding, roofs, roof cresting, and storefronts; and doors, window sash, entablatures, and hardware—are often highly decorative as well as practical and are important in defining the overall character of historic American buildings.

Metals commonly used in historic buildings include ***lead, tinplate, terneplate, zinc, copper, bronze, brass, iron, steel, aluminum, stainless steel,*** and a variety of other ***alloys.*** Historic metal building components were often designed by highly-skilled artisans. By the late 19th century, many of these components were prefabricated and available from catalogues in standardized sizes and designs.

Wrought iron is the form in which iron was first used in America. In the beginning, most wrought-iron architectural elements were small, such as nails, tie rods, straps, and hardware. Wrought-iron features

gradually increased in size to include balconies, railings, porches, steps, and fencing. It was not used for structural components until around the mid 19th century, when manufacturing equipment became more sophisticated. ***Cast iron*** was initially imported from England. Although there were some iron-casting works established before the Revolution, by the early 19th century production had expanded to make a variety of cast-iron features. Structural cast-iron columns were first used in the 1820s, and cast-iron building fronts and decorative structural and ornamental features followed soon after. Cast and wrought iron are often used on the interior of historic buildings as both structural and decorative features, such as columns, staircases, railings, and light fixtures.

Steel, which is an alloy of iron and usually carbon, increased in popularity as manufacturing processes and production improved in the mid-19th century. Structural steel played an important role in the development of high-rise buildings and the skyscraper.

Lead was first used in historic buildings for roofing. ***Tinplate or terneplate,*** which was made by applying a lead and tin coating to sheet metal or steel, became a common roofing material after it was first produced in the 1820s. (Pure tin was rarely used as a building material because it is so soft.) The application of a ***zinc coating*** on sheet metal created ***galvanized iron***, which was used for roofing and decorative roofing features, such as steeples and roof cresting, as well as other ornamental architectural features, such as door and window hood molds, lintels, and oriel and bay windows. Prefabricated Quonset huts constructed of ***corrugated galvanized steel*** began to be manufactured during World War II for the military on the battlefield for housing, storage, and other uses.

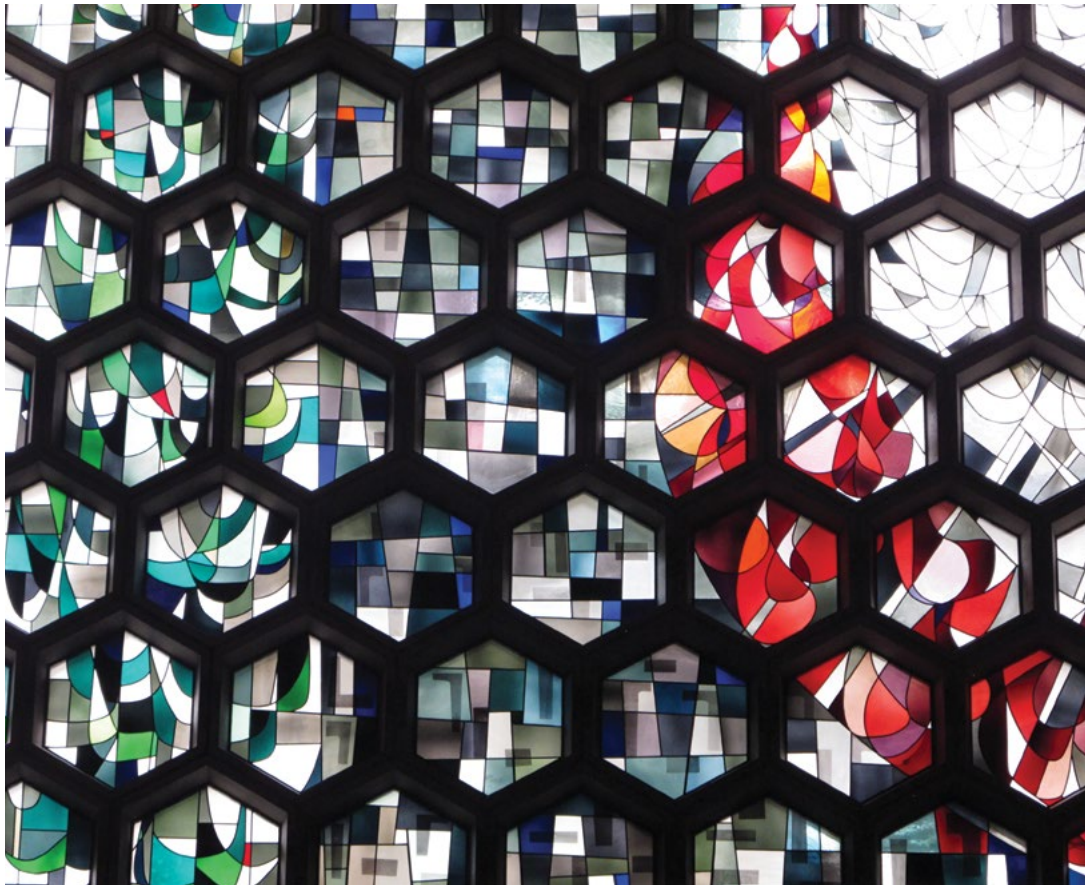
Entire pressed-metal and galvanized-iron storefronts and individual decorative features were manufactured to simulate wood, stone, or cast iron from the latter part of the 19th century into the early years of the 20th century. ***Copper*** roofs were installed on many public buildings from the 1790s through the first quarter of the 19th century. Copper continues to be used, often for porch roofs as well as gutters, downspouts, and flashing. ***Bronze*** and ***brass*** are both alloys of copper. Bronze, which weathers well, appears as entrance doors and historic storefronts. Brass, usually polished, is used for decorative interior features, such as grilles and elevator doors. **Nickel**, when employed as a building component, is in the form of an alloy, usually ***nickel silver, Monel,*** or some ***stainless steel***. In comparison to other construction metals, stainless steel is quite new, essentially only coming into use in the 1920s when it became a favorite material for Art Deco-style buildings.

Aluminum—lightweight and corrosion-resistant—was not utilized much in buildings because it was so expensive until the 1920s, when expanded production reduced its cost. Aluminum siding, which was advertised as maintenance free, became a popular siding material for single-family residences after it was introduced in the late 1930s. Some of the uses of aluminum include roofing and roofing features, such as gutters, downspouts, and flashing, as well as windows and storefront surrounds.

Porcelain enamel, or ***vitreous enamel,*** is composed of a thin coating of glass fused to cast-iron or steel sheets, panels, tiles, or shingles. Although developed in the late 19th century, it was not commonly used in buildings until the late 1920s and 1930s for Art Deco and Art Moderne storefronts. Lustron houses, constructed of prefabricated, enameled steel panels and intended for mass production, were introduced in the late 1940s in anticipation of the need for housing after the war. These houses were promoted for their low maintenance, in part because the walls, ceilings, and other interior surfaces were also enameled steel panels and easily washable.

Glass

For centuries, only blown ***cylinder*** and ***crown*** glass in small pieces was available and it was expensive. Thus, the glass in early windows in American buildings consisted of small panes which gradually increased in size over the years. With the invention of cast plate glass in 1848, large plates of glass could be manufactured which were strong and inexpensive. ***Plate glass*** was first used in the early 1850s as the primary exterior material (with a cast-iron framework) for such structures as international exhibition buildings, worlds' fair pavilions, and greenhouses and conservatories. In the early 20th century, architects began using glass curtain walls in Art Moderne-style architecture and, most notably, the International Style. ***Tempered glass*** is a hardened or toughened glass which began to be used in building construction around 1940. By the middle of the 20th century, glass as a cladding system became synonymous with curtain wall systems.



In addition to clear glass—flat or sometimes curved—there is also stained glass, tinted, patterned, textured, etched, frosted, leaded, painted, colored opaque glass and spandrel glass, prism glass, decorative Val de Verre glass (colored art glass), ceramic frit (pigmented glass enamel fused to a glass surface), and glass block. Many of these types of glass can be found in windows, transoms, doors and entrances, and storefront display windows, whereas some of them—especially opaque, pigmented structural glass with trade names such as Vitrolite, Carrara Glass, and Sani Onyx—are more likely to appear as exterior cladding on Art Deco-style or Art Moderne storefronts. ***Spandrel glass*** was first introduced on mid-20th-century buildings, particularly in storefront and curtain wall systems. Glass was also used historically in skylights and monitors; in theater, hotel, and apartment building marquees and canopies; and as a component of lightning rods and weathervanes, address plates, and signage.

Glass features on the interior of historic buildings include transoms, windows, privacy screens, office dividers, wall partitions for borrowed light in office corridors, teller windows in banks, ticket windows in train stations and movie theaters, doorknobs, light fixtures, mirrored wall inlay, and also, beginning in the latter part of the 20th century, wall mosaics. Pigmented structural glass can be found in bathrooms and some kitchens because of its sanitary qualities.

Low-e (low emissivity) ***glass***, which is primarily used in windows to minimize solar gain, was developed in the last quarter of the 20th century. ***Impact-resistant glass*** is another more-recently developed type of glass designed to withstand hurricane-force wind and which can also be installed as a blast-resistant security feature.

Paint and Other Coatings

Paints and paint-like coatings have been used on historic buildings in America as protective coatings and for decorative treatments. What is commonly considered to be paint is a liquid consisting of a pigment which makes it opaque and colors it, a binder or base to hold it together, and sometimes a vehicle to carry the pigment. Many historic paints contained lead in the form of lead white, included as a "concealing" pigment that provided opacity, although zinc oxide was also used as an alternative. Lead increased durability and prevented mold and mildew. Titanium dioxide was sometimes used as a substitute for lead in the early 20th century, but lead continued to be an ingredient in most paints until it was banned as a hazardous substance in the U.S. in 1978. Traditional paints had an oil base, usually linseed, and the earliest paint colors were, for the most part, derived from natural pigments. Like today, both glossy and flat (or matte-finish) paints were used historically on the exterior and the interior of a building. After 1875, factory-made paints were readily available. Masonry and wood stains are traditional coatings which also consist of a pigment, a solvent, and little, if any, binder. They have a flat finish and are transparent rather than opaque so that the substrate is still visible.

Other historic paints, such as ***whitewash***, are water based and have a flat finish. In addition to water, whitewash is composed of hydrated (slaked) lime, salt, and various other materials and sometimes includes a natural pigment. Whitewash was used on interior plaster, in cellars, and on wood structural components, but not on wood doors, windows, or trim because its flat finish easily rubs off. Whitewash was also used on the exterior of brick or stone buildings, wood fences, and farm outbuildings as a protective coating. Often it was reapplied on an annual basis when it got dirty or if it wore off due to exposure to the weather. ***Calcimine*** (or ***kalsomine***) and ***distemper*** paints were also water based and included natural glues, gelatin, gums, and whiting to which colored pigments could be added. They were used only on the interior and usually on plaster surfaces. ***Casein*** is a milk-based paint composed of hydrated lime, pigment, often oil, and a variety of additives to increase its durability. It was used on both the exterior and the interior of buildings.

The interiors of historic buildings can exhibit a multitude of decorative painted treatments. Marbleized and grained finishes were applied to wood, stone, and plaster to give them the appearance of more exotic and costly materials. Other interior painted treatments, such as murals and stencils, are purely decorative. ***Tempera*** and ***gouache*** are traditional water-based paints used almost exclusively for decorative painting.

Experimentation that began early in the 20th century resulted in the development of acrylic water-based paint, commonly known as ***latex paint***. ***Oil-based/alkyd paint*** continues to be used in the 21st century and is still preferred for certain applications. Latex paint tends to be more popular not only because it is water-based (making clean up easy during and after painting), but it also has fewer toxic vapors and, like solvent-based oil/alkyd paints, is very durable.

Varnish, which is used primarily on interior wood features but also on exterior entrance doors, is another traditional coating. Unlike paint, varnish is transparent, composed of a resin, a drying oil, and a solvent. It has a glossy finish, which dulls over time.

Composite Materials: Plastic, Resin, and Vinyl; Fiber-Reinforced Cement Siding; Fiberboard; and Floor Coverings

Plastic is a malleable material composed of synthetic or natural organic materials made from various organic polymers, such as ***polyethylene*** and ***polyvinyl chloride*** (**PVC**), which can be poured into molds or rolled in sheets. It is generally agreed that the term ***plastic*** was introduced into popular usage in 1907 to describe the first fully synthetic plastic. Improved plastics were available in America by World War I. Production soared during World War II because plastics were needed to make up for the shortage of other materials. In mass production by the 1950s, the industry continued to expand with the development of increasingly more sophisticated plastics.

Vinyl siding came on the market in the late 1950s, and its use, primarily in residential construction, increased as the product improved over the years. Coating canvas awnings with vinyl helped to extend their lifespan, evolving, eventually, into awnings manufactured solely of vinyl. Plastic signs on the exterior of historic commercial buildings changed and radically expanded the role of signage as advertising as well as being important design features themselves. Plastic was used sometimes for decorative trim on storefronts. Vinyl-coated wallpaper was used as early as the 1920s and is still selected for restaurants, commercial spaces, and hospitals because it is durable and washable. Other plastic materials became popular in the 1950s in the form of plastic-laminate sheeting and wall tiles.

Fiber-reinforced plastic (***FRP***), is made of a polymer matrix mixed with fiber, usually ***fiberglass***, to add strength; it is noted for its ability to be molded in thin shells. FRP is sometimes used as a substitute material to recreate missing or deteriorated architectural features in historic buildings. ***Acrylic plastic*** is a transparent synthetic plastic, generally identified by one of its trade names—***Plexiglass*** or ***Lucite***—which was patented in the 1950s as an alternative to glass. ***Foamed polystyrene***, better known as ***Styrofoam***, was first used in the mid-1950s as building insulation.

Fiber-Reinforced Cement Siding is a composite material made of sand, cement, and cellulose fibers. It was developed in the latter part of the 20th century as a less-hazardous replacement for asbestos cement siding, which preceded it, and was used for siding and roofing shingles from the early 20th century to the 1970s. Fiber-reinforced cement siding is frequently installed in the form of horizontal boards or vertical panels as exterior siding. Fiber-reinforced cement is used on both residential and commercial buildings.

Fiberboard is a composite hardboard material made from pressure-molded wood fibers. It had early precedents in the late 18th century, but was first manufactured in large quantities in the 1920s, with its use expanding in the 1930s and 40s. Fiberboard (or wallboard, as it is commonly known) was marketed by various companies, such as ***Masonite***. It was used as sheathing for roofing and siding on the exterior, for insulation, and for interior walls.

The first composite floor covering was ***Linoleum***, made from oxidized linseed oil and ground cork or wood flour. Its manufacture in the U.S. began in the late 19th century, about the same time synthetic ***rubber floor tile*** was also introduced. ***Asphalt floor tiles*** were first used in the 1920s and remained popular into the 1950s. ***Plastic/vinyl*** replaced asphalt as a binder in floor tiles in the late 1920s, in part because plastic, unlike asphalt, could be made in lighter colors and a greater variety of colors. Semi-flexible vinyl flooring, manufactured in the form of tiles or rolled sheets, was developed by the 1930s. After the war, it became more affordable and frequently was chosen for both residential and commercial interiors.

Imitative Materials

Imitative building materials are generally common and readily available materials used to simulate a more expensive material. They have a long history in American building construction. ***Wood***, cut and planed and sometimes coated with a sand paint, has been used since the 18th century to replicate cut blocks of stone and quoins on the exterior of a building. ***Stucco***, applied over any kind of construction (from log to rubble masonry) and scored to resemble stone, could make even a log house look elegant. ***Cast iron*** and ***pressed metal***, whether as a complete façade, a storefront, or an individual feature such as a window hood, cornice, or decorative pilaster, were also used on the exterior of buildings to replicate stone. Not only ***architectural terra cotta***, but ***cast stone*** served as a substitute for stone. ***Metal*** and ***concrete*** roofing tiles were used as less-costly alternatives to clay roofing tiles.

In the 20th century, the use of exterior imitative materials expanded as new products were developed. ***Asphalt roll siding*** that resembled brick could be applied to a wood building, and ***asbestos composite shingles*** were produced to replace not only wood shingle siding, but also slate roofing shingles. ***Aluminum siding*** has been used as a replacement for wood siding, followed by ***vinyl siding***, ***pressed wood siding,*** and, more recently, ***composite*** or ***fiber-cement siding***. Manufactured ***faux slate roofing*** became popular because it costs less than slate and is lighter weight. Over the years, imitative materials have increased in variety as synthetic materials continue to be introduced, including a substitute, an ***exterior insulation and finish system*** (***EIFS***), for another imitative material—stucco. Imitative materials are also used to recreate missing or deteriorated architectural features in historic buildings.

On the interior, imitative materials, such as ***scored plaster***, were historically applied to walls to give the appearance of stone. ***Painted*** or ***marbleized finishes*** on plaster or wood could further simulate stone, and ***decorative graining*** could transform the surface of a common wood into a more exotic species. ***Scagliola***, which is often applied to brick columns, is a very old technique that uses a plaster-like composite material to simulate marble. ***Lincrusta***, an embossed wall covering, was developed in the late 19th century to simulate pressed metal. ***Embossed wall coverings*** continue to be produced in the 21st century. Concrete, vinyl, and other manufactured flooring materials are designed in many patterns and colors to replicate brick, stone, clay tile, and wood.

Roofs

The roof—with its form; features such as cresting, dormers, cupolas, and chimneys; and the size, color, and patterning of the roofing material—is an important design element of many historic buildings. In addition, a weathertight roof is essential to the long-term preservation of the entire structure. Historic roofing reflects availability of materials, levels of construction technology, climate, and cost.

Throughout all periods of American history, with only minor exception, ***wood*** has been used for roofing; despite the early use of many other materials, wood shingles remained the most common roofing material throughout much of the 19th century. Initially the species of wood used would have been specific to a region, but the quality and design of a building were usually the prime determinants in the way wood was used, ranging from wide, lapped boards to small, uniform, geometrically-shaped shingles.

Clay tile was used at least in a limited way in the first settlements on the East coast and it was manufactured in America by the mid 17th century. The Spanish influence in the use of clay roofing tiles is apparent in buildings in the south, southwest, and western parts of the country. ***Slate*** was also an early roofing material, but it was imported until the end of the 18th century when the first slate quarry opened. Both slate and tile roofs provided fire protection, especially important in urban areas. The use of slate expanded quickly in the second half of the 19th century with the development of the railroads, and it remained a preferred roofing material until the middle of the 20th century.

Lead and ***copper*** were the first metals used for roofing, later joined by ***zinc*** and ***iron*** in the beginning of the 19th century. Lead was used in the mid 19th century for flashing and sometimes for the roofs of bay windows, domed, or steeply-pitched sections of a larger roof, and steeples. Copper has continued in use for roofing, gutters, downspouts, and flashing.

Painted iron was initially used in large sheets, but it was replaced with smaller sheets of iron plated with ***tin*** or ***terne***—a lead-tin mix—which were a more successful roofing material. As plated iron and, later, ***steel*** became widely available, their light weight, fire resistance, and low cost made them the ideal alternative to wood shingles. ***Galvanized metal***—base steel coated with an alloy of zinc—gained widespread popularity in the 20th century. Galvanizing not only protects metal from rusting, but it also adds strength; corrugated sheet metal, when galvanized, became the preferred metal roofing material because it reduced the need for sheathing. Galvanized steel also could be stamped into sheets simulating shingles and clay tiles.

In the late 19th century, ***concrete*** roofing tiles began to be produced as a substitute for clay tiles. At about the same time, ***composition*** roofing (built-up or roll roofing) was developed. This is a layered assembly of felt sheets and coal tar or asphalt, topped with gravel that is suitable for waterproofing flat and low-sloped roofs. Shortly after the start of the 20th century, ***asbestos fiber cement*** and ***asphalt*** shingles came into use as less-expensive alternatives to slate. Later in the 20th century, sheets of ***modified bitumen*** and ***synthetic rubber*** provided more options for a flat roof. By the end of the 20th century, ***liquid*** and ***vinyl membranes*** were also installed on flat roofs, and ***synthetic recycled materials*** were used increasingly for both new and replacement roofs.

Windows

Technology and prevailing architectural styles shaped the history of windows in America. The earliest windows were essentially medieval in their form. Small panes of glass, usually diamond-shaped and held together with lead, were set in a hinged casement sash of wood or iron. By the beginning of the 18th century, the glass had increased in size and had become rectangular, with putty holding it in place. Wood muntins replaced lead cames between the panes, and two sashes were placed in a frame where the lower one could slide vertically. Such simple windows remained common in utilitarian buildings well into the 20th century. With the introduction of iron pulleys, the sash could be hung from cords connected to counterweights, which resulted in single-hung windows, or double hung when both sashes were counterbalanced.

Sash increased in depth as it evolved, providing additional strength that allowed narrower muntins. As the production of glass (blown initially as a disk and later as a cylinder) improved, larger pieces of glass became more affordable, resulting in fewer panes of glass in a window. A sash that would have had twelve panes of glass in the 18th century often had only two by the mid 19th century. After about 1850, with the advent of mass-produced millwork, standard profiles and sizes of windows were established with a wide variety of designs and glazing configurations that could be purchased from catalogues. The Chicago window, which featured a large fixed pane of glass in the center with a narrow, double-hung, operable sash window on either side of it, was introduced in the last decades of the 19th century as a feature of the Chicago School-style of architecture. The picture window, popular in ranch-style houses in the mid 20th century, evolved from this.

Steel was employed beginning at the end of the 19th century to build fire-resistant windows in tight urban environments. These hollow-core windows were frequently galvanized. Windows with solid, rolled steel sections were first produced in the first decade of the 20th century in many forms, ranging from casements (especially popular in domestic construction) to large, multi-pane units that provided whole walls of natural light in industrial and warehouse buildings. Operable vents in these large windows pivoted on simple pins. Their relatively small panes and the fact that they were puttied in from the interior made the inevitable breakage easy and inexpensive to repair. Rolled steel was also used for double-hung windows, which were common in high-rise buildings in the 1920s and beyond. Aluminum windows were developed in the 1930s and, by the 1970s, rivaled wood in popularity, particularly in commercial and institutional buildings. They were produced in a variety of styles and functionality, including casement, hopper, awning, and double-hung sash.

Metal-clad (initially copper) wood windows appeared early in the 20th century but were not common until the later part of the century, when enameled aluminum cladding replaced copper. Although used primarily as replacements in older buildings, vinyl windows were developed in the latter part of the 20th century and marketed as inexpensive and thermally efficient. Modern windows are also made of fiberglass and polymer-based composites.

Storm windows were used historically and are still used to help regulate interior temperatures. Limited commercial use of thermal-pane or insulated glass in windows began in the 1930s, but it was not readily available until about 1950. Tempered glass also came into use about this time. Since then, work has continued to improve its efficiency and to reduce the effect of ultra-violet rays with tinted and low-e (low emissivity) glass. Impact-resistant glass is not new, but its use in windows continues to expand to meet modern hurricane code requirements as well as protection and security requirements.

Entrances and Porches

Entrances and porches are often the focus of historic American buildings. With their functional and decorative features (such as doors, steps, balustrades, columns, pilasters, and entablatures), they can be extremely important in defining the historic character of a building. In many cases, porches were also energy-saving features and remain so today, shading southern and western elevations. Usually, entrances and porches were integral components of a historic building's design; for example, porches on Greek Revival houses, with pediments and Doric or Ionic columns, echoed the architectural elements and features of the building itself. Center, single-bay porches or arcaded porches are evident in Italianate-style buildings of the 1860s. Doors of Renaissance Revival-style buildings frequently featured entablatures or pediments. Porches characterized by lathe-turned porch posts, railings, and balusters were especially prominent and decorative features of Eastlake, Queen Anne, and Stick-style houses. Deep porches on bungalows and Craftsman-style houses of the early 20th century feature tapered posts, exposed posts and beams, rafter tails, and low-pitched roofs with wide overhangs.

Late 19th- and early 20th-century high-rise buildings are often distinguished by highly-ornamented entrances, some with revolving doors, which were introduced around the turn of the 20th century. Some commercial structures in the early- to mid-20th century have recessed entrances with colorful terrazzo flooring. Entrances to Art Deco-style residential and commercial buildings often feature stylized glass and stainless-steel doors with geometric designs. Entrances on modernist buildings may have simple glazing and, frequently, projecting concrete or metal canopies.

Porches can have regional variations, not only in style, but also in nomenclature. For instance, in Hawaii, ***lanai*** is used to describe a type of porch which might be known as a ***veranda*** in some parts of the South, a ***piazza*** in Charleston, or a ***gallery*** in New Orleans.

Storefronts

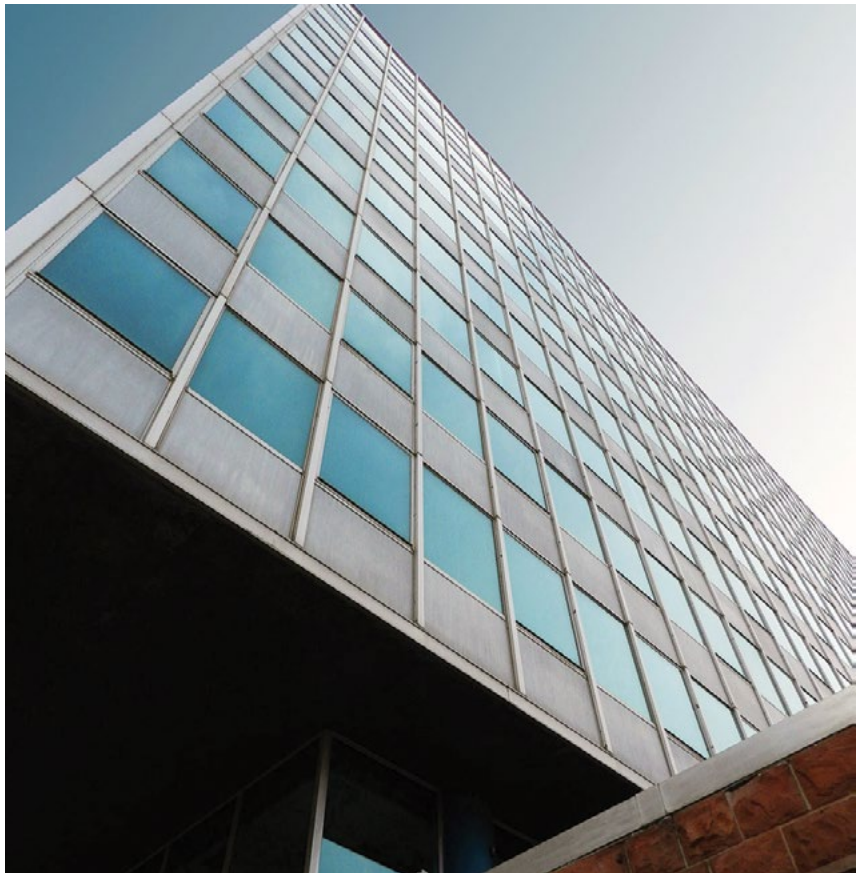
The storefront is often the most prominent feature of a historic commercial building, playing a crucial role in a store's advertising and merchandising strategy. The earliest storefronts in America, dating from the late 18th and early 19th centuries, had small, residential-style windows with limited display space. A few featured oriel windows or glass vitrine cases (sometimes added later) that projected out from the façade. Early storefront systems were frequently wood. In the 19th century, storefront display windows progressively increased in size as plate glass became available in larger units. This reflected the fact that cast-iron columns and lintels were thinner, allowing larger sheets of glazing that became available at about the same time. In some regions, storefronts and the entire building façade were constructed entirely of cast iron, later followed by galvanized metal, copper, bronze, and aluminum.

Historic storefront systems have many different configurations: they may have multiple entrance doors (including one to access an upstairs apartment if one exists); they may be symmetrical or asymmetrical; and entrances may be flush or recessed from the shop's windows. Transoms, sometimes with prism glass, are often a component of storefronts. In the 19th century, awnings added another feature to the storefront. Permanent metal canopies attached to the façade or supported by free-standing posts or columns, as well as retractable canvas awnings, provided shelter for customers and merchandise alike. As the 20th century progressed, new storefront designs were introduced, some with deeply recessed entrances with expanded display cases or "floating display islands." In the 1920s, 1930s, and later, structural pigmented glass such as Carrara Glass, Vitrolite, and Sani Onyx; aluminum and stainless steel; porcelain enamel; glass block; neon signs; and other new materials were introduced in Art Deco-style and Art Moderne storefronts. Modular storefront systems were introduced after World War II.

Storefronts are typically altered more than any other building feature to reflect the latest architectural styles and appear up-to-date to attract customers. Older storefronts were often remodeled with a new design and materials by installing pigmented structural glass, for instance, and other 20th-century materials. These altered storefronts may have acquired significance in their own right and, in this case, should be retained.

Curtain Walls

Curtain wall construction was originally based on a steel framework. Today, most curtain wall construction utilizes an extruded aluminum framework, which became popular in the 1930s in the U.S. and came into its own after World War II. A curtain wall is not a structural system and, although it is self supporting, does not carry the weight of the building. Rather, it is an exterior wall hung or attached to the structural system. Curtain wall construction most frequently employs glass, metal panels, thin stone veneer, and other cladding materials, although louvers and vents, like glass panels, can also be set into the metal framework. Newer curtain wall systems may incorporate rain screens and glass fiber reinforced concrete panels (GFRC). Because curtain wall construction uses relatively lightweight and less expensive materials, it reduces building costs, which, in part, explains its popularity.



There are essentially two types of curtain wall systems: ***stick*** systems and ***unitized*** or ***modular*** systems. A ***stick*** system is a framing system composed of long metal pieces (sticks) put together individually using vertical pieces (mullions) between floors and horizontal pieces between the vertical members. The framing members may sometimes be assembled in a factory, but the installation and glazing is done on site. A ***unitized*** or ***modular*** curtain wall system consists of ready-to-hang, pre-assembled modules which already include glazing or other panel infill. These modular units are usually one story in height and approximately five- to six-feet wide. Both types of curtain walls are attached to floor slabs or columns with field-drilled bolts in mated, adjustable anchor brackets.

Glass panels in curtain wall systems can be fixed or operable and can include spandrel glass, clear, or tinted glass. Stone veneer panels may be slate, granite, marble, travertine, or limestone. Metal panels can be aluminum plate, stainless steel, copper, or other non-corrosive types of metal. Other materials used in curtain wall systems include composite panels (such as honeycomb composite panels, consisting of two thin sheets of aluminum bonded to a thin plastic layer or rigid insulation in the middle); architectural terra cotta; glazed ceramic tile; and fiber-reinforced plastic (FRP).

Structural Systems

Numerous types of structural systems have been employed in the construction of buildings throughout American history. Some systems and building methods overlapped, and many remained in use for years. These systems—listed according to the period when they were first introduced—include but are not limited to: ***wood-frame*** construction (17th century), ***load-bearing masonry*** construction (18th century), ***balloon-frame*** construction (19th century), ***brick cavity-wall*** construction (19th century), ***heavy-timber post and beam*** industrial construction (19th century), ***fireproof iron*** construction (19th century), ***heavy masonry and steel*** construction (19th century), ***skeletal steel construction*** (19th century), ***light frame and veneer brick*** construction (20th century), and ***cast-in-place concrete, concrete block,*** and ***slab and post*** construction (20th century).

Exposed iron and steel structural systems are character defining in many utilitarian and industrial structures of the late 19th and early 20th centuries that have large open interior spaces, such as train sheds and armories. Exposed wood structural systems became an important interior decorative element during the Arts and Crafts period and in Craftsman-style bungalows in the early 20th century. Exposed cast-concrete structural systems and system components define the character of many industrial interiors and, later, other interior spaces in 20th-century buildings.

If features of the historic structural system are exposed (such as load-bearing brick walls, cast-iron columns, roof trusses, posts and beams, vigas, and outriggers, or masonry foundation walls), they are likely to be important in defining the building's overall historic character. A concealed structural system, although not character defining, may still be significant as an example of historic building technology.

Mechanical Systems

Mechanical, lighting, and plumbing systems improved significantly with the onset of the Industrial Revolution. The 19th-century interest in hygiene, personal comfort, and reducing the spread of disease resulted in the development of central heating, piped water, piped gas, and networks of underground cast-iron sewers in urban areas. The mass production of cast-iron radiators made central heating affordable to many. By the turn of the 20th century, it was common for heating, lighting, and plumbing to be an integral part of most buildings.

The increasing availability of electricity as the 20th century progressed had a tremendous effect on the development of mechanical systems and opened up a new age of technology. Electric lighting brightened the interiors of all types of buildings, as well as building exteriors, their sites, and settings. Electricity not only improved heating systems, but in the 1920s it also brought central air conditioning to movie theaters and auditoriums, where it was first installed. By the middle of the 20th century, forced-air systems provided both heat and cooling in many buildings. In the late 20th century, as HVAC systems increased in efficiency, they decreased in size, with smaller components, such as split ductless systems with wall-mounted air handlers, cassette ceiling-mounted diffusers, or high-velocity mini duct systems. These systems can be especially useful for retrofitting historic buildings because they are small and unobtrusive. Heat pumps, another late-20th century invention, can help to supplement existing HVAC systems.

Replacing hydraulic elevators, which were invented in the mid-19th century, with electric elevators in the early decades of the 20th century resulted in a boom in the construction of taller high-rise buildings and skyscrapers. Escalators, also invented in the mid 19th century, became more and more common as the 20th century advanced. By the latter part of the century, moving walkways helped facilitate travelers' passage from one place to another in transportation centers, such as airports.

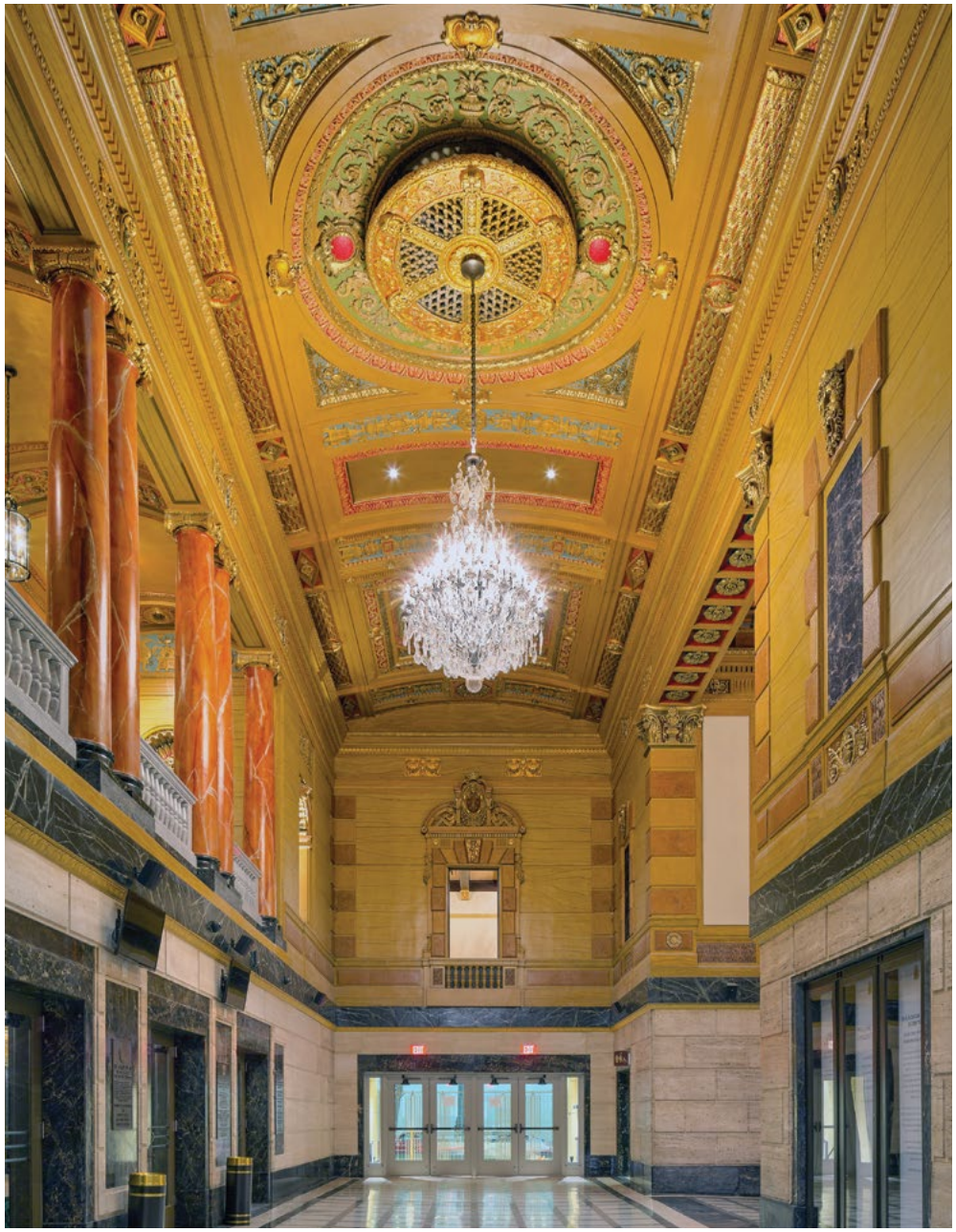
The visible decorative features that remain of historic mechanical systems (such as grilles, lighting fixtures, elevator doors, and escalators) themselves may contribute to the overall historic character of the building and should be retained when feasible. Reusing an existing, functioning system and upgrading it as needed, should always be considered when feasible. However, because a mechanical system needs to work efficiently, most historic or older systems will likely need to be replaced to meet modern requirements.

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

Spaces

The earliest buildings in America were very basic and likely to have only one or, perhaps, two rooms. As communities became more established and prosperous, buildings—houses in particular—increased in size, and construction became more elaborate and sophisticated, reflecting the wealth and tastes of individual owners. Larger buildings inevitably included multiple rooms designed to accommodate a variety of purposes. Thus, the interior floor plan, the arrangement and sequence of spaces, and built-in features and applied finishes are individually and collectively important in defining the historic character of the building. With the exception of most historic utilitarian buildings, manufacturing and industrial buildings, garages, and maintenance facilities, interiors are typically composed of a series of primary and secondary spaces. This succession of spaces is applicable to many historic buildings, from courthouses to cathedrals to cottages and commercial structures. Primary spaces, including entrance halls, lobbies, double parlors, living rooms, corridors, and assembly spaces, are defined not only by their function, but also by their location, features, finishes, size, and proportion.

Secondary spaces in historic interiors are generally more functional than decorative and, depending on the building's use, may include kitchens, bathrooms, utility rooms, attics, basements, mail rooms, rear hallways, and most office spaces. Although these spaces were important to how the building functioned historically, they are generally less significant than primary spaces and, thus, are usually the most appropriate places to make changes which may be necessary in a historic building, such as those required to meet code or to install mechanical equipment. The traditional sequence of interior spaces in late 19th- through early 20th-century high-rise buildings went from public areas (such as the lobby) on the first floor



and corridors on upper floors to the private spaces behind them (i.e., offices, apartments, or hotel rooms). This hierarchy of spaces continues to define the historic character of many high-rise buildings. However, in commercial structures built on speculation with open floor plans, the upper floors, especially, are likely to have been reconfigured many times. In some cases, these interiors may have little historic character but, in others, the spaces and their appearance may have acquired significance because of a specific tenant, use (such as a boardroom or executive office), or an event.

Features and Finishes

Historic character-defining features and finishes can range from very elaborate to very simple and plain, or from formal to utilitarian. The interior features that are important to a particular building generally reflect its original or historic use. Thus, the interior features and finishes of industrial and factory buildings are basic and practical, with exposed structural systems; wood, brick, or concrete walls and floors; large windows or monitors with clerestory windows to provide natural light; and minimal or no door and window surrounds. Commercial, office, hotel, and high-rise apartment buildings have public spaces that often include highly-decorated lobbies, elevator lobbies with marble flooring, wood or marble wainscoting in the upper corridors and, particularly in office buildings, offices separated from hallways by heavy doors with glass transoms and glass wall partitions for borrowed light. The repetitive pattern itself of the corridors on the upper floors in these multi-story buildings is also often significant in defining their historic character. Individual historic residential structures frequently have painted plaster walls and ceilings, door and window trim, fireplaces with mantels, wood flooring, and a staircase if the house has more than one story. Some mid-to late-20th-century houses that are less traditional in design have simpler and less-ornamented interiors.

Building Site

The building site consists of a historic building or buildings, structures, and associated landscape features and their relationship within a designed or legally-defined parcel of land. A site may be significant in its own right or because of its association with the historic building or buildings.

Setting (District/Neighborhood)

The setting is the larger area or environment in which a historic building is located. It may be an urban, suburban, or rural neighborhood or a natural landscape in which buildings have been constructed. The relationship of buildings to each other, setbacks, fence patterns, views, driveways and walkways, and street trees and other landscaping together establish the character of a district or neighborhood.

Special Requirements: Code-Required Work

Sensitive solutions to meeting code requirements are an important part of protecting the historic character of the building. Thus, work that must be done to meet accessibility and life-safety requirements must always be assessed for its potential impact on the historic building.

Accessibility

It is often necessary to make modifications to a historic building to make it compliant with accessibility code requirements. Federal rules, regulations, and standards provide guidance on how to make historic buildings accessible. Work must be carefully planned and undertaken in a manner that results in minimal or no loss of historic exterior and interior character-defining spaces, features, or finishes. The goal should be to provide the highest level of access with the least impact to the historic building.

Life Safety

When undertaking work on historic buildings, it is also necessary to consider the impact that meeting life-safety codes (public health, occupational health, life safety, electrical, seismic, structural, and building codes) will have on both exterior and interior spaces, features, and finishes. Historic building materials that are hazardous, such as lead paint and asbestos, will require abatement or encapsulation. Some newer life-safety codes are more flexible and allow greater leniency for historic buildings when making them code compliant. It is also possible that there may be an alternative approach to meeting codes that will be less damaging to the historic building. Coordinating with code officials early in project planning will help ensure that code requirements can be met in a historic building without negatively impacting its character.

Resilience to Natural Hazards

The potential future impacts of natural hazards on a historic building should be carefully evaluated and considered. If foreseeable loss, damage, or destruction to the building or its features can be reasonably anticipated, treatments should be undertaken to avoid or minimize the impacts and to ensure the continued preservation of the building and its historic character. In some other instances, the effects may be minimal or more gradual and the impacts unknown or not anticipated to affect the property until sometime in the future. In all instances, a building should be maintained in good condition and monitored regularly, and historic documentation should be prepared as a record of the building and to help guide future treatments.

Some impacts of natural hazards may be particularly sudden and destructive to a historic building (such as riverine flash flooding, coastal storm surge, an earthquake, or a tornado) and may require adaptive treatments that are more invasive. When a treatment is proposed for a building that addresses such potential impacts and will affect the building's historic character, other feasible alternatives that would require less change should always be considered first. In some instances, a certain degree of impact on a building's historic character may be necessary to ensure its retention and continued preservation. In other instances, a proposed treatment may have too great an impact to preserve the historic character of the building. A historic building may have existing characteristics or features that help to address or minimize the impacts of natural hazards. Some historic buildings may have been altered previously or be in regions where it has been traditional to adapt buildings frequently subject to damage from natural hazards, such as flooding. All these factors should be taken into consideration when planning preventive treatments. The goal should always be to minimize the impacts to the building's historic character to the greatest extent possible in adapting the building to be more resilient.

Sustainability

Before implementing any energy improvements to enhance the sustainability of a historic building, the existing energy-efficient characteristics of the building should be evaluated. Historic building construction methods and materials often maximized natural sources of heating, lighting, and ventilation to respond to local climatic conditions. The key to a successful project is to identify and understand any lost original and existing energy-efficient aspects of the historic building, as well as to identify and understand its character-defining features to ensure they are taken into account. The most sustainable building may be one that already exists. Thus, good preservation practice is very often synonymous with sustainability. There are numerous treatments—traditional as well as new technological innovations—that may be used to upgrade a historic building to help it operate more efficiently while retaining its character.

The topic of sustainability is addressed in detail in *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation & Illustrated Guidelines on Sustainability for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings.* Although specifically developed for the treatment Rehabilitation, the Sustainability Guidelines can be used to help guide the other treatments.

New Exterior Additions and Related New Construction

A new exterior addition to a historic building should be considered in a rehabilitation project only after determining that requirements for a new or continuing use cannot be successfully met by altering non-significant interior spaces. If the existing building cannot accommodate such requirements in this way, then an exterior addition or, in some instances, separate new construction on a site may be acceptable alternatives.

A new addition must preserve the building's historic character, form, significant materials, and features. It must be compatible with the massing, size, scale, and design of the historic building while differentiated from the historic building. It should also be designed and constructed so that the essential form and integrity of the historic building would remain if the addition were to be removed in the future. There is no formula or prescription for designing a compatible new addition or related new construction on a site, nor is there generally only one possible design approach that will meet the Standards.

New additions and related new construction that meet the Standards can be any architectural style—traditional, contemporary, or a simplified version of the historic building. However, there must be a balance between differentiation and compatibility to maintain the historic character and the identity of the building being enlarged.

New additions and related new construction that are either identical to the historic building or in extreme contrast to it are not compatible. Placing an addition on the rear or on another secondary elevation helps to ensure that it will be subordinate to the historic building. New construction should be appropriately scaled and located far enough away from the historic building to maintain its character and that of the site and setting. In urban or other built-up areas, new construction that appears as infill within the existing pattern of development can also preserve the historic character of the building, its site, and setting.

STANDARDS FOR PRESERVATION & GUIDELINES FOR PRESERVING HISTORIC BUILDINGS

Preservation

Preservation is defined as the act or process of applying measures necessary to sustain the existing form, integrity, and materials of an historic property. Work, including preliminary measures to protect and stabilize the property, generally focuses upon the ongoing maintenance and repair of historic materials and features rather than extensive replacement and new construction. New exterior additions are not within the scope of this treatment; however, the limited and sensitive upgrading of mechanical, electrical, and plumbing systems and other code-required work to make properties functional is appropriate within a preservation project.

Standards for Preservation

1. A property will be used as it was historically, or be given a new use that maximizes the retention of distinctive materials, features, spaces and spatial relationships. Where a treatment and use have not been identified, a property will be protected and, if necessary, stabilized until additional work may be undertaken.
2. The historic character of a property will be retained and preserved. The replacement of intact or repairable historic materials or alteration of features, spaces and spatial relationships that characterize a property will be avoided.
3. Each property will be recognized as a physical record of its time, place and use. Work needed to stabilize, consolidate and conserve existing historic materials and features will be physically and visually compatible, identifiable upon close inspection and properly documented for future research.
4. Changes to a property that have acquired historic significance in their own right will be retained and preserved.
5. Distinctive materials, features, finishes and construction techniques or examples of craftsmanship that characterize a property will be preserved.
6. The existing condition of historic features will be evaluated to determine the appropriate level of intervention needed. Where the severity of deterioration requires repair or limited replacement of a distinctive feature, the new material will match the old in composition, design, color and texture.
7. Chemical or physical treatments, if appropriate, will be undertaken using the gentlest means possible. Treatments that cause damage to historic materials will not be used.
8. Archeological resources will be protected and preserved in place. If such resources must be disturbed, mitigation measures will be undertaken.

GUIDELINES FOR PRESERVING HISTORIC BUILDINGS

INTRODUCTION

Preservation is the appropriate treatment when the objective of the project is to retain the building as it currently exists. This means that not only the original historic materials and features will be preserved, but also later changes and additions to the original building. The expressed goal of the **Standards for Preservation and Guidelines for Preserving Historic Buildings** is retention of the building's existing form, features, and materials. This may be as simple as maintaining existing materials and features or may involve more extensive repair. Protection, maintenance, and repair are emphasized while replacement is minimized.

Identify, Retain, and Preserve Historic Materials and Features

The guidance for the treatment **Preservation** begins with recommendations to identify the form and detailing of those architectural materials and features that are important in defining the building's historic character and which must be retained to preserve that character. Therefore, guidance on ***identifying, retaining, and preserving*** character-defining features is always given first.

Stabilize Deteriorated Historic Materials and Features as a Preliminary Measure

Deteriorated portions of a historic building may need to be protected through preliminary stabilization measures until additional work can be undertaken. ***Stabilizing*** may begin with temporary structural reinforcement and progress to weatherization or correcting unsafe conditions. Although it may not be necessary in every preservation project, stabilization is nonetheless an integral part of the treatment **Preservation**; it is equally applicable to the other treatments if circumstances warrant.

Protect and Maintain Historic Materials and Features

After identifying those materials and features that are important and must be retained in the process of **Preservation** work, then ***protecting and maintaining*** them are addressed. Protection generally involves the least degree of intervention and is preparatory to other work. Protection includes the maintenance of historic materials and features as well as ensuring that the property is protected before and during preservation work.

Repair (Stabilize, Consolidate, and Conserve) Historic Materials and Features

Next, when the physical condition of character-defining materials and features warrants additional work, ***repairing*** by ***stabilizing, consolidating, and conserving*** is recommended. The intent of **Preservation** is to retain existing materials and features while introducing as little new material as possible. Consequently, guidance for repairing a historic material, such as masonry, begins with the least degree of intervention possible, such as strengthening materials through consolidation, when necessary, or repointing with mortar of an appropriate strength. Repairing masonry, as well as wood and metal features, may include patching, splicing, or other treatments using recognized preservation methods. All work should be physically and visually compatible.

Limited Replacement in Kind of Extensively Deteriorated Portions of Historic Features

The greatest level of intervention in this treatment is the ***limited replacement in kind*** of extensively deteriorated or missing components of features when there are surviving prototypes or when the original features can be substantiated by documentary and physical evidence. The replacement material must match the old, both physically and visually (e.g., wood with wood). Thus, with the exception of hidden structural reinforcement, such as steel rods, substitute materials are not appropriate in the treatment **Preservation.** If prominent features are missing, such as an interior staircase or an exterior cornice, then a Rehabilitation or Restoration treatment may be more appropriate.

Code-Required Work: Accessibility and Life Safety

These sections of the **Preservation** guidance address work that must be done to meet accessibility and life-safety requirements. This work may be an important aspect of preservation projects, and it, too, must be assessed for its potential negative impact on the building's character. For this reason, particular care must be taken not to obscure, damage, or destroy character-defining materials or features in the process of undertaking work to meet code requirements.

Resilience to Natural Hazards

Resilience to natural hazards should be addressed as part of a **Preservation** project. A historic building may have existing characteristics or features that help to address or minimize the impacts of natural hazards. These should always be used to best advantage when planning new adaptive treatments so as to have the least impact on the historic character of the building, its site, and setting.

Sustainability

Sustainability should be addressed as part of a **Preservation** project. Good preservation practice is often synonymous with sustainability. Existing energy-efficient features should be retained and repaired. New sustainability treatments should generally be limited to updating existing features and systems so as to have the least impact on the historic character of the building.

The topic of sustainability is addressed in detail in *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation & Illustrated Guidelines on Sustainability for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings*. Although specifically developed for the treatment Rehabilitation, the Sustainability Guidelines can be used to help guide the other treatments.

Preservation as a Treatment. *When the property's distinctive materials, features, and spaces are essentially intact and thus convey the historic significance without extensive repair or replacement; when depiction at a particular period of time is not appropriate; and when a continuing or new use does not require additions or extensive alterations, Preservation may be considered as a treatment. Prior to undertaking work, a documentation plan for Preservation should be developed.*

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving masonry features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building (such as walls, brackets, railings, cornices, window and door surrounds, steps, and columns) and decorative ornament and other details, such as tooling and bonding patterns, coatings, and color.	Altering masonry features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Replacing historic masonry features instead of repairing or replacing only the deteriorated masonry. Applying paint or other coatings (such as stucco) to masonry that has been historically unpainted or uncoated. Removing paint from historically-painted masonry.
Stabilizing deteriorated or damaged masonry as a preliminary measure, when necessary, prior to undertaking preservation work.	Failing to stabilize deteriorated or damaged masonry until additional work is undertaken, thereby allowing further damage to occur to the historic building
Protecting and maintaining masonry by ensuring that historic drainage features and systems that divert rainwater from masonry surfaces (such as roof overhangs, gutters, and downspouts) are intact and functioning properly.	Failing to identify and treat the causes of masonry deterioration, such as leaking roofs and gutters or rising damp.
Cleaning masonry only when necessary to halt deterioration or remove heavy soiling.	Cleaning masonry surfaces when they are not heavily soiled to create a "like-new" appearance, thereby needlessly introducing chemicals or moisture into historic materials.
Carrying out masonry cleaning tests when it has been determined that cleaning is appropriate. Test areas should be examined to ensure that no damage has resulted and, ideally, monitored over a sufficient period of time to allow long-range effects to be predicted.	Cleaning masonry surfaces without testing or without sufficient time for the testing results to be evaluated.

[1] A test patch should always be done before using a chemical cleaner to ensure that it will not damage historic masonry, as in this instance, terra cotta.

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Cleaning soiled masonry surfaces with the gentlest method possible, such as using low-pressure water and detergent and natural bristle or other soft-bristle brushes.	Cleaning or removing paint from masonry surfaces using most abrasive methods (including sandblasting, other media blasting, or high-pressure water) which can damage the surface of the masonry and mortar joints. Using a cleaning or paint-removal method that involves water or liquid chemical solutions when there is any possibility of freezing temperatures. Cleaning with chemical products that will damage some types of masonry (such as using acid on limestone or marble), or failing to neutralize or rinse off chemical cleaners from masonry surfaces.
Using biodegradable or environmentally-safe cleaning or paint-removal products.	
Using paint-removal methods that employ a poultice to which paint adheres, when possible, to neatly and safely remove old lead paint.	
Using coatings that encapsulate lead paint, when possible, where the paint is not required to be removed to meet environmental regulations.	
Allowing only trained conservators to use abrasive or laser-cleaning methods, when necessary, to clean hard-to-reach, highly-carved, or detailed decorative stone features.	

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Removing damaged or deteriorated paint only to the next sound layer using the gentlest method possible (e.g., hand scraping) prior to repainting.	Removing paint that is firmly adhered to masonry surfaces.
Applying compatible paint coating systems to historically-painted masonry following proper surface preparation.	Failing to follow manufacturers' product and application instructions when repainting masonry features.
Repainting historically-painted masonry features with colors that are appropriate to the building and district.	Using paint colors on historically-painted masonry features that are not appropriate to the building or district.
Protecting adjacent materials when working on masonry features.	Failing to protect adjacent materials when working on masonry features.
Evaluating the overall condition of the masonry to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to masonry features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of masonry features.
Repairing masonry by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing the masonry using recognized preservation methods.	Removing masonry that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants, improper repair techniques, or unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials.
Repairing masonry walls and other masonry features by repointing the mortar joints where there is evidence of deterioration, such as disintegrating mortar, cracks in mortar joints, loose bricks, or damaged plaster on the interior.	Removing non-deteriorated mortar from sound joints and then repointing the entire building to achieve a more uniform appearance.
Removing deteriorated lime mortar carefully by hand raking the joints to avoid damaging the masonry.	

[2] **Not Recommended:** The use of inappropriate Portland cement mortar to repoint these soft 19th-century bricks has caused some of them to spall. *Photo: Courtesy Nebraska State Historic Preservation Office.*

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using power tools only on horizontal joints on brick masonry in conjunction with hand chiseling to remove hard mortar that is deteriorated or that is a non-historic material which is causing damage to the masonry units. Mechanical tools should be used only by skilled masons in limited circumstances and generally not on short, vertical joints in brick masonry.	Allowing unskilled workers to use masonry saws or mechanical tools to remove deteriorated mortar from joints prior to repointing.
Duplicating historic mortar joints in strength, composition, color, and texture when repointing is necessary. In some cases, a lime-based mortar may also be considered when repointing Portland cement mortar because it is more flexible.	Repointing masonry units with mortar of high Portland cement content (unless it is the content of the historic mortar).
Duplicating historic mortar joints in width and joint profile when repointing is necessary.	Using "surface grouting" or a "scrub" coating technique, such as a "sack rub" or "mortar washing," to repoint exterior masonry units instead of traditional repointing methods. Changing the width or joint profile when repointing.
Repairing stucco by removing the damaged material and patching with new stucco that duplicates the old in strength, composition, color, and texture.	Removing sound stucco or repairing with new stucco that is different in composition from the historic stucco. Patching stucco or concrete without removing the source of deterioration. Replacing deteriorated stucco with synthetic stucco, an exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS), or other non-traditional materials.
Using mud plaster or a compatible lime-plaster adobe render, when appropriate, to repair adobe.	Applying cement stucco, unless it already exists, to adobe.
Sealing joints in concrete with appropriate flexible sealants and backer rods, when necessary.	Repointing masonry units (other than concrete) with a synthetic caulking compound instead of mortar.

[3] **Not Recommended:** Cracks in the stucco have not been repaired, thereby allowing ferns to grow in the moist substrate which will cause further damage to the masonry.

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Cutting damaged concrete back to remove the source of deterioration, such as corrosion on metal reinforcement bars. The new patch must be applied carefully so that it will bond satisfactorily with, and match, the historic concrete.	Patching damaged concrete without first removing the source of deterioration.
Using a non-corrosive, stainless-steel anchoring system when replacing damaged stone, concrete, or terra-cotta units that have failed.	

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Applying non-historic surface treatments, such as water-repellent coatings, to masonry only after repointing and only if masonry repairs have failed to arrest water penetration problems.	Applying waterproof, water-repellent, or non-original historical coatings (such as stucco) to masonry as a substitute for repointing and masonry repairs.
Applying permeable, anti-graffiti coatings to masonry when appropriate.	Applying water-repellent or anti-graffiti coatings that change the appearance of the masonry or that may trap moisture if the coating is not sufficiently permeable.
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it represents the greatest degree of intervention generally recommended within the treatment ***Preservation****, and should only be considered after protection, stabilization, and repair concerns have been addressed.*	
Limited Replacement in Kind	
Replacing in kind extensively deteriorated or missing components of masonry features when there are surviving prototypes, such as terra-cotta brackets or stone balusters, or when the replacement can be based on documentary or physical evidence. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Replacing an entire masonry feature, such as a column or stairway, when limited replacement of deteriorated and missing components is appropriate. Using replacement material that does not match the historic masonry feature.

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving wood features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building (such as siding, cornices, brackets, window and door surrounds, and steps) and their paints, finishes, and colors.	Altering wood features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Replacing historic wood features instead of repairing or replacing only the deteriorated wood. Changing the type of finish, coating, or historic color of wood features

[4] Hand scraping to remove peeling paint from wood siding in preparation for repainting is an important part of regularly-scheduled maintenance.

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Stabilizing deteriorated or damaged wood as a preliminary measure, when necessary, prior to undertaking preservation work.	Failing to stabilize deteriorated or damaged wood until additional work is undertaken, thereby allowing further damage to occur to the historic building.
Protecting and maintaining wood features by ensuring that historic drainage features that divert rainwater from wood surfaces (such as roof overhangs, gutters, and downspouts) are intact and functioning properly. Finding and eliminating sources of moisture that may damage wood features, such as clogged gutters and downspouts, leaky roofs, or moisture-retaining soil that touches wood around the foundation.	Failing to identify and treat the causes of wood deterioration, such as faulty flashing, leaking gutters, cracks and holes in siding, deteriorated caulking in joints and seams, plant material growing too close to wood surfaces, or insect or fungal infestation.
Finding and eliminating sources of moisture that may damage wood features, such as clogged gutters and downspouts, leaky roofs, or moisture-retaining soil that touches wood around the foundation.	
Applying chemical preservatives or paint to wood features that are subject to weathering, such as exposed beam ends, outriggers, or rafter tails.	Using chemical preservatives (such as creosote) which, unless they were used historically, can change the appearance of wood features.

[5] Rotted wood shingles have been replaced in kind with matching wood shingles.

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Implementing an integrated pest management plan to identify appropriate preventive measures to guard against insect damage, such as installing termite guards, fumigating, and treating with chemicals. Retaining coatings (such as paint) that protect the wood from moisture and ultraviolet light. Paint removal should be considered only when there is paint surface deterioration and as part of an overall maintenance program which involves repainting or applying other appropriate coatings	Stripping paint or other coatings from wood features without recoating.
Removing damaged or deteriorated paint to the next sound layer using the gentlest method possible (e.g., hand scraping and hand sanding) prior to repainting.	Using potentially-damaging paint-removal methods on wood surfaces, such as open-flame torches, orbital sanders, abrasive methods (including sandblasting, other media blasting, or high-pressure water), or caustic paint-removers. Removing paint that is firmly adhered to wood surfaces.
Using chemical strippers primarily to supplement other methods such as hand scraping, hand sanding, and thermal devices.	Failing to neutralize the wood thoroughly after using chemical paint removers so that new paint may not adhere. Removing paint from detachable wood features by soaking them in a caustic solution which can roughen the surface, split the wood, or result in staining from residual acid leaching out through the wood.
Using biodegradable or environmentally-safe cleaning or paint-removal products.	
Using paint-removal methods that employ a poultice to which paint adheres, when possible, to neatly and safely remove old lead paint.	Using a thermal device to remove paint from wood features without first checking for and removing any flammable debris behind them.
Using thermal devices (such as infrared heaters) carefully to remove paint when it is so deteriorated that total removal is necessary prior to repainting.	Using thermal devices without limiting the amount of time the wood feature is exposed to heat.

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using coatings that encapsulate lead paint, when possible, where the paint is not required to be removed to meet environmental regulations.	
Applying compatible paint coating systems to historically-painted wood following proper surface preparation.	Failing to follow manufacturers' product and application instructions when repainting wood features.
Repainting historically-painted wood features with colors that are appropriate to the building or district.	Using paint colors on historically-painted wood features that are not appropriate to the building or district.
Protecting adjacent materials when working on wood features.	Failing to protect adjacent materials when working on wood features.
Evaluating the overall condition of the wood to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to wood features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of wood features.
Repairing wood by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing the wood using recognized preservation methods.	Removing wood that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants, improper repair techniques, or unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials.
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it represents the greatest degree of intervention generally recommended within the treatment ***Preservation****, and should only be considered after protection, stabilization, and repair concerns have been addressed.*	
Limited Replacement in Kind	
Replacing in kind (i.e., with wood, but not necessarily the same species) extensively deteriorated or missing components of wood features when there are surviving prototypes, such as brackets, molding, or sections of siding, or when the replacement can be based on documentary or physical evidence. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish	Replacing an entire wood feature, such as a column or stairway, when limited replacement of deteriorated and missing components is appropriate. Using replacement material that does not match the historic wood feature.

METALS: WROUGHT AND CAST IRON, STEEL, PRESSED METAL, TERNEPLATE, COPPER, ALUMINUM, AND ZINC

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving metal features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building (such as columns, capitals, pilasters, spandrel panels, or stairways) and their paint, finishes, and colors. The type of metal should be identified prior to work because each metal has its own properties and may require a different treatment.	Altering metal features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Replacing historic metal features instead of repairing or replacing only the deteriorated metal. Changing the type of finish, coating, or historic color of metal features.
Stabilizing deteriorated or damaged metal as a preliminary measure, when necessary, prior to undertaking preservation work.	Failing to stabilize deteriorated or damaged metals until additional work is undertaken, thereby allowing further damage to occur to the historic building.
Protecting and maintaining metals from corrosion by providing proper drainage so that water does not stand on flat, horizontal surfaces or accumulate in curved decorative features.	Failing to identify and treat the causes of corrosion, such as moisture from leaking roofs or gutters. Placing incompatible metals together without providing an appropriate separation material. Such incompatibility can result in galvanic corrosion of the less noble metal (e.g., copper will corrode cast iron, steel, tin, and aluminum).
Cleaning metals, when necessary, to remove corrosion prior to repainting or applying other appropriate protective coatings.	Failing to reapply coating systems after cleaning metals that require protection from corrosion. Removing the patina from historic metals. The patina may be a protective layer on some metals (such as bronze or copper) as well as a distinctive finish.
Identifying the particular type of metal prior to any cleaning procedure and then testing to ensure that the gentlest cleaning method possible is selected; or, alternatively, determining that cleaning is inappropriate for the particular metal.	Using cleaning methods which alter or damage the historic color, texture, and finish of the metal, or cleaning when it is inappropriate for the particular metal.

METALS: WROUGHT AND CAST IRON, STEEL, PRESSED METAL, TERNEPLATE, COPPER, ALUMINUM, AND ZINC

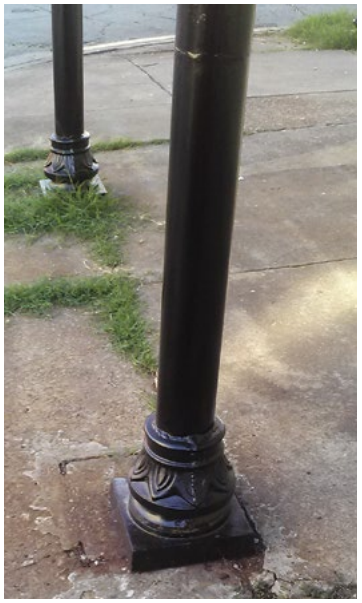
RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using non-corrosive chemical methods to clean soft metals (such as lead, tinplate, terneplate, copper, and zinc) whose finishes can be easily damaged by abrasive methods.	Cleaning soft metals (such as lead, tinplate, terneplate, copper, and zinc) with abrasive methods (including sandblasting, other media blasting, or high-pressure water) which will damage the surface of the metal.
Using the least abrasive cleaning method for hard metals (such as cast iron, wrought iron, and steel) to remove paint buildup and corrosion. If hand scraping and wire brushing have proven ineffective, low-pressure abrasive methods may be used as long as they do not damage the surface.	Using high-pressure abrasive techniques (including sandblasting, other media blasting, or high-pressure water) without first trying gentler cleaning methods prior to cleaning cast iron, wrought iron, or steel.
Applying appropriate paint or other coating systems to historically-coated metals after cleaning to protect them from corrosion.	Applying paint or other coatings to metals (such as copper, bronze or stainless steel) if they were not coated historically.
Repainting historically-painted metal features with colors that are appropriate to the building and district.	Using paint colors on historically-painted metal features that are not appropriate to the building or district.
Applying an appropriate protective coating (such as lacquer or wax) to a metal feature that was historically unpainted, such as a bronze door, which is subject to heavy use.	

[6] A standing-seam sheet metal roof, like the one on the turret of this late 19th century row house, must be kept painted to ensure its preservation.

METALS: WROUGHT AND CAST IRON, STEEL, PRESSED METAL, TERNEPLATE, COPPER, ALUMINUM, AND ZINC

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Protecting adjacent materials when working on metal features.	Failing to protect adjacent materials when working on metal features.
Evaluating the overall condition of metals to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to metal features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of metal features.
Repairing, stabilizing, and reinforcing metal by using recognized preservation methods	Removing metals that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using improper repair techniques, or untrained personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials.
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it represents the greatest degree of intervention generally recommended within the treatment ***Preservation,*** *and should only be considered after protection, stabilization, and repair concerns have been addressed.*	
Limited Replacement in Kind	
Replacing in kind extensively deteriorated or missing components of metal features when there are surviving prototypes, such as porch balusters, column capitals or bases, or porch cresting, or when the replacement can be based on documentary or physical evidence. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Replacing an entire metal feature, such as a column or balustrade, when limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components is appropriate. Using replacement material that does not match the historic metal feature.

[7] (a) After the damaged portions of the base were repaired, (b) the cast-iron columns were cleaned and repainted to protect the metal from rusting.



[8] Regular maintenance includes removing leaves that can clog gutters and cause water damage to the exterior and interior walls of a house.

ROOFS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving roofs and their functional and decorative features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. The form of the roof (gable, hipped, gambrel, flat, or mansard) is significant, as are its decorative and functional features (such as cupolas, cresting, parapets, monitors, chimneys, weather vanes, dormers, ridge tiles, and snow guards), roofing material (such as slate, wood, clay tile, metal, roll roofing, or asphalt shingles), and size, color, and patterning.	Altering the roof and roofing materials which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Replacing historic roofing material instead of repairing or replacing only the deteriorated material. Changing the type or color of roofing materials.
Stabilizing deteriorated or damaged roofs as a preliminary measure, when necessary, prior to undertaking preservation work.	Failing to stabilize a deteriorated or damaged roof until additional work is undertaken, thereby allowing further damage to occur to the historic building
Protecting and maintaining a roof by cleaning gutters and downspouts and replacing deteriorated flashing. Roof sheathing should also be checked for indications of moisture due to leaks or condensation.	Failing to clean and maintain gutters and downspouts properly so that water and debris collect and cause damage to roof fasteners, sheathing, and the underlying structure
Providing adequate anchorage for roofing material to guard against wind damage and moisture penetration.	Allowing flashing, caps, and exposed roof fasteners to corrode, which accelerates deterioration of the roof.
Protecting a leaking roof with a temporary waterproof membrane with a synthetic underlayment, roll roofing, plywood, or a tarpaulin until it can be repaired.	Leaving a leaking roof unprotected so that accelerated deterioration of historic building materials (such as masonry, wood, plaster, paint, and structural members) occurs.
Repainting a roofing material that requires a protective coating and was painted historically (such as a terneplate metal roof or gutters) as part of regularly-scheduled maintenance.	Failing to repaint a roofing material that requires a protective coating and was painted historically as part of regularly-scheduled maintenance.
Protecting a roof covering when working on other roof features.	Failing to protect roof coverings when working on other roof features.
Evaluating the overall condition of the roof to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to roof features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of roof features.
Repairing a roof by ensuring that the existing historic roof or compatible non-historic roof covering is sound and waterproof.	Removing historic materials that could be repaired or using improper repair techniques. Failing to reuse intact slate or tile when only the roofing substrate or fasteners need replacement.

ROOFS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using corrosion-resistant roof fasteners (e.g., nails and clips) to repair a roof to help extend its longevity.	
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it represents the greatest degree of intervention generally recommended within the treatment ***Preservation****, and should only be considered after protection, stabilization, and repair concerns have been addressed.*	
Limited Replacement in Kind	
Replacing in kind extensively deteriorated or missing components of roof features when there are surviving prototypes, such as ridge tiles, roof cresting, or dormer trim, slates, or tiles, or when the replacement can be based on documentary or physical evidence. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Replacing an entire roof feature, such as a chimney or dormer, when limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components is appropriate. Using replacement material that does not match the historic roof feature.

[9] Distinctively-shaped roofs are important in defining the historic character of these early 20th-century structures: (a) an asphalt shingle roof on a house; (b) and a concrete roof on Fonthill, Doylestown, PA (1908-1912), designed and built by Henry Chapman Mercer.

WINDOWS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving windows and their functional and decorative features that are important to the overall historic character of the building. The window material and how the window operates (e.g., double hung, casement, awning, or hopper) are significant, as are its components (including sash, muntins, ogee lugs, glazing, pane configuration, sills, mullions, casings, or brick molds) and related features, such as shutters.	Altering windows or window features which are important in defining the historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Changing the appearance of windows that contribute to the historic character of the building by replacing materials, finishes, or colors which noticeably change the sash, depth of reveal, and muntin configuration; the reflectivity and color of the glazing; or the appearance of the frame. Obscuring historic wood window trim with metal or other material.
Stabilizing deteriorated or damaged windows as a preliminary measure, when necessary, prior to undertaking preservation work.	Failing to stabilize deteriorated or damaged windows as a preliminary measure, when necessary, prior to undertaking preservation work.
Protecting and maintaining the wood or metal which comprises the window jamb, sash, and trim through appropriate surface treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of the same protective coating systems.	Failing to protect and maintain materials on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of the window results.
Protecting windows against vandalism before work begins by covering them and by installing alarm systems that are keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving windows unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby also allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected windows.
Installing impact-resistant glazing, when necessary for security, so that it is compatible with the historic windows and does not damage them or negatively impact their character.	Installing impact-resistant glazing, when necessary for security, that is not compatible with the historic windows and damages them or negatively impacts their character.
Making windows weathertight by recaulking gaps in fixed joints and replacing or installing weatherstripping.	Replacing windows rather than maintaining the sash, frame, or glazing.
Protecting windows from chemical cleaners, paint, or abrasion during work on the exterior of the building.	Failing to protect historic windows from chemical cleaners, paint, or abrasion when work is being done on the exterior of the building.
Protecting and retaining historic glass when replacing putty or repairing other components of the window.	Failing to protect the historic glass when making repairs.

[10] Historic exterior storm windows preserve and help to insulate wood windows.

[11] Old and brittle glazing putty should be removed carefully before reputtying to keep window glazing weathertight.

WINDOWS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Sustaining the historic operability of windows by lubricating friction points and replacing broken components of the operating system (such as hinges, latches, sash chains or cords) or replacing deteriorated gaskets or insulating units.	Failing to maintain windows and window components so that windows are inoperable, or sealing operable sash permanently. Failing to repair and reuse window hardware such as sash lifts, latches, and locks
Adding storm windows with a matching or a one-over-one pane configuration that will not obscure the characteristics of the historic windows. Storm windows improve energy efficiency and are especially beneficial when installed over wood windows because they also protect them from accelerated deterioration.	
Protecting adjacent materials when working on windows.	Failing to protect adjacent materials when working on windows.
Evaluating the overall condition of windows to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to windows and window features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of windows.
Repairing window frames and sash by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing them using recognized preservation methods.	Removing window frames or sash that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants, improper repair techniques, or untrained personnel, potentially causing furthur damage to historic buildings.
Using corrosion-resistant roof fasteners (e.g., nails and clips) to repair a roof to help extend its longevity.	
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it represents the greatest degree of intervention generally recommended within the treatment ***Preservation****, and should only be considered after protection, stabilization, and repair concerns have been addressed.*	
Limited Replacement in Kind	
Replacing in kind extensively deteriorated or missing components of windows when there are surviving prototypes, such as frames or sash, or when the replacement can be based on documentary or physical evidence. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Replacing an entire window when limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components is appropriate. Using replacement material that does not match the historic window.

ENTRANCES AND PORCHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving entrances and porches and their functional and decorative features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. The materials themselves (including wood, masonry, and metal) are significant, as are the features, such as doors, transoms, pilasters, columns, balustrades, stairs, roofs, and projecting canopies.	Altering entrances and porches which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Replacing historic entrance and porch features instead of repairing or replacing only the deteriorated material.
Stabilizing deteriorated or damaged entrances and porches as a preliminary measure, when necessary, prior to undertaking preservation work.	Failing to stabilize a deteriorated or damaged entrance or porch until additional work is undertaken, thereby allowing further damage to occur to the historic building.

[12] Repair and limited replacement in kind to match deteriorated wood porch features is always a recommended preservation treatment.

[13] It is important that exposed swallow tail porch rafters be kept painted to protect them from water damage.

ENTRANCES AND PORCHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Protecting and maintaining the masonry, wood, and metals which comprise entrances and porches through appropriate surface treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coating systems.	Failing to protect and maintain historic materials on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of entrances and porches results.
Protecting entrances and porches against arson and vandalism before work begins by covering them and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving entrances and porches unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby also allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected entrances.
Protecting entrance and porch features when working on other features of the building.	Failing to protect historic entrances and porches when working on other features of the building.
Evaluating the overall condition of entrances and porches to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to entrance and porch features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of entrance and porch features.
Repairing entrances and porches by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing them using recognized preservation methods.	Removing entrances and porches or their features that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants, improper repair techniques, or untrained personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials.
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it represents the greatest degree of intervention generally recommended within the treatment ***Preservation****, and should only be considered after protection, stabilization, and repair concerns have been addressed.*	
Limited Replacement in Kind	
Replacing in kind extensively deteriorated or missing components of entrance and porch features when there are surviving prototypes, such as railings, balustrades, cornices, columns, sidelights, stairs, and roofs, or when the replacement can be based on documentary or physical evidence. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Replacing an entire entrance or porch feature when limited replacement of deteriorated and missing components is appropriate. Using replacement material that does not match the historic entrance or porch feature.

STOREFRONTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving storefronts and their functional and decorative features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. The storefront materials (including wood, masonry, metals, ceramic tile, clear glass, and pigmented structural glass) and the configuration of the storefront are significant, as are features, such as display windows, base panels, bulkheads, signs, doors, transoms, kick plates, corner posts, piers, and entablatures.	Altering storefronts and their features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Replacing historic storefront features instead of repairing or replacing only the deteriorated material.
Stabilizing deteriorated or damaged storefronts as a preliminary measure, when necessary, prior to undertaking preservation work.	Failing to stabilize a deteriorated or damaged storefront until additional work is undertaken, thereby allowing further damage to occur to the historic building.
Protecting and maintaining masonry, wood, glass, ceramic tile, and metals which comprise storefronts through appropriate treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coating systems.	Failing to protect and maintain historic materials on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of storefront features results.
Protecting storefronts against arson and vandalism before work begins by covering windows and doors and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving the storefront unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby also allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through an unprotected storefront.
Protecting the storefront when working on other features of the building.	Failing to protect the storefront when working on other features of the building.

[14] The signage is an original and integral part of this historic Carrara glass storefront.

STOREFRONTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Evaluating the overall condition of the storefront to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to storefront features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of storefront features.
Repairing storefronts by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing them using recognized preservation methods.	Removing historic material that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants, improper repair techniques, or untrained personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials.
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it represents the greatest degree of intervention generally recommended within the treatment ***Preservation****, and should only be considered after protection, stabilization, and repair concerns have been addressed.*	
Limited Replacement in Kind	
Replacing in kind extensively deteriorated or missing components of storefronts when there are surviving prototypes, such as doors, transoms, kick plates, base panels, bulkheads, piers, or signs, or when the replacement can be based on documentary or physical evidence. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Replacing an entire feature or storefront when limited replacement of deteriorated and missing components is appropriate. Using replacement material that does not match the historic storefront feature.

[15] Regular maintenance has helped to preserve this historic storefront, which retains all of its character-defining features, including the granite bulkhead, multi-paned transom glazing, and recessed entrance.

CURTAIN WALLS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving curtain wall systems and their components that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. The design of the curtain wall is significant, as are its component materials (metal stick framing and panel materials, such as clear or spandrel glass, stone, terra cotta, metal, and fiber-reinforced plastic), appearance (e.g., glazing color or tint, transparency, and reflectivity), and whether the glazing is fixed, operable, or louvered glass panels. How a curtain wall is engineered and fabricated, and the fact that it expands and contracts at a different rate from the building's structural system, are important to understand when undertaking the preservation of a curtain wall system.	Altering curtain wall components which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Replacing historic curtain wall features instead of repairing or replacing only the deteriorated components.
Stabilizing deteriorated or damaged curtain walls as a preliminary measure, when necessary, prior to undertaking preservation work.	Failing to stabilize deteriorated or damaged curtain walls until additional work is undertaken, thereby allowing further damage to occur to the historic building.
Protecting and maintaining curtain walls and their components through appropriate surface treatments, such as cleaning and reapplication of protective coating systems; and by making them watertight and ensuring that sealants and gaskets are in good condition.	Failing to protect and maintain curtain wall components on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of curtain walls results. Failing to identify and treat the various causes of curtain wall failure, such as open gaps between components where sealants have deteriorated or are missing.
Protecting ground-level curtain walls from vandalism before work begins by covering them, while ensuring adequate ventilation, and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving ground-level curtain walls unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby also allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected entrances.
Installing impact-resistant glazing in a curtain wall system, when necessary for security or to meet code requirements, so that it is compatible with the historic curtain walls and does not damage them or negatively impact their character.	Installing impact-resistant glazing in a curtain wall system, when necessary for security, that is not compatible with the historic curtain walls and damages them or negatively impacts their character.

[16] Plywood provides temporary protection for an opening where a damaged spandrel panel was removed until a matching replacement panel can be installed.

CURTAIN WALLS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Cleaning curtain wall systems only when necessary to halt deterioration or to remove heavy soiling.	Cleaning curtain wall systems when they are not heavily soiled, thereby needlessly introducing chemicals or moisture into historic materials.
Carrying out cleaning tests, when it has been determined that cleaning is appropriate, using only cleaning materials that will not damage components of the system, including factory-applied finishes. Test areas should be examined to ensure that no damage has resulted.	Cleaning curtain wall systems without testing first or using cleaning materials that may damage components of the system.
Evaluating the overall condition of curtain walls to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to curtain wall components, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of curtain wall components.
Repairing curtain walls by ensuring that they are watertight by augmenting existing components or replacing deteriorated or missing sealants or gaskets, where necessary, to seal any gaps between system components.	Removing curtain wall components that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using improper repair techniques, or untrained personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials.
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it represents the greatest degree of intervention generally recommended within the treatment ***Preservation****, and should only be considered after protection, stabilization, and repair concerns have been addressed.*	
Limited Replacement in Kind	
Replacing in kind extensively deteriorated or missing components of a curtain wall system when there are surviving prototypes or when the replacement can be based on documentary or physical evidence. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Replacing an entire curtain wall feature when limited replacement of deteriorated and missing components is appropriate. Using replacement material that does not match the historic curtain wall feature.

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving structural systems and visible features of systems that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. This includes the materials that comprise the structural system (i.e., wood, metal, and masonry), the type of system, and its features, such as posts and beams, trusses, summer beams, vigas, cast-iron or masonry columns, above-grade stone foundation walls, or load-bearing masonry walls.	Altering visible features of historic structural systems which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Overloading the existing structural system, or installing equipment or mechanical systems which could damage the structure. Replacing a load-bearing masonry wall that could be augmented and retained. Leaving known structural problems untreated, such as deflected beams, cracked and bowed walls, or racked structural members.
Stabilizing deteriorated or damaged structural systems as a preliminary measure, when necessary, prior to undertaking preservation work.	Failing to stabilize a deteriorated or damaged structural system until additional work is undertaken, thereby allowing further damage to occur to the historic building. Failing to protect and maintain the structural system on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of the structural system results.
Protecting and maintaining the structural system by keeping gutters and downspouts clear and roofing in good repair; and by ensuring that wood structural members are free from insect infestation.	Using treatments or products that may retain moisture, which accelerates deterioration of structural members.

[17] Distinctive examples of traditional construction techniques should be preserved, such as this wooden peg, which is part of the structural system of this late-19th-century warehouse.

[18] A massive, exposed, concrete structural system defines the historic character of the interior of St. John's Abbey, Collegeville, MN, designed by Marcel Breuer and constructed in 1961.

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Evaluating the overall condition of the structural system to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to structural features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of structural systems.
Repairing the structural system by augmenting individual components, using recognized preservation methods. For example, weakened structural members (such as floor framing) can be paired or sistered with a new member, braced, or otherwise supplemented and reinforced.	Upgrading the building structurally in a manner that diminishes the historic character of the exterior (such as installing strapping channels or removing a decorative cornice) or that damages interior features or spaces. Replacing a structural member or other feature of the structural system when it could be augmented and retained.
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it represents the greatest degree of intervention generally recommended within the treatment ***Preservation****, and should only be considered after protection, stabilization, and repair concerns have been addressed.*	
Limited Replacement in Kind	
Replacing in kind those visible portions or features of the structural system that are either extensively deteriorated or missing when there are surviving prototypes, such as cast-iron columns and sections of load-bearing walls, or when the replacement can be based on documentary or physical evidence. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Replacing an entire curtain wall feature when limited replacement of deteriorated and missing components is appropriate. Using replacement material that does not match the historic curtain wall feature.
Considering the use of substitute material to replace structural features that are not visible. Substitute material must be structurally sufficient and physically compatible with the rest of the system.	Using substitute material that does not equal the load-bearing capabilities of the historic material or is physically incompatible with the structural system.

MECHANICAL SYSTEMS:
HEATING, AIR CONDITIONING, ELECTRICAL, AND PLUMBING

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving visible features of early mechanical systems that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building, such as radiators, vents, fans, grilles, and plumbing and lighting fixtures.	Removing or altering visible features of mechanical systems that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished.
Stabilizing functioning mechanical systems as a preliminary measure, when necessary, prior to undertaking preservation work.	Failing to stabilize a functioning mechanical system and its visible features until additional work is undertaken.
Protecting and maintaining functioning mechanical, plumbing, and electrical systems and their features through cyclical maintenance.	Failing to protect and maintain functioning mechanical, plumbing, and electrical systems on a cyclical basis so that their deterioration results.
Improving the energy efficiency of existing mechanical systems to help reduce the need for a new system by installing storm windows, insulating attics and crawl spaces, or adding awnings, if appropriate.	
Evaluating the overall condition of functioning mechanical systems to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to mechanical system components, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of structural systems.
Repairing mechanical systems by augmenting or upgrading system components (such as installing new pipes and ducts), rewiring, or adding new compressors or boilers.	Replacing a mechanical system when its components could be upgraded and retained.

MECHANICAL SYSTEMS:
HEATING, AIR CONDITIONING, ELECTRICAL, AND PLUMBING

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it represents the greatest degree of intervention generally recommended within the treatment ***Preservation****, and should only be considered after protection, stabilization, and repair concerns have been addressed.*	
Limited Replacement in Kind	
Replacing in kind those extensively deteriorated or missing visible features of mechanical systems when there are surviving prototypes, such as ceiling fans, radiators, grilles, or lighting fixtures.	Installing a visible replacement feature that does not convey the same appearance.
The following work should be considered in a ***Preservation*** *project when the installation of new mechanical equipment or an entire system is required to make the building functional.*	
Installing a new mechanical system, if required, so that it results in the least alteration possible to the historic building and its character-defining features.	Installing a new mechanical system so that character-defining structural or interior features are radically changed, damaged, or destroyed.
Providing adequate structural support for new mechanical equipment.	Failing to consider the weight and design of new mechanical equipment so that, as a result, historic structural members or finished surfaces are weakened or cracked.
Installing new mechanical and electrical systems and ducts, pipes, and cables in closets, service areas, and wall cavities to preserve the historic character of the interior space.	Installing ducts, pipes, and cables where they will obscure character-defining features or negatively impact the historic character of the interior. Concealing mechanical equipment in walls or ceilings in a manner that results in extensive loss or damage or otherwise obscures historic building materials and character-defining features.

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving a floor plan or interior spaces, features, and finishes that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. Significant spatial characteristics include the size, configuration, proportion, and relationship of rooms and corridors; the relationship of features to spaces; and the spaces themselves, such as lobbies, lodge halls, entrance halls, parlors, theaters, auditoriums, gymnasiums, and industrial and commercial interiors. Color, texture, and pattern are important characteristics of features and finishes, which can include such elements as columns, plaster walls and ceilings, flooring, trim, fireplaces and mantels, paneling, light fixtures, hardware, decorative radiators, ornamental grilles and registers, windows, doors, and transoms; plaster, paint, wallpaper and wall coverings, and special finishes, such as marbleizing and graining; and utilitarian (painted or unpainted) features, including wood, metal, or concrete exposed columns, beams, and trusses and exposed load-bearing brick, concrete, and wood walls.	Altering a floor plan, interior spaces (including individual rooms), features, or finishes which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Replacing historic interior features and finishes instead of repairing or replacing only the deteriorated portion. Installing new material that obscures or damages character-defining interior features and finishes. Removing paint, plaster, or other finishes from historically-finished interior surfaces and leaving the features exposed (e.g., removing plaster to expose brick walls or a brick chimney breast, stripping paint from wood to stain or varnish it, or removing a plaster ceiling to expose unfinished beams). Applying paint, plaster, or other coatings to surfaces that have been unfinished historically, thereby changing their character. Changing the type of finish or its color, such as painting a historically-varnished wood feature, or removing paint from a historically-painted feature.
Stabilizing deteriorated or damaged interior features and finishes as a preliminary measure, when necessary, prior to undertaking preservation work.	Failing to stabilize a deteriorated or damaged interior feature or finish until additional work can be undertaken, thereby allowing further damage to occur to the interior.
Protecting and maintaining historic materials (including plaster, masonry, wood, and metals) which comprise interior features through appropriate surface treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coating systems.	Failing to protect and maintain interior materials and finishes on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of interior features results.

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Protecting interior features and finishes against arson and vandalism before project work begins by erecting temporary fencing or by covering broken windows and open doorways, while ensuring adequate ventilation, and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving the building unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected openings.
Protecting interior features (such as a staircase, mantel, flooring, or decorative finishes) from damage during project work by covering them with plywood, heavy canvas, or plastic sheeting.	Failing to protect interior features and finishes when working on the interior.

[19] The sweeping staircase with its metal railing, chandelier, and terrazzo floor in the lobby of the 1954 Simms Building, Albuquerque, NM, are character-defining features. *Photo: Harvey M. Kaplan.*

[20] It is important to protect decorative interior features, such as this highly-glazed tile wainscoting in a historic train station, when painting the walls above it.

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Removing damaged or deteriorated paint and finishes only to the next sound layer using the gentlest method possible prior to repainting or refinishing using compatible paint or other coating systems.	Removing paint that is firmly adhered to interior materials and features.
Using abrasive cleaning methods only on the interior of industrial or warehouse buildings with utilitarian, unplastered masonry walls and where wood features are not finished, molded, beaded, or worked by hand. Low-pressure abrasive cleaning (e.g., sand-blasting or other media blasting) should only be considered if test patches show no surface damage and after gentler methods have proven ineffective.	Using abrasive methods anywhere but utilitarian and industrial interior spaces or when there are other cleaning methods that are less likely to damage the surface of the material.
Evaluating the overall condition of the interior materials, features, and finishes to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to features and finishes, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of interior materials, features, and finishes.
Repairing interior features and finishes by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing the materials using recognized preservation methods.	Removing interior features or finishes that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants, improper repair techniques, or untrained personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials.
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it represents the greatest degree of intervention generally recommended within the treatment ***Preservation****, and should only be considered after protection, stabilization, and repair concerns have been addressed.*	
Limited Replacement in Kind	
Replacing in kind extensively deteriorated or missing components of interior features when there are surviving prototypes (such as stairs, balustrades, wood paneling, columns, decorative wall finishes, and ornamental plaster or pressed-metal ceilings); or when the replacement can be based on documentary or physical evidence. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Replacing an entire interior feature when limited replacement of deteriorated and missing components is appropriate. Using replacement material that does not match the historic interior feature or finish.

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving features of the building site that are important in defining its overall historic character. Site features may include walls, fences, or steps; circulation systems, such as walks, paths, or roads; vegetation, such as trees, shrubs, grass, orchards, hedges, windbreaks, or gardens; landforms, such as hills, terracing, or berms; furnishings and fixtures, such as light posts or benches; decorative elements, such as sculpture, statuary, or monuments; water features, including fountains, streams, pools, lakes, or irrigation ditches; and subsurface archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds which are also important to the site.	Altering buildings and their features or site features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the property so that, as a result, the character is diminished.
Retaining the historic relationship between buildings and the landscape.	Removing or relocating buildings or landscape features, thereby destroying the historic relationship between buildings and the landscape.

[21] (a) The formal garden on the property of the 1826 Beauregard-Keyes House in New Orleans (b) is integral to the character of the site.

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Stabilizing deteriorated or damaged building and site features as a preliminary measure, when necessary, prior to undertaking preservation work.	Failing to stabilize a deteriorated or damaged building or site feature until additional work can be undertaken, thereby allowing further damage to occur to the building site.
Protecting and maintaining buildings and site features by providing proper drainage to ensure that water does not erode foundation walls, drain toward the building, or damage or erode the landscape.	Failing to ensure that site drainage is adequate so that buildings and site features are damaged or destroyed; or, alternatively, changing the site grading so that water does not drain properly.
Minimizing disturbance of the terrain around buildings or elsewhere on the site, thereby reducing the possibility of destroying or damaging important landscape features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.	Using heavy machinery or equipment in areas where it may disturb or damage important landscape features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.
Protecting (e.g., preserving in place) important site features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.	Leaving known site features or archeological material unprotected so that it is damaged during preservation work.
Planning and carrying out any necessary investigation before preservation begins, using professional archeologists and methods when preservation in place is not feasible.	Allowing unqualified personnel to perform data recovery on archeological resources, which can result in damage or loss of important archeological material.
Preserving important landscape features through regularly-scheduled maintenance of historic plant material.	Allowing important landscape features or archeological resources to be lost, damaged, or to deteriorate due to inadequate protection or lack of maintenance.
Protecting the building site and landscape features against arson and vandalism before preservation work begins by erecting temporary fencing and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving the property unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins so that the building site and landscape features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds can be damaged or destroyed.
Installing protective fencing, bollards, and stanchions on a building site, when necessary for security, that are as unobtrusive as possible.	Installing protective fencing, bollards, and stanchions on a building site, when necessary for security, without taking into consideration their location and visibility so that they negatively impact the historic character of the site.
Providing continued protection and maintenance of buildings and landscape features on the site through appropriate grounds or landscape management.	Removing or destroying features from the site, such as fencing, paths or walkways, masonry balustrades, or plant material.

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Protecting building and landscape features when working on the site.	Failing to protect building and landscape features during work on the site.
Evaluating the overall condition of the site to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to materials and features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of the site.
Repairing building and site features which have damaged, deteriorated, or missing components to reestablish the whole feature and to ensure retention of the integrity of historic materials.	Failing to repair damaged or deteriorated site features.
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it represents the greatest degree of intervention generally recommended within the treatment ***Preservation****, and should only be considered after protection, stabilization, and repair concerns have been addressed.*	
Limited Replacement in Kind	
Replacing in kind extensively deteriorated or missing features of the site when there are surviving prototypes, such as part of a fountain, portions of a walkway, or a hedge, or when the replacement can be based on documentary or physical evidence. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, and color.	Replacing an entire feature of the building or site when limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components is appropriate. Using replacement material that does not match the historic site feature.

[22 a-b] The 1907 Commander General's Quarters facing Continental Park is one of many important structures that contribute to the historic significance and character of Fort Monroe, a National Monument, in Hampton, VA.

SETTING (DISTRICT / NEIGHBORHOOD)

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving building and landscape features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the setting. Such features can include circulation systems, such as roads and streets; furnishings and fixtures, such as light posts or benches; vegetation, gardens, and yards; adjacent open space, such as fields, parks, commons, or woodlands; and important views or visual relationships.	Altering those building and landscape features of the setting which are important in defining its historic character so that, as a result, the character is diminished.
Retaining the historic relationship between buildings and landscape features in the setting. For example, preserving the relationship between a town common or urban plaza and the adjacent houses, municipal buildings, roads, and landscape and streetscape features.	Altering the relationship between the buildings and landscape features in the setting by widening existing streets, changing landscape materials, or locating new streets or parking areas where they may negatively impact the historic character of the setting. Removing or relocating historic buildings or landscape features, thereby destroying the historic relationship between buildings and the landscape in the setting.

[23] The city square is important in defining the character of the historic setting in this small town.

[24] Cast-iron porches and wrought-iron fences from the late 19th century typify this block in an urban historic district.

[25] Street names in tile set into the sidewalk are distinctive features in this historic district.

SETTING (DISTRICT / NEIGHBORHOOD)

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Stabilizing deteriorated or damaged building or landscape features in the setting as a preliminary measure, when necessary, prior to undertaking preservation work.	Failing to stabilize a deteriorated or damaged building or landscape feature in the setting until additional work can be undertaken, thereby allowing further damage to occur to the setting.
Protecting and maintaining historic features in the setting through regularly-scheduled maintenance and landscape management.	Failing to protect and maintain materials in the setting on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of building and landscape features results. Stripping or removing historic features from buildings or the setting, such as a porch, fencing, walkways, or plant material.
Installing protective fencing, bollards, and stanchions in the setting, when necessary for security, that are as unobtrusive as possible.	Installing protective fencing, bollards, and stanchions in the setting, when necessary for security, without taking into consideration their location and visibility so that they negatively impact the historic character of the setting.
Protecting building and landscape features when undertaking work in the setting.	Failing to protect building and landscape features during work in the setting.
Evaluating the overall condition of materials and features to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to materials and features in the setting, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of materials and features of the setting.
Repairing features in the setting by reinforcing the historic materials, using recognized preservation methods.	Removing material that could be repaired or using improper repair techniques.
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it represents the greatest degree of intervention generally recommended within the treatment ***Preservation****, and should only be considered after protection, stabilization, and repair concerns have been addressed.*	
Limited Replacement in Kind	
Replacing in kind extensively deteriorated or missing components of building and landscape features in the setting when there are surviving prototypes, such as balustrades or paving materials, or when the replacement can be based on documentary or physical evidence. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, and color.	Replacing an entire feature of the building or landscape when limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components is appropriate. Using replacement material that does not match the historic building or landscape feature.

CODE-REQUIRED WORK

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Sensitive solutions to meeting code requirements are an important part of protecting the historic character of the building and site. Thus, work that must be done to meet accessibility and life-safety requirements in the treatment ***Preservation*** *must also be assessed for its potential impact on the historic building and site.*	
ACCESSIBILITY	
Identifying the historic building's character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting which may be affected by accessibility code-required work.	Undertaking accessibility code-required alterations before identifying those exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting which are character defining and, therefore, must be preserved.
Complying with barrier-free access requirements in such a manner that the historic building's character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting are preserved or impacted as little as possible.	Altering, damaging, or destroying character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, or features of the site and setting while making modifications to a building, its site, or setting to comply with accessibility requirements.
Working with specialists in accessibility and historic preservation to determine the most sensitive solutions to comply with access requirements in a historic building, its site, and setting.	Making changes to historic buildings, their sites, and setting without first consulting with specialists in accessibility and historic preservation to determine the most appropriate solutions to comply with accessibility requirements.
Providing barrier-free access that promotes independence for the user while preserving significant historic features.	Making access modifications that do not provide independent, safe access or preserve historic features.
Finding solutions to meet accessibility requirements that minimize the impact of any necessary alteration for accessibility on the historic building, its site, or setting, such as compatible ramps, paths, and lifts.	Making modifications for accessibility without considering the impact on the historic building, its site, and setting.

CODE-REQUIRED WORK

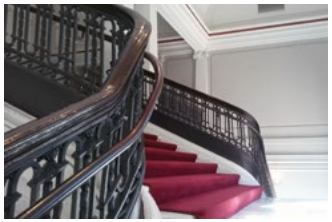
RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using relevant sections of existing codes regarding accessibility for historic buildings that provide alternative means of compliance when code-required work would otherwise negatively impact the historic character of the property.	
Minimizing the visual impact of accessibility ramps by installing them on secondary elevations when it does not compromise accessibility or by screening them with plantings.	
Adding a gradual slope or grade to the sidewalk, if appropriate, to access the entrance rather than installing a ramp that would be more intrusive to the historic character of the building and the district.	
Installing a lift as inconspicuously as possible when it is necessary to locate it on a primary elevation of the historic building.	Installing a lift at a primary entrance without considering other options or locations.

[26] A temporary ramp—unobtrusive and easily removed—facilitates access to the entrance of this museum and does not affect its historic character.

[27] The access ramp at the left of the entrance is concealed by a hedge which minimizes its visibility and impact on the character of the historic apartment building.

CODE-REQUIRED WORK

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
LIFE SAFETY	
Identifying the historic building's character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting which may be affected by life-safety code-required work.	Undertaking life-safety code-required alterations before identifying those exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting which are character defining and, therefore, must be preserved.
Complying with life-safety codes (including requirements for impact-resistant glazing, security, and seismic retrofit) in such a manner that the historic building's character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting are preserved or impacted as little as possible.	Altering, damaging, or destroying character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, or features of the site and setting while making modifications to a building, its site, or setting to comply with life-safety code requirements.
Removing building materials only after testing has been conducted to identify any hazardous materials, and using only the least damaging abatement methods.	Removing building materials without testing first to identify any hazardous materials, or using potentially damaging methods of abatement.
Providing workers with appropriate personal equipment for protection from hazards on the worksite.	Removing hazardous or toxic materials without regard for workers' health and safety or environmentally-sensitive disposal of the materials.
Working with code officials and historic preservation specialists to investigate systems, methods, or devices to make the building compliant with life-safety codes to ensure that necessary alterations will be compatible with the historic character of the building.	Making life-safety code-required changes to the building without consulting code officials and historic preservation specialists, with the result that alterations negatively impact the historic character of the building.
Using relevant sections of existing codes regarding life safety for historic buildings that provide alternative means of code compliance when code-required work would otherwise negatively impact the historic character of the building.	
Upgrading historic stairways and elevators to meet life-safety codes so that they are not damaged or otherwise negatively impacted.	Damaging or making inappropriate alterations to historic stairways and elevators or to adjacent spaces, features, or finishes in the process of doing work to meet code requirements.
Installing sensitively-designed fire-suppression systems, such as sprinklers, so that historic features and finishes are preserved.	Covering character-defining wood features with fire-retardant sheathing, which results in altering their appearance.
Applying fire-retardant coatings when appropriate, such as intumescent paint, to protect steel structural systems.	Using fire-retardant coatings if they will damage or obscure character-defining features.



[28] A simple railing added on the inner side of an elaborate wood and cast-iron stair railing meets life-safety code requirements without greatly impacting its historic character.

[29] A safety cone outside of a house where lead paint is being removed warns of the hazardous conditions on the site.

RESILIENCE TO NATURAL HAZARDS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Resilience to natural hazards should be addressed as part of a ***Preservation*** *project. A historic building may have existing characteristics or features that help to address or minimize the impacts of natural hazards. These should always be used to best advantage when considering new adaptive treatments so as to have the least impact on the historic character of the building, its site, and setting.*	
Identifying the vulnerabilities of the historic property to the impacts of natural hazards (such as wildfires, hurricanes, or tornadoes) using the most current climate information and data available.	Failing to identify and periodically reevaluate the potential vulnerability of the building, its site, and setting to the impacts of natural hazards.
Assessing the potential impacts of known vulnerabilities on character-defining features of the building, its site, and setting, and reevaluating and reassessing potential impacts on a regular basis.	
Documenting the property and its character-defining features as a record and guide for future repair work, should it be necessary, and storing the documentation in a weatherproof location.	Failing to document the historic property and its character-defining features with the result that such information is not available in the future to guide repair or reconstruction work, should it be necessary.
Ensuring that historic resource inventories and maps are accurate, up to date, and accessible in an emergency.	
Maintaining the building, its site, and setting in good repair, and regularly monitoring character-defining features.	Failing to regularly monitor and maintain the property and building systems in good repair.
Using and maintaining existing characteristics and features of the historic building, its site, setting, and larger environment (such as shutters for storm protection or a site wall that keeps out flood waters) that may help to avoid or minimize the impacts of natural hazards.	
Undertaking work to prevent or minimize the loss, damage, or destruction of the historic property while retaining and preserving significant features and the overall historic character of the building, its site, and setting.	Allowing loss, damage, or destruction to occur to the historic building, its site, or setting by failing to evaluate potential future impacts of natural hazards or to plan and implement adaptive measures, if necessary to address possible threats.
Ensuring that, when planning work to adapt for natural hazards, all feasible alternatives are considered, and that options requiring the least alteration are considered first.	

RESILIENCE TO NATURAL HAZARDS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Implementing local and regional traditions (such as elevating residential buildings at risk of flooding or reducing flammable vegetation around structures in fire-prone areas) for adapting buildings and sites to specific natural hazards, when appropriate. Such traditional methods may be appropriate if they are compatible with the historic character of the building, its site, and setting.	Implementing a treatment traditionally used in another region or one typically used for a different property type or architectural style which is not compatible with the historic character of the property.
Using special exemptions and variances when adaptive treatments to protect buildings from known hazards would otherwise negatively impact the historic character of the building, its site, or setting.	
Considering adaptive options, whenever possible, that would protect multiple historic resources, if the treatment can be implemented without negatively impacting the historic character of the setting or district, or archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.	

[30] Historic window shutters still serve their original function as protection in hurricane-prone areas.

Sustainability

Sustainability should be addressed as part of a **Preservation** project. Good preservation practice is often synonymous with sustainability. Existing energy-efficient features should be retained and repaired. New sustainability treatments generally should be limited to updating existing features and systems to have the least impact on the historic character of the building.

The topic of sustainability is addressed in detail in ***The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation & Illustrated Guidelines on Sustainability for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings***. Although specifically developed for the treatment Rehabilitation, the Sustainability Guidelines can be used to help guide the other treatments.

[31] An interior screen door at the entrance to individual apartments is a historic feature traditionally used to help circulate air throughout the building.

STANDARDS FOR REHABILITATION & GUIDELINES FOR REHABILITATING HISTORIC BUILDINGS

Rehabilitation

Rehabilitation is defined as the act or process of making possible a compatible use for a property through repair, alterations, and additions while preserving those portions or features which convey its historical, cultural, or architectural values.

Standards for Rehabilitation

1. A property will be used as it was historically or be given a new use that requires minimal change to its distinctive materials, features, spaces and spatial relationships.
2. The historic character of a property will be retained and preserved. The removal of distinctive materials or alteration of features, spaces and spatial relationships that characterize a property will be avoided.
3. Each property will be recognized as a physical record of its time, place and use. Changes that create a false sense of historical development, such as adding conjectural features or elements from other historic properties, will not be undertaken.
4. Changes to a property that have acquired historic significance in their own right will be retained and preserved.
5. Distinctive materials, features, finishes, and construction techniques or examples of craftsmanship that characterize a property will be preserved.
6. Deteriorated historic features will be repaired rather than replaced. Where the severity of deterioration requires replacement of a distinctive feature, the new feature will match the old in design, color, texture and, where possible, materials. Replacement of missing features will be substantiated by documentary and physical evidence.
7. Chemical or physical treatments, if appropriate, will be undertaken using the gentlest means possible. Treatments that cause damage to historic materials will not be used.
8. Archeological resources will be protected and preserved in place. If such resources must be disturbed, mitigation measures will be undertaken.
9. New additions, exterior alterations, or related new construction will not destroy historic materials, features, and spatial relationships that characterize the property. The new work will be differentiated from the old and will be compatible with the historic materials, features, size, scale and proportion, and massing to protect the integrity of the property and its environment.
10. New additions and adjacent or related new construction will be undertaken in such a manner that, if removed in the future, the essential form and integrity of the historic property and its environment would be unimpaired.

GUIDELINES FOR REHABILITATING HISTORIC BUILDINGS

INTRODUCTION

In **Rehabilitation,** historic building materials and character-defining features are protected and maintained as they are in the treatment Preservation. However, greater latitude is given in the **Standards for Rehabilitation and Guidelines for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings** to replace extensively deteriorated, damaged, or missing features using either the same material or compatible substitute materials. Of the four treatments, only **Rehabilitation** allows alterations and the construction of a new addition, if necessary for a continuing or new use for the historic building.

Identify, Retain, and Preserve Historic Materials and Features

The guidance for the treatment **Rehabilitation** begins with recommendations to identify the form and detailing of those architectural materials and features that are important in defining the building's historic character and which must be retained to preserve that character. Therefore, guidance on ***identifying, retaining, and preserving*** character-defining features is always given first.

Protect and Maintain Historic Materials and Features

After identifying those materials and features that are important and must be retained in the process of **Rehabilitation** work, then ***protecting and maintaining*** them are addressed. Protection generally involves the least degree of intervention and is preparatory to other work. Protection includes the maintenance of historic materials and features as well as ensuring that the property is protected before and during rehabilitation work. A historic building undergoing rehabilitation will often require more extensive work. Thus, an overall evaluation of its physical condition should always begin at this level.

Repair Historic Materials and Features

Next, when the physical condition of character-defining materials and features warrants additional work, ***repairing*** is recommended. **Rehabilitation** guidance for the repair of historic materials, such as masonry, again begins with the least degree of intervention possible. In rehabilitation, repairing also includes the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of extensively deteriorated or missing components of features when there are surviving prototypes features that can be substantiated by documentary and physical evidence. Although using the same kind of material is always the preferred option, a substitute material may be an acceptable alternative if the form, design, and scale, as well as the substitute material itself, can effectively replicate the appearance of the remaining features.

Replace Deteriorated Historic Materials and Features

Following repair in the hierarchy, **Rehabilitation** guidance is provided for ***replacing*** an entire character-defining feature with new material because the level of deterioration or damage of materials precludes repair. If the missing feature is character defining or if it is critical to the survival of the building (e.g., a roof), it should be replaced to match the historic feature based on physical or his-

toric documentation of its form and detailing. As with repair, the preferred option is always replacement of the entire feature in kind (i.e., with the same material, such as wood for wood). However, when this is not feasible, a compatible substitute material that can reproduce the overall appearance of the historic material may be considered.

It should be noted that, while the National Park Service guidelines recommend the replacement of an entire character-defining feature that is extensively deteriorated, the guidelines never recommend removal and replacement with new material of a feature that could reasonably be repaired and, thus, preserved.

Design for the Replacement of Missing Historic Features

When an entire interior or exterior feature is missing, such as a porch, it no longer plays a role in physically defining the historic character of the building unless it can be accurately recovered in form and detailing through the process of carefully documenting the historic appearance. If the feature is not critical to the survival of the building, allowing the building to remain without the feature is one option. But if the missing feature is important to the historic character of the building, its replacement is always recommended in the **Rehabilitation** guidelines as the first, or preferred, course of action. If adequate documentary and physical evidence exists, the feature may be accurately reproduced. A second option in a rehabilitation treatment for replacing a missing feature, particularly when the available information about the feature is inadequate to permit an accurate reconstruction, is to ***design*** a new feature that is compatible with the overall historic character of the building. The new design should always take into account the size, scale, and material of the building itself and should be clearly differentiated from the authentic historic features. For properties that have changed over time, and where those changes have acquired significance, reestablishing missing historic features generally should not be undertaken if the missing features did not coexist with the features currently on the building. Juxtaposing historic features that did not exist concurrently will result in a false sense of the building's history.

Alterations

Some exterior and interior alterations to a historic building are generally needed as part of a **Rehabilitation** project to ensure its continued use, but it is most important that such alterations do not radically change, obscure, or destroy character-defining spaces, materials, features, or finishes. Alterations may include changes to the site or setting, such as the selective removal of buildings or other features of the building site or setting that are intrusive, not character defining, or outside the building's period of significance.

Code-Required Work: Accessibility and Life Safety

Sensitive solutions to meeting code requirements in a **Rehabilitation** project are an important part of protecting the historic character of the building. Work that must be done to meet accessibility and life-safety requirements must also be assessed for its potential impact on the historic building, its site, and setting.

Resilience to Natural Hazards

Resilience to natural hazards should be addressed as part of a **Rehabilitation** project. A historic building may have existing characteristics or features that help to address or minimize the impacts of natural hazards. These should always be used to best advantage when considering new adaptive treatments so as to have the least impact on the historic character of the building, its site, and setting.

Sustainability

Sustainability should be addressed as part of a **Rehabilitation** project. Good preservation practice is often synonymous with sustainability. Existing energy-efficient features should be retained and repaired. Only sustainability treatments should be considered that will have the least impact on the historic character of the building.

The topic of sustainability is addressed in detail in *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation & Illustrated Guidelines on Sustainability for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings.*

New Exterior Additions and Related New Construction

Rehabilitation is the only treatment that allows expanding a historic building by enlarging it with an addition. However, the **Rehabilitation** guidelines emphasize that new additions should be considered only after it is determined that meeting specific new needs cannot be achieved by altering non-character-defining interior spaces. If the use cannot be accommodated in this way, then an attached exterior addition may be considered. New additions should be designed and constructed so that the character-defining features of the historic building, its site, and setting are not negatively impacted. Generally, a new addition should be subordinate to the historic building. A new addition should be compatible, but differentiated enough so that it is not confused as historic or original to the building. The same guidance applies to new construction so that it does not negatively impact the historic character of the building or its site.

Rehabilitation as a Treatment. *When repair and replacement of deteriorated features are necessary; when alterations or additions to the property are planned for a new or continued use; and when its depiction at a particular time is not appropriate, Rehabilitation may be considered as a treatment. Prior to undertaking work, a documentation plan for Rehabilitation should be developed.*

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

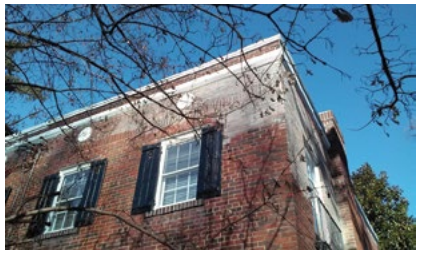
RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining and preserving masonry features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building (such as walls, brackets, railings, cornices, window and door surrounds, steps, and columns) and decorative ornament and other details, such as tooling and bonding patterns, coatings, and color.	Removing or substantially changing masonry features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Replacing or rebuilding a major portion of exterior masonry walls that could be repaired, thereby destroying the historic integrity of the building. Applying paint or other coatings (such as stucco) to masonry that has been historically unpainted or uncoated to create a new appearance. Removing paint from historically-painted masonry.
Protecting and maintaining masonry by ensuring that historic drainage features and systems that divert rainwater from masonry surfaces (such as roof overhangs, gutters, and downspouts) are intact and functioning properly.	Failing to identify and treat the causes of masonry deterioration, such as leaking roofs and gutters or rising damp.
Cleaning masonry only when necessary to halt deterioration or remove heavy soiling.	Cleaning masonry surfaces when they are not heavily soiled to create a "like-new" appearance, thereby needlessly introducing chemicals or moisture into historic materials.
Carrying out masonry cleaning tests when it has been determined that cleaning is appropriate. Test areas should be examined to ensure that no damage has resulted and, ideally, monitored over a sufficient period of time to allow long-range effects to be predicted.	Cleaning masonry surfaces without testing or without sufficient time for the testing results to be evaluated.

[1] An alkaline-based product is appropriate to use to clean historic marble because it will not damage the marble, which is acid sensitive.

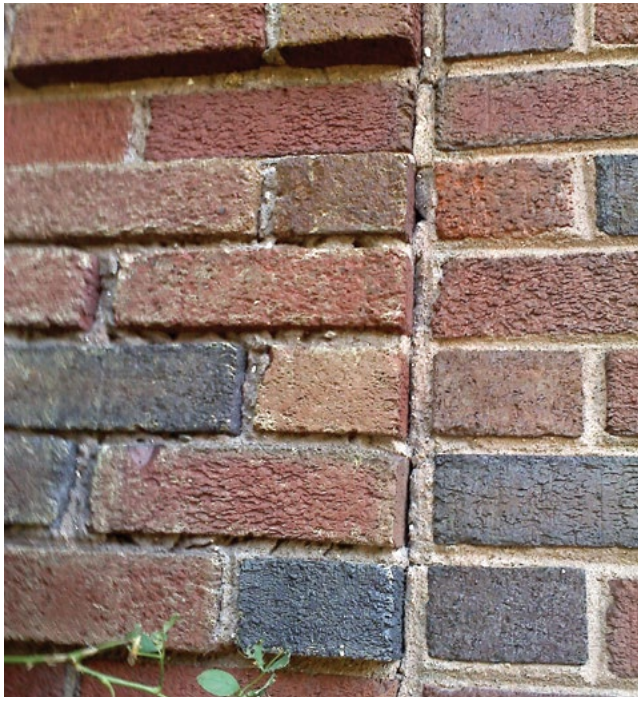
[2] Mid-century modern building technology made possible the form of this parabola-shaped structure and its thin concrete shell construction. Built in 1961 as the lobby of the La Concha Motel in Las Vegas, it was designed by Paul Revere Williams, one of the first prominent African-American architects. It was moved to a new location and rehabilitated to serve as the Neon Museum, and is often cited as an example of Googie architecture. *Credit: Photographed with permission at The Neon Museum, Las Vegas, Nevada.*

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Cleaning soiled masonry surfaces with the gentlest method possible, such as using low-pressure water and detergent and natural bristle or other soft-bristle brushes.	Cleaning or removing paint from masonry surfaces using most abrasive methods (including sandblasting, other media blasting, or high-pressure water) which can damage the surface of the masonry and mortar joints. Using a cleaning or paint-removal method that involves water or liquid chemical solutions when there is any possibility of freezing temperatures. Cleaning with chemical products that will damage some types of masonry (such as using acid on limestone or marble), or failing to neutralize or rinse off chemical cleaners from masonry surfaces.



[3] **Not Recommended:**
The white film on the upper corner of this historic brick row house is the result of using a scrub or slurry coating, rather than traditional repointing by hand, which is the recommended method.



[4] **Not Recommended:**
The quoins on the left side of the photo show that high-pressure abrasive blasting used to remove paint can damage even early 20th-century, hard-baked, textured brick and erode the mortar, whereas the same brick on the right, which was not abrasively cleaned, is undamaged.

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using biodegradable or environmentally-safe cleaning or paint-removal products.	
Using paint-removal methods that employ a poultice to which paint adheres, when possible, to neatly and safely remove old lead paint.	
Using coatings that encapsulate lead paint, when possible, where the paint is not required to be removed to meet environmental regulations.	
Allowing only trained conservators to use abrasive or laser-cleaning methods, when necessary, to clean hard-to-reach, highly-carved, or detailed decorative stone features.	
Removing damaged or deteriorated paint only to the next sound layer using the gentlest method possible (e.g., hand scraping) prior to repainting.	Removing paint that is firmly adhered to masonry surfaces, unless the building was unpainted historically and the paint can be removed without damaging the surface.
Applying compatible paint coating systems to historically-painted masonry following proper surface preparation.	Failing to follow manufacturers' product and application instructions when repainting masonry features.
Repainting historically-painted masonry features with colors that are appropriate to the historic character of the building and district.	Using paint colors on historically-painted masonry features that are not appropriate to the historic character of the building and district.
Protecting adjacent materials when cleaning or removing paint from masonry features.	Failing to protect adjacent materials when cleaning or removing paint from masonry features.
Evaluating the overall condition of the masonry to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to masonry features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of masonry features.
Repairing masonry by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing the masonry using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing parts of masonry features when there are surviving prototypes, such as terra-cotta brackets or stone balusters.	Removing masonry that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants and unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials. Replacing an entire masonry feature, such as a cornice or balustrade, when repair of the masonry and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Repairing masonry walls and other masonry features by repointing the mortar joints where there is evidence of deterioration, such as disintegrating mortar, cracks in mortar joints, loose bricks, or damaged plaster on the interior.	Removing non-deteriorated mortar from sound joints and then repointing the entire building to achieve a more uniform appearance.
Removing deteriorated lime mortar carefully by hand raking the joints to avoid damaging the masonry.	
Using power tools only on horizontal joints on brick masonry in conjunction with hand chiseling to remove hard mortar that is deteriorated or that is a non-historic material which is causing damage to the masonry units. Mechanical tools should be used only by skilled masons in limited circumstances and generally not on short, vertical joints in brick masonry.	Allowing unskilled workers to use masonry saws or mechanical tools to remove deteriorated mortar from joints prior to repointing.
Duplicating historic mortar joints in strength, composition, color, and texture when repointing is necessary. In some cases, a lime-based mortar may also be considered when repointing Portland cement mortar because it is more flexible.	Repointing masonry units with mortar of high Portland cement content (unless it is the content of the historic mortar). Using “surface grouting” or a “scrub” coating technique, such as a “sack rub” or “mortar washing,” to repoint exterior masonry units instead of traditional repointing methods. Repointing masonry units (other than concrete) with a synthetic caulking compound instead of mortar.
Duplicating historic mortar joints in width and joint profile when repointing is necessary.	Changing the width or joint profile when repointing.
Repairing stucco by removing the damaged material and patching with new stucco that duplicates the old in strength, composition, color, and texture.	Removing sound stucco or repairing with new stucco that is different in composition from the historic stucco. Patching stucco or concrete without removing the source of deterioration. Replacing deteriorated stucco with synthetic stucco, an exterior finish and insulation system (EFIS), or other non-traditional materials.

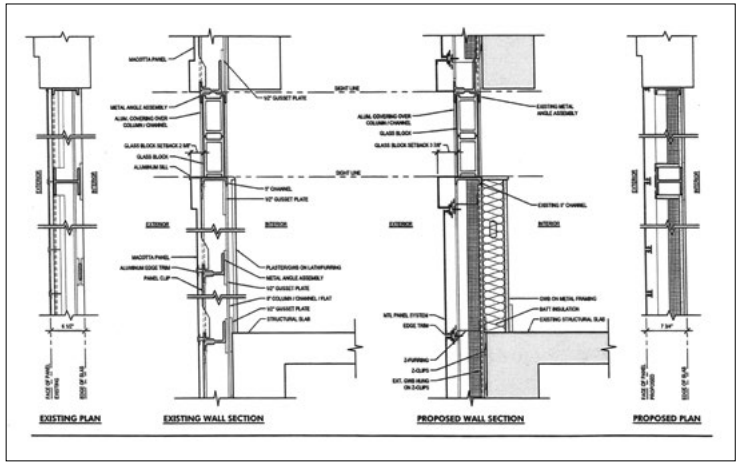
MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using mud plaster or a compatible lime-plaster adobe render, when appropriate, to repair adobe.	Applying cement stucco, unless it already exists, to adobe.
Sealing joints in concrete with appropriate flexible sealants and backer rods, when necessary.	
Cutting damaged concrete back to remove the source of deterioration, such as corrosion on metal reinforcement bars. The new patch must be applied carefully so that it will bond satisfactorily with and match the historic concrete.	Patching damaged concrete without removing the source of deterioration.

[5] Rebars in the reinforced concrete ceiling have rusted, causing the concrete to spall. The rebars must be cleaned of rust before the concrete can be patched.

[6] Some areas of the concrete brise soleil screen on this building constructed in 1967 are badly deteriorated. If the screen cannot be repaired, it may be replaced in kind or with a composite substitute material with the same appearance as the concrete.

[7] (a) J.W. Knapp's Department Store, built 1937-38, in Lansing, MI, was constructed with a proprietary material named "Maul Macotta" made of enameled steel and cast-in-place concrete panels. Prior to its rehabilitation, a building inspection revealed that, due to a flaw in the original design and construction, the material was deteriorated beyond repair. The architects for the rehabilitation project devised a replacement system (b) consisting of enameled aluminum panels that matched the original colors (c). Photos and drawing (a-b): Quinn Evans Architects; *Photo (c): James Haefner Photography.*



MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using a non-corrosive, stainless-steel anchoring system when replacing damaged stone, concrete, or terra-cotta units that have failed.	
Applying non-historic surface treatments, such as water-repellent coatings, to masonry only after repointing and only if masonry repairs have failed to arrest water penetration problems.	Applying waterproof, water-repellent, or non-original historic coatings (such as stucco) to masonry as a substitute for repointing and masonry repairs.
Applying permeable, anti-graffiti coatings to masonry when appropriate.	Applying water-repellent or anti-graffiti coatings that change the historic appearance of the masonry or that may trap moisture if the coating is not sufficiently permeable.
Replacing in kind an entire masonry feature that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. Examples can include large sections of a wall, a cornice, pier, or parapet. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.	Removing a masonry feature that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new feature that does not match. Using substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the masonry feature.
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to **Rehabilitation** *projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.*	
Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features	
Designing and installing a replacement masonry feature, such as a step or door pediment, when the historic feature is completely missing. It may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the historic feature to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.	Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing masonry feature is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature to be replaced did not coexist with the features currently on the building. Introducing a new masonry feature that is incompatible in size, scale, material, or color.

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining and preserving wood features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building (such as siding, cornices, brackets, window and door surrounds, and steps) and their paints, finishes, and colors.	Removing or substantially changing wood features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Removing a major portion of the historic wood from a façade instead of repairing or replacing only the deteriorated wood, then reconstructing the façade with new material to achieve a uniform or "improved" appearance. Changing the type of finish, coating, or historic color of wood features, thereby diminishing the historic character of the exterior. Failing to renew failing paint or other coatings that are historic finishes. Stripping historically-painted surfaces to bare wood and applying a clear finish rather than repainting. Stripping paint or other coatings to reveal bare wood, thereby exposing historically-coated surfaces to the effects of accelerated weathering. Removing wood siding (clapboards) or other covering (such as stucco) from log structures that were covered historically, which changes their historic character and exposes the logs to accelerated deterioration.
Protecting and maintaining wood features by ensuring that historic drainage features that divert rainwater from wood surfaces (such as roof overhangs, gutters, and downspouts) are intact and functioning properly.	Failing to identify and treat the causes of wood deterioration, such as faulty flashing, leaking gutters, cracks and holes in siding, deteriorated caulking in joints and seams, plant material growing too close to wood surfaces, or insect or fungal infestation.

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Applying chemical preservatives or paint to wood features that are subject to weathering, such as exposed beam ends, outriggers, or rafter tails.	Using chemical preservatives (such as creosote) which, unless they were used historically, can change the appearance of wood features.
Implementing an integrated pest management plan to identify appropriate preventive measures to guard against insect damage, such as installing termite guards, fumigating, and treating with chemicals.	
Retaining coatings (such as paint) that protect the wood from moisture and ultraviolet light. Paint removal should be considered only when there is paint surface deterioration and as part of an overall maintenance program which involves repainting or applying other appropriate coatings.	Stripping paint or other coatings from wood features without recoating.

[8] Rotted clapboards have been replaced selectively with new wood siding to match the originals.

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Removing damaged or deteriorated paint to the next sound layer using the gentlest method possible (e.g., hand scraping and hand sanding) prior to repainting.	Using potentially-damaging paint-removal methods on wood surfaces, such as open-flame torches, orbital sanders, abrasive methods (including sandblasting, other media blasting, or high-pressure water), or caustic paint-removers. Removing paint that is firmly adhered to wood surfaces.
Using chemical strippers primarily to supplement other methods such as hand scraping, hand sanding, and thermal devices.	Failing to neutralize the wood thoroughly after using chemical paint removers so that new paint may not adhere. Removing paint from detachable wood features by soaking them in a caustic solution, which may roughen the surface, split the wood, or result in staining from residual acids leaching out of the wood.
Using biodegradable or environmentally-safe cleaning or paint-removal products.	
Using paint-removal methods that employ a poultice to which paint adheres, when possible, to neatly and safely remove old lead paint.	
Using thermal devices (such as infrared heaters) carefully to remove paint when it is so deteriorated that total removal is necessary prior to repainting.	Using a thermal device to remove paint from wood features without first checking for and removing any flammable debris behind them. Using thermal devices without limiting the amount of time the wood feature is exposed to heat.
Using coatings that encapsulate lead paint, when possible, where the paint is not required to be removed to meet environmental regulations.	
Applying compatible paint coating systems to historically-painted wood following proper surface preparation.	Failing to follow manufacturers' product and application instructions when repainting wood features.
Repainting historically-painted wood features with colors that are appropriate to the building and district.	Using paint colors on historically-painted wood features that are not appropriate to the building or district.

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Protecting adjacent materials when working on other wood features.	Failing to protect adjacent materials when working on wood features.
Evaluating the overall condition of the wood to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to wood features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of wood features.

[9] Smooth-surfaced cementitious siding (left) may be used to replace deteriorated wood siding only on secondary elevations that have minimal visibility.

[10] **Not Recommended:** Cementitious siding with a raised wood-grain texture is not an appropriate material to replace historic wood siding, which has a smooth surface when painted.

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Repairing wood by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing the wood using recognized conservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of wood features when there are surviving prototypes, such as brackets, molding, or sections of siding.	Removing wood that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants and unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials. Replacing an entire wood feature, such as a cornice or balustrade, when repair of the wood and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components is feasible.
Replacing in kind an entire wood feature that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. Examples of such wood features include a cornice, entablature, or a balustrade. If using wood is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.	Removing a wood feature that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new feature that does not match. Using substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the wood feature.
Replacing a deteriorated wood feature or wood siding on a *primary or other highly-visible* elevation with a new matching wood feature.	Replacing a deteriorated wood feature or wood siding on a *primary or other highly-visible elevation* with a composite substitute material.
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to **Rehabilitation** *projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.*	
Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features	
Designing and installing a replacement masonry feature, such as a step or door pediment, when the historic feature is completely missing. It may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the historic feature to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.	Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing masonry feature is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature to be replaced did not coexist with the features currently on the building. Introducing a new wood feature that is incompatible in size, scale, material, or color.

METALS: WROUGHT AND CAST IRON, STEEL, PRESSED METAL, TERNEPLATE, COPPER, ALUMINUM, AND ZINC

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving metal features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building (such as columns, capitals, pilasters, spandrel panels, or stairways) and their paints, finishes, and colors. The type of metal should be identified prior to work because each metal has its own properties and may require a different treatment.	Removing or substantially changing metal features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Removing a major portion of the historic metal from a façade instead of repairing or replacing only the deteriorated metal, then reconstructing the façade with new material to achieve a uniform or "improved" appearance.
Protecting and maintaining metals from corrosion by providing proper drainage so that water does not stand on flat, horizontal surfaces or accumulate in curved decorative features.	Failing to identify and treat the causes of corrosion, such as moisture from leaking roofs or gutters. Placing incompatible metals together without providing an appropriate separation material. Such incompatibility can result in galvanic corrosion of the less noble metal (e.g., copper will corrode cast iron, steel, tin, and aluminum).
Cleaning metals when necessary to remove corrosion prior to repainting or applying appropriate protective coatings.	Leaving metals that must be protected from corrosion uncoated after cleaning.

[11] The stainless steel doors at the entrance to this Art Deco apartment building are important in defining its historic character and should be retained in place.

METALS: WROUGHT AND CAST IRON, STEEL, PRESSED METAL, TERNEPLATE, COPPER, ALUMINUM, AND ZINC

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying the particular type of metal prior to any cleaning procedure and then testing to ensure that the gentlest cleaning method possible is selected; or, alternatively, determining that cleaning is inappropriate for the particular metal.	Using cleaning methods which alter or damage the color, texture, or finish of the metal, or cleaning when it is inappropriate for the particular metal. Removing the patina from historic metals. The patina may be a protective layer on some metals (such as bronze or copper) as well as a distinctive finish.
Using non-corrosive chemical methods to clean soft metals (such as lead, tinplate, terneplate, copper, and zinc) whose finishes can be easily damaged by abrasive methods.	Cleaning soft metals (such as lead, tinplate, terneplate, copper, and zinc) with abrasive methods (including sandblasting, other abrasive media, or high-pressure water) which will damage the surface of the metal.
Using the least abrasive cleaning method for hard metals (such as cast iron, wrought iron, and steel) to remove paint buildup and corrosion. If hand scraping and wire brushing have proven ineffective, low-pressure abrasive methods may be used as long as they do not abrade or damage the surface.	Using high-pressure abrasive techniques (including sandblasting, other media blasting, or high-pressure water) without first trying gentler cleaning methods prior to cleaning cast iron, wrought iron, or steel.
Applying appropriate paint or other coatings to historically-coated metals after cleaning to protect them from corrosion.	Applying paint or other coatings to metals (such as copper, bronze or stainless steel) if they were not coated historically, unless a coating is necessary for maintenance.
Repainting historically-painted metal features with colors that are appropriate to the building and district.	Using paint colors on historically-painted metal features that are not appropriate to the building or district.
Applying an appropriate protective coating (such as lacquer or wax) to a metal feature that was historically unpainted, such as a bronze door, which is subject to heavy use.	

METALS: WROUGHT AND CAST IRON, STEEL, PRESSED METAL, TERNEPLATE, COPPER, ALUMINUM, AND ZINC

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Protecting adjacent materials when cleaning or removing paint from metal features.	Failing to protect adjacent materials when working on metal features.
Evaluating the overall condition of metals to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to metal features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of metal features.

[12] This historic steel window has been cleaned, repaired, and primed in preparation for painting and reglazing.

[13] The gold-colored, anodized aluminum geodesic dome of the former Citizen's State Bank in Oklahoma City, OK, built in 1958 and designed by Robert Roloff, makes this a distinctive mid-20th century building.

[14] Interior cast-iron columns have been cleaned and repainted as part of the rehabilitation of this historic market building for continuing use.

[15] New enameled-metal panels were replicated to replace the original panels, which were too deteriorated to repair, when the storefront of this early 1950s building was recreated.

METALS: WROUGHT AND CAST IRON, STEEL, PRESSED METAL, TERNEPLATE, COPPER, ALUMINUM, AND ZINC

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Repairing metal by reinforcing the metal using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of features when there are surviving prototypes, such as column capitals or bases, storefronts, railings and steps, or window hoods.	Removing metals that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using improper repair techniques, or unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials.
Replacing in kind an entire metal feature that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. Examples of such a feature could include cast-iron porch steps or steel-sash windows. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.	Replacing an entire metal feature, such as a column or balustrade, when repair of the metal and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible. Removing a metal feature that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new metal feature that does not match. Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the metal feature or that is physically or chemically incompatible.
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to **Rehabilitation** *projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.*	
Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features	
Designing and installing a replacement metal feature, such as a metal cornice or cast-iron column, when the historic feature is completely missing. It may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the historic feature to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.	Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing metal feature is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature to be replaced did not coexist with the features currently on the building. Introducing a new metal feature that is incompatible in size, scale, material, or color.

ROOFS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving roofs and their functional and decorative features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. The form of the roof (gable, hipped, gambrel, flat, or mansard) is significant, as are its decorative and functional features (such as cupolas, cresting, parapets, monitors, chimneys, weather vanes, dormers, ridge tiles, and snow guards), roofing material (such as slate, wood, clay tile, metal, roll roofing, or asphalt shingles), and size, color, and patterning.	Removing or substantially changing roofs which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Removing a major portion of the historic roof or roofing material that is repairable, then rebuilding it with new material to achieve a more uniform or "improved" appearance. Changing the configuration or shape of a roof by adding highly visible new features (such as dormer windows, vents, skylights, or a penthouse). Stripping the roof of sound historic material, such as slate, clay tile, wood, or metal.
Protecting and maintaining a roof by cleaning gutters and downspouts and replacing deteriorated flashing. Roof sheathing should also be checked for indications of moisture due to leaks or condensation.	Failing to clean and maintain gutters and downspouts properly so that water and debris collect and cause damage to roof features, sheathing, and the underlying roof structure.
Providing adequate anchorage for roofing material to guard against wind damage and moisture penetration.	Allowing flashing, caps, and exposed fasteners to corrode, which accelerates deterioration of the roof.
Protecting a leaking roof with a temporary waterproof membrane with a synthetic underlayment, roll roofing, plywood, or a tarpaulin until it can be repaired.	Leaving a leaking roof unprotected so that accelerated deterioration of historic building materials (such as masonry, wood, plaster, paint, and structural members) occurs.
Repainting a roofing material that requires a protective coating and was painted historically (such as a terneplate metal roof or gutters) as part of regularly-scheduled maintenance.	Failing to repaint a roofing material that requires a protective coating and was painted historically as part of regularly-scheduled maintenance.
Applying compatible paint coating systems to historically-painted roofing materials following proper surface preparation.	Applying paint or other coatings to roofing material if they were not coated historically.
Protecting a roof covering when working on other roof features.	Failing to protect roof coverings when working on other roof features.
Evaluating the overall condition of the roof and roof features to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to roof features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of roof features.

ROOFS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Repairing a roof by ensuring that the existing historic or compatible non-historic roof covering is sound and waterproof. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of missing materials (such as wood shingles, slates, or tiles) on a main roof, as well as those extensively deteriorated or missing components of features when there are surviving prototypes, such as ridge tiles, dormer roofing, or roof monitors. Using corrosion-resistant roof fasteners (e.g., nails and clips) to repair a roof to help extend its longevity.	Replacing an entire roof feature when repair of the historic roofing materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.

[16] The deteriorated asphalt shingles of this porch roof are being replaced in kind with matching shingles.

ROOFS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Replacing in kind an entire roof covering or feature that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. Examples of such a feature could include a large section of roofing, a dormer, or a chimney. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.	Removing a feature of the roof that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new roof feature that does not match. Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the roof covering or the surviving components of the roof feature or that is physically or chemically incompatible.
Replacing only missing or damaged roofing tiles or slates rather than replacing the entire roof covering.	Failing to reuse intact slate or tile in good condition when only the roofing substrate or fasteners need replacement.
Replacing an incompatible roof covering or any deteriorated non-historic roof covering with historically-accurate roofing material, if known, or another material that is compatible with the historic character of the building.	
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to **Rehabilitation** *projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.*	
Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features	
Designing and installing a new roof covering for a missing roof or a new feature, such as a dormer or a monitor, when the historic feature is completely missing. It may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the historic feature to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.	Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing roof feature is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature to be replaced did not coexist with the features currently on the building. Introducing a new roof feature that is incompatible in size, scale, material, or color.

ROOFS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Alterations and Additions for a New Use	
Installing mechanical and service equipment on the roof (such as heating and air-conditioning units, elevator housing, or solar panels) when required for a new use so that they are inconspicuous on the site and from the public right-of-way and do not damage or obscure character-defining historic features.	Installing roof-top mechanical or service equipment so that it damages or obscures character-defining roof features or is conspicuous on the site or from the public right-of-way.
Designing rooftop additions, elevator or stair towers, decks or terraces, dormers, or skylights when required by a new or continuing use so that they are inconspicuous and minimally visible on the site and from the public right-of-way and do not damage or obscure character-defining historic features.	Changing a character-defining roof form, or damaging or destroying character-defining roofing material as a result of an incompatible rooftop addition or improperly-installed or highly-visible mechanical equipment.
Installing a green roof or other roof landscaping, railings, or furnishings that are not visible on the site or from the public right-of-way and do not damage the roof structure.	Installing a green roof or other roof landscaping, railings, or furnishings that are visible on the site and from the public right-of-way.

[17] New wood elements have been used selectively to replace rotted wood on the underside of the roof in this historic warehouse.

WINDOWS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving windows and their functional and decorative features that are important to the overall character of the building. The window material and how the window operates (e.g., double hung, casement, awning, or hopper) are significant, as are its components (including sash, muntins, ogee lugs, glazing, pane configuration, sills, mullions, casings, or brick molds) and related features, such as shutters.	Removing or substantially changing windows or window features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Changing the appearance of windows that contribute to the historic character of the building by replacing materials, finishes, or colors which noticeably change the sash, depth of the reveal, and muntin configurations; the reflectivity and color of the glazing; or the appearance of the frame. Obscuring historic wood window trim with metal or other material. Replacing windows solely because of peeling paint, broken glass, stuck sash, or high air infiltration. These conditions, in themselves, do not indicate that windows are beyond repair.
Protecting and maintaining the wood or metal which comprises the window jamb, sash, and trim through appropriate treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coating systems.	Failing to protect and maintain window materials on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of the window results.
Protecting windows against vandalism before work begins by covering them and by installing alarm systems that are keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving windows unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby also allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected windows.
Making windows weathertight by recaulking gaps in fixed joints and replacing or installing weatherstripping.	
Protecting windows from chemical cleaners, paint, or abrasion during work on the exterior of the building.	Failing to protect historic windows from chemical cleaners, paint, or abrasion when work is being done on the exterior of the building.
Protecting and retaining historic glass when replacing putty or repairing other components of the window.	Failing to protect the historic glass when making window repairs.

WINDOWS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Sustaining the historic operability of windows by lubricating friction points and replacing broken components of the operating system (such as hinges, latches, sash chains or cords) and replacing deteriorated gaskets or insulating units.	Failing to maintain windows and window components so that windows are inoperable, or sealing operable sash permanently. Failing to repair and reuse window hardware such as sash lifts, latches, and locks.
Adding storm windows with a matching or a one-over-one pane configuration that will not obscure the characteristics of the historic windows. Storm windows improve energy efficiency and are especially beneficial when installed over wood windows because they also protect them from accelerated deterioration.	
Adding interior storm windows as an alternative to exterior storm windows when appropriate.	

[18] The historic metal storm windows in this 1920s office building were retained and repaired during the rehabilitation project.

[19] Installing a mockup of a proposed replacement window can be helpful to evaluate how well the new windows will match the historic windows that are missing or too deteriorated to repair.

[20 a-d] The original steel windows in this industrial building were successfully repaired as part of the rehabilitation project (left).

WINDOWS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Installing sash locks, window guards, removable storm windows, and other reversible treatments to meet safety, security, or energy conservation requirements.	
Evaluating the overall condition of the windows to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to windows and window features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of window features.
Repairing window frames and sash by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing them using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated, broken, or missing components of features when there are surviving prototypes, such as sash, sills, hardware, or shutters.	Removing window features that could be stabilized, repaired, or conserved using untested consolidants, improper repair techniques, or unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to the historic materials. Replacing an entire window when repair of the window and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.
Removing glazing putty that has failed and applying new putty; or, if glass is broken, carefully removing all putty, replacing the glass, and reputtying.	
Installing new glass to replace broken glass which has the same visual characteristics as the historic glass.	
Replacing in kind an entire window that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.	Removing a character-defining window that is unrepairable or is not needed for the new use and blocking up the opening, or replacing it with a new window that does not match. Using substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the window or that is physically incompatible.

[21] The windows on the lower floor, which were too deteriorated to repair, were replaced with new steel windows matching the upper-floor historic windows that were retained.

WINDOWS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Modifying a historic single-glazed sash to accommodate insulated glass when it will not jeopardize the soundness of the sash or significantly alter its appearance.	Modifying a historic single-glazed sash to accommodate insulated glass when it will jeopardize the soundness of the sash or significantly alter its appearance.
Using low-e glass with the least visible tint in new or replacement windows.	Using low-e glass with a dark tint in new or replacement windows, thereby negatively impacting the historic character of the building.
Using window grids rather than true divided lights on windows on the upper floors of high-rise buildings if they will not be noticeable.	Using window grids rather than true divided lights on windows in low-rise buildings or on lower floors of high-rise buildings where they will be noticeable, resulting in a change to the historic character of the building.
Ensuring that spacer bars in between double panes of glass are the same color as the window sash.	Using spacer bars in between double panes of glass that are not the same color as the window sash.
Replacing all of the components in a glazing system if they have failed because of faulty design or materials that have deteriorated with new material that will improve the window performance without noticeably changing the historic appearance.	Replacing all of the components in a glazing system with new material that will noticeably change the historic appearance.
Replacing incompatible, non-historic windows with new windows that are compatible with the historic character of the building; or reinstating windows in openings that have been filled in.	
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to **Rehabilitation** *projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.*	
Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features	
Designing and installing a new window or its components, such as frames, sash, and glazing, when the historic feature is completely missing. It may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the historic feature to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.	Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing window is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature to be replaced did not coexist with the features currently on the building. Installing replacement windows made from other materials that are not the same as the material of the original windows if they would have a noticeably different appearance from the remaining historic windows.

(a)

(b)

(c)

[22] **Not Recommended:** (a-b) The original wood windows in this late-19th-century building, which were highly decorative, could likely have been repaired and retained. (c) Instead, they were replaced with new windows that do not match the detailing of the historic windows and, therefore, do not meet the Standards (above).

[23] (a)This deteriorated historic wood window was repaired and retained (b) in this rehabilitation project.

WINDOWS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Alterations and Additions for a New Use	
Adding new window openings on rear or other secondary, less-visible elevations, if required by a new use. The new openings and the windows in them should be compatible with the overall design of the building but, in most cases, not duplicate the historic fenestration.	Changing the number, location, size, or glazing pattern of windows on primary or highly-visible elevations which will alter the historic character of the building. Cutting new openings on character-defining elevations or cutting new openings that damage or destroy significant features. Adding balconies at existing window openings or new window openings on primary or other highly-visible elevations where balconies never existed and, therefore, would be incompatible with the historic character of the building.
Replacing windows that are too deteriorated to repair using the same sash and pane configuration, but with new windows that operate differently, if necessary, to accommodate a new use. Any change must have minimal visual impact. Examples could include replacing hopper or awning windows with casement windows, or adding a realigned and enlarged operable portion of industrial steel windows to meet life-safety codes.	Replacing a window that contributes to the historic character of the building with a new window that is different in design (such as glass divisions or muntin profiles), dimensions, materials (wood, metal, or glass), finish or color, or location that will have a noticeably different appearance from the historic windows, which may negatively impact the character of the building.
Installing impact-resistant glazing, when necessary for security, so that it is compatible with the historic windows and does not damage them or negatively impact their character.	Installing impact-resistant glazing, when necessary for security, that is incompatible with the historic windows and that damages them or negatively impacts their character.
Using compatible window treatments (such as frosted glass, appropriate shades or blinds, or shutters) to retain the historic character of the building when it is necessary to conceal mechanical equipment, for example, that the new use requires be placed in a location behind a window or windows on a primary or highly-visible elevation.	Removing a character-defining window to conceal mechanical equipment or to provide privacy for a new use of the building by blocking up the opening.

[24] Rotted boards in the beaded-board porch ceiling are being replaced with new matching beaded board.

ENTRANCES AND PORCHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving entrances and porches and their functional and decorative features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. The materials themselves (including masonry, wood, and metal) are significant, as are their features, such as doors, transoms, pilasters, columns, balustrades, stairs, roofs, and projecting canopies.	Removing or substantially changing entrances and porches which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Cutting new entrances on a primary façade. Altering utilitarian or service entrances so they compete visually with the historic primary entrance; increasing their size so that they appear significantly more important; or adding decorative details that cannot be documented to the building or are incompatible with the building's historic character.
Retaining a historic entrance or porch even though it will no longer be used because of a change in the building's function.	Removing a historic entrance or porch that will no longer be required for the building's new use.
Protecting and maintaining the masonry, wood, and metals which comprise entrances and porches through appropriate surface treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coating systems.	Failing to protect and maintain entrance and porch materials on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of entrances and porches results.
Protecting entrances and porches against arson and vandalism before work begins by covering them and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving entrances and porches unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby also allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected entrances.
Protecting entrance and porch features when working on other features of the building.	Failing to protect materials and features when working on other features of the building.
Evaluating the overall condition of entrances and porches to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to entrance and porch features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of entrance and porch features.
Repairing entrances and porches by patching, splicing, consolidating, and otherwise reinforcing them using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated features or missing components of features when there are surviving prototypes, such as balustrades, columns, and stairs.	Removing entrances and porches that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants, improper repair techniques, or unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials. Replacing an entire entrance or porch feature when repair of the feature and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.

ENTRANCES AND PORCHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Replacing in kind an entire entrance or porch that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.	Removing an entrance or porch that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new entrance or porch that does not match. Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of entrance or porch features or that is physically incompatible.

[25] The new infill designs for the garage door openings in this commercial building (a) converted for restaurant use and in this mill building (b) rehabilitated for residential use are compatible with the historic character of the buildings.

ENTRANCES AND PORCHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to **Rehabilitation** *projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.*	
Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features	
Designing and installing a new entrance or porch when the historic feature is completely missing or has previously been replaced by one that is incompatible. It may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the historic entrance or porch to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.	Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing entrance or porch is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature to be replaced did not coexist with the features currently on the building.
Alterations and Additions for a New Use	
Enclosing historic porches on secondary elevations only, when required by a new use, in a manner that preserves the historic character of the building (e.g., using large sheets of glass and recessing the enclosure wall behind existing posts and balustrades).	Enclosing porches in a manner that results in a diminution or loss of historic character by using solid materials rather than clear glazing, or by placing the enclosure in front of, rather than behind, the historic features.
Designing and constructing additional entrances or porches on secondary elevations when required for the new use in a manner that preserves the historic character of the building (i.e., ensuring that the new entrance or porch is clearly subordinate to historic primary entrances or porches).	Constructing secondary or service entrances and porches that are incompatible in size and scale or detailing with the historic building or that obscure, damage, or destroy character-defining features.

[26] **Not Recommended:** Installing a screened enclosure is never recommended on a front or otherwise prominent historic porch. In limited instances, it may be possible to add screening on a porch at the rear or on a secondary façade; however, the enclosure should match the color of the porch and be placed behind columns and railings so that it does not obscure these features.

STOREFRONTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving storefronts and their functional and decorative features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. The storefront materials (including wood, masonry, metals, ceramic tile, clear glass, and pigmented structural glass) and the configuration of the storefront are significant, as are features, such as display windows, base panels, bulkheads, signs, doors, transoms, kick plates, corner posts, piers, and entablatures. The removal of inappropriate, non-historic cladding, false mansard roofs, and other later, non-significant alterations can help reveal the historic character of the storefront.	Removing or substantially changing storefronts and their features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Changing the storefront so that it has a residential rather than commercial appearance. Introducing features from an earlier period that are not compatible with the historic character of the storefront. Changing the location of the storefront's historic main entrance. Replacing or covering a glass transom with solid material or inappropriate signage, or installing an incompatible awning over it.
Retaining later, non-original features that have acquired significance over time.	Removing later features that may have acquired significance.

[28] This new storefront, which replaced one that was missing, is compatible with the historic character of the building.

STOREFRONTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Protecting and maintaining masonry, wood, glass, ceramic tile, and metals which comprise storefronts through appropriate treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coating systems.	Failing to protect and maintain storefront materials on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of storefront features results.
Protecting storefronts against arson and vandalism before work begins by covering windows and doors and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving the storefront unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby also allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected entrances.
Protecting the storefront when working on other features of the building.	Failing to protect the storefront when working on other features of the building.
Evaluating the overall condition of the storefront to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to storefront features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of storefront features.

[27] This original c. 1940s storefront, with its character-defining angled and curved glass display window and recessed entrance with a decorative terrazzo paving, is in good condition and should be retained in a rehabilitation project.

STOREFRONTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Repairing storefronts by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing them using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of storefronts when there are surviving prototypes, such as transoms, base panels, kick plates, piers, or signs.	Removing storefronts that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants, improper repair techniques, or unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials.
Replacing in kind an entire storefront that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.	Replacing a storefront feature when repair of the feature and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible. Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the storefront or that is physically incompatible. Removing a storefront that is unrepairable and not replacing it or replacing it with a new storefront that does not match.
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to **Rehabilitation** *projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.*	
Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features	
Designing and installing a new storefront when the historic storefront is completely missing or has previously been replaced by one that is incompatible. It may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the historic storefront to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.	Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing storefront is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature to be replaced did not coexist with the features currently on the building. Using new, over-scaled, or internally-lit signs unless there is a historic precedent for them or using other types of signs that obscure, damage, or destroy character-defining features of the storefront and the building.

STOREFRONTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Replacing missing awnings or canopies that can be historically documented to the building, or adding new signage, awnings, or canopies that are compatible with the historic character of the building.	Adding vinyl awnings, or other awnings that are inappropriately sized or shaped, which are incompatible with the historic character of the building; awnings that do not extend over the entire length of the storefront; or large canopies supported by posts that project out over the sidewalk, unless their existence can be historically documented.
Alterations and Additions for a New Use	
Retaining the glazing and the transparency (i.e., which allows the openness of the interior to be experienced from the exterior) that is so important in defining the character of a historic storefront when the building is being converted for residential use. Window treatments (necessary for occupants' privacy) should be installed that are uniform and compatible with the commercial appearance of the building, such as screens or wood blinds. When display cases still exist behind the storefront, the screening should be set at the back of the display case.	Replacing storefront glazing with solid material for occupants' privacy when the building is being converted for residential use. Installing window treatments in storefront windows that have a residential appearance, which are incompatible with the commercial character of the building. Installing window treatments that are not uniform in a series of repetitive storefront windows.

[29] The rehabilitation of the 1910 Mā'alaea General Store (a), which served the workers' camp at the Wailuku Sugar Company on the Hawaiian island of Maui, included the reconstruction of the original parapet (b).

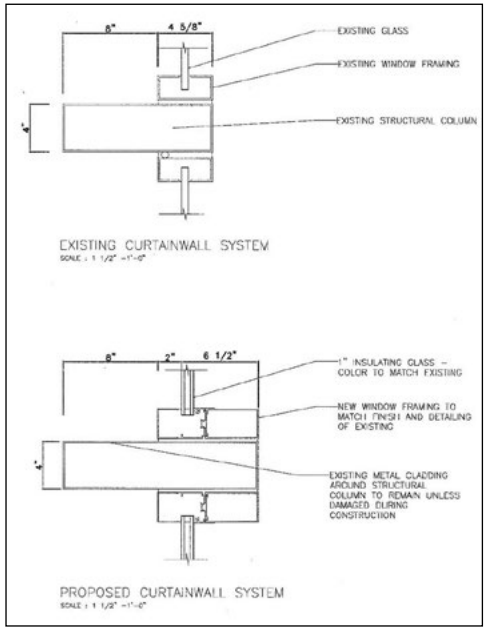
CURTAIN WALLS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving curtain wall systems and their components (metal framing members and glass or opaque panels) that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. The design of the curtain wall is significant, as are its component materials (metal stick framing and panel materials, such as clear or spandrel glass, stone, terra cotta, metal, and fiber-reinforced plastic), appearance (e.g., glazing color or tint, transparency, and reflectivity), and whether the glazing is fixed, operable or louvered glass panels. How a curtain wall is engineered and fabricated, and the fact that it expands and contracts at a different rate from the building's structural system, are important to understand when undertaking the rehabilitation of a curtain wall system.	Removing or substantially changing curtain wall components which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Replacing historic curtain wall features instead of repairing or replacing only the deteriorated components.
Protecting and maintaining curtain walls and their components through appropriate surface treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coating systems; and by making them watertight and ensuring that sealants and gaskets are in good condition.	Failing to protect and maintain curtain wall components on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of curtain walls results. Failing to identify, evaluate, and treat various causes of curtain wall failure, such as open gaps between components where sealants have deteriorated or are missing.
Protecting ground-level curtain walls from vandalism before work begins by covering them, while ensuring adequate ventilation, and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving ground-level curtain walls unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby also allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected glazing.
Protecting curtain walls when working on other features of the building.	Failing to protect curtain walls when working on other features of the building.
Cleaning curtain wall systems only when necessary to halt deterioration or to remove heavy soiling.	Cleaning curtain wall systems when they are not heavily soiled, thereby needlessly introducing chemicals or moisture into historic materials.

CURTAIN WALLS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Carrying out cleaning tests, when it has been determined that cleaning is appropriate, using only cleaning materials that will not damage components of the system, including factory-applied finishes. Test areas should be examined to ensure that no damage has resulted.	Cleaning curtain wall systems without testing or using cleaning materials that may damage components of the system.
Evaluating the overall condition of curtain walls to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repair of curtain wall components, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to protect curtain wall components.
Repairing curtain walls by ensuring that they are watertight by augmenting existing components or replacing deteriorated or missing sealants or gaskets, where necessary, to seal any gaps between system components. Repair may include the limited replacement of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of curtain walls when there are surviving prototypes.	Removing curtain wall components that could be repaired or using improper repair techniques. Replacing an entire curtain wall system when repair of materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.
Applying sealants carefully so that they are not readily visible.	
Replacing in kind a component or components of a curtain wall system that are too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered as long as it has the same finish and appearance.	Removing a curtain wall component or the entire system, if necessary, that is unrepairable and not replacing it or replacing it with a new component or system that does not convey the same appearance.
Replacing masonry, metal, glass, or other components of a curtain wall system (or the entire system, if necessary) which have failed because of faulty design with substitutes that match the original as closely as possible and which will reestablish the viability and performance of the system.	Using substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the curtain wall or that is physically incompatible.

[30] Rather than replace the original curtain wall system of the 1954 Simms Building in Albuquerque, NM, with a different color tinted glass or coat it with a non-historic reflective film, the HVAC system was updated to improve energy efficiency. *Photo: Harvey M. Kaplan.*



[31 a-c:] (a) The rehabilitation of the First Federal Savings and Loan Association building in Birmingham, AL, constructed in 1961, required replacing the deteriorated historic curtain wall system because the framing and the fasteners holding the spandrel glass and the windows had failed. (b) Comparative drawings show that the differences between the replacement system, which incorporated new insulated glass to meet wind-load requirements, and the original system are minimal. (c) The replacement system, shown after completion of the project, has not altered the historic character of the building.

CURTAIN WALLS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to Rehabilitation *projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.*	
Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features	
Designing and installing a new curtain wall or its components when the historic feature is completely missing. It may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the historic feature to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.	Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing curtain wall component is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature did not coexist with the features currently on the building. Introducing a new curtain wall component that is incompatible in size, scale, material, color, and finish.
Alterations and Additions for a New Use	
Installing new glazing or an entire new curtain wall system, when necessary to meet safety-code requirements, with dimensions, detailing, materials, colors, and finish as close as possible to the historic curtain wall components.	Installing new glazing or an entire new curtain wall system, when necessary to meet safety-code requirements, with dimensions and detailing that is significantly different from the historic curtain wall components.
Installing impact-resistant glazing, when necessary for security, so that it is compatible with the historic windows and does not damage them or negatively impact their character.	Installing impact-resistant glazing in a curtain wall system, when necessary for security, that is incompatible with the historic curtain walls and damages them or negatively impacts their character.

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving structural systems and visible features of systems that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. This includes the materials that comprise the structural system (i.e., wood, metal and masonry), the type of system, and its features, such as posts and beams, trusses, summer beams, vigas, cast-iron or masonry columns, above-grade stone foundation walls, or load-bearing masonry walls.	Removing or substantially changing visible features of historic structural systems which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Overloading the existing structural system, or installing equipment or mechanical systems which could damage the structure. Replacing a load-bearing masonry wall that could be augmented and retained. Leaving known structural problems untreated, such as deflected beams, cracked and bowed walls, or racked structural members.
Protecting and maintaining the structural system by keeping gutters and downspouts clear and roofing in good repair; and by ensuring that wood structural members are free from insect infestation.	Failing to protect and maintain the structural system on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of the structural system results. Using treatments or products that may retain moisture, which accelerates deterioration of structural members.

[33] Retaining as much as possible of the historic wood sill plate and replacing only the termite-damaged wood is always the preferred and recommended treatment.

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Evaluating the overall condition of the structural system to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to structural features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of structural systems.
Repairing the structural system by augmenting individual components, using recognized preservation methods. For example, weakened structural members (such as floor framing) can be paired or sistered with a new member, braced, or otherwise supplemented and reinforced.	Upgrading the building structurally in a manner that diminishes the historic character of the exterior or that damages interior features or spaces. Replacing a historic structural feature in its entirety or in part when it could be repaired or augmented and retained.

[32] (a-b) The rehabilitation of the 1892 Carson Block Building in Eureka, CA, for its owner, the Northern California Indian Development Council, included recreating the missing corner turret and sensitively introducing seismic reinforcement (c) shown here (opposite page) in a secondary upper floor office space. *Photos: Page & Turnbull.*

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Installing seismic or structural reinforcement, when necessary, in a manner that minimizes its impact on the historic fabric and character of the building.	
Replacing in kind or with a compatible substitute material large portions or entire features of the structural system that are either extensively damaged or deteriorated or that are missing when there are surviving prototypes, such as cast-iron columns, trusses, or masonry walls. Substitute material must be structurally sufficient, physically compatible with the rest of the system, and, where visible, must have the same form, design, and appearance as the historic feature.	Using substitute material that does not equal the load-bearing capabilities of the historic material; does not convey the same appearance of the historic material, if it is visible; or is physically incompatible. Installing a visible or exposed structural replacement feature that does not match.
Replacing to match any interior features or finishes that may have to be removed to gain access to make structural repairs, and reusing salvageable material.	

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to **Rehabilitation** *projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.*	
Alterations and Additions for a New Use	
Limiting any new excavations next to historic foundations to avoid undermining the structural stability of the building or adjacent historic buildings. The area next to the building foundation should be investigated first to ascertain potential damage to site features or archeological resources.	Carrying out excavations or regrading land adjacent to a historic building which could cause the historic foundation to settle, shift, or fail, or which could destroy significant archeological resources.
Correcting structural deficiencies needed to accommodate a new use in a manner that preserves the structural system and individual character-defining features.	Making substantial changes to significant interior spaces or damaging or destroying features or finishes that are character defining to correct structural deficiencies.
Designing and installing new mechanical or electrical equipment, when necessary, in a manner that minimizes the number and size of cuts or holes in structural members.	Installing new mechanical or electrical equipment in a manner which reduces the load-bearing capacity of historic structural members.
Inserting a new floor when required for the new use if it does not negatively impact the historic character of the interior space; and if it does not damage the structural system, does not abut window glazing, and is not visible from the exterior of the building.	Inserting a new floor that damages or destroys the structural system or abuts window glazing and is visible from the exterior of the building and, thus, negatively impacts its historic character.
Creating an atrium, light court, or lightwell to provide natural light when required for a new use only when it can be done in a manner that preserves the structural system and the historic character of the building.	Removing structural features to create an atrium, light court, or lightwell if it negatively impacts the historic character of the building.

MECHANICAL SYSTEMS: HEATING, AIR CONDITIONING, ELECTRICAL, AND PLUMBING

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving visible features of early mechanical systems that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building, such as radiators, vents, fans, grilles, and plumbing and lighting fixtures.	Removing or substantially changing visible features of mechanical systems that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished.
Protecting and maintaining mechanical, plumbing, and electrical systems and their features through cyclical maintenance.	Failing to protect and maintain a functioning mechanical system, plumbing, and electrical systems and their visible features on a cyclical basis so that their deterioration results.
Improving the energy efficiency of existing mechanical systems to help reduce the need for a new system by installing storm windows, insulating attics and crawl spaces, or adding awnings, if appropriate.	
Evaluating the overall condition of mechanical systems to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to mechanical system components, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of mechanical system components.
Repairing mechanical systems by augmenting or upgrading system components (such as installing new pipes and ducts), rewiring, or adding new compressors or boilers.	Replacing a mechanical system when its components could be upgraded and retained.
Replacing in kind or with a compatible substitute material those extensively deteriorated or missing visible features of mechanical systems when there are surviving prototypes, such as ceiling fans, radiators, grilles, or plumbing fixtures.	Installing a visible replacement feature of a mechanical system, if it is important in defining the historic character of the building, that does not convey the same appearance.

MECHANICAL SYSTEMS: HEATING, AIR CONDITIONING, ELECTRICAL, AND PLUMBING

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to **Rehabilitation** *projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.*	
Alterations and Additions for a New Use	
Installing a new mechanical system, if required, so that it results in the least alteration possible to the historic building and its character-defining features.	Installing a new mechanical system so that character-defining structural or interior features are radically changed, damaged, or destroyed.
Providing adequate structural support for the new mechanical equipment.	Failing to consider the weight and design of new mechanical equipment so that, as a result, historic structural members or finished surfaces are weakened or cracked.
Installing new mechanical and electrical systems and ducts, pipes, and cables in closets, service areas, and wall cavities to preserve the historic character of the interior space.	Installing systems and ducts, pipes, and cables in walls or ceilings in a manner that results in extensive loss or damage or otherwise obscures historic building materials and character-defining features.
Concealing HVAC ductwork in finished interior spaces, when possible, by installing it in secondary spaces (such as closets, attics, basements, or crawl spaces) or in appropriately-located, furred-down soffits.	Leaving HVAC ductwork exposed in most finished spaces or installing soffits in a location that will negatively impact the historic character of the interior or exterior of the building.
Installing exposed ductwork in a finished space when necessary to protect and preserve decorative or other features (such as column capitals, pressed-metal or ornamental plaster ceilings, coffers, or beams) that is painted, and appropriately located so that it will have minimal impact on the historic character of the space.	Installing exposed ductwork in a finished space when necessary to protect and preserve decorative or other features that is not painted, or is located where it will negatively impact the historic character of the space.
Lowering ceilings, installing a dropped ceiling, or constructing soffits to conceal ductwork in a finished space when this will not result in extensive loss or damage to historic materials or decorative and other features, and will not change the overall character of the space or the exterior appearance of the building (i.e., lowered ceilings or soffits visible through window glazing).	Lowering ceilings, installing a dropped ceiling, or constructing soffits to conceal ductwork in a finished space in a manner that results in extensive loss or damage to historic materials or decorative and other features, and will change the overall character of the space or the exterior appearance of the building.

MECHANICAL SYSTEMS: HEATING, AIR CONDITIONING, ELECTRICAL, AND PLUMBING

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Installing appropriately located, exposed ductwork in historically-unfinished interior spaces in industrial or utilitarian buildings.	
Installing a split system mechanical unit in a manner that will have minimal impact on the historic character of the interior and result in minimal loss of historic building material.	Installing a split system mechanical unit without considering its impact on the historic character of the interior or the potential loss of historic building material.
Installing heating or air conditioning window units only when the installation of any other system would result in significant damage or loss of historic materials or features.	
Installing mechanical equipment on the roof, when necessary, so that it is minimally visible to preserve the building's historic character and setting.	Installing mechanical equipment on the roof that is overly large or highly visible and negatively impacts the historic character of the building or setting.
Placing air conditioning compressors in a location on a secondary elevation of the historic building that is not highly visible.	Placing air conditioning compressors where they are highly visible and negatively impact the historic character of the building or setting.

[34] The new ceiling ducts installed during the conversion of this historic office building into apartments are minimal in design and discretely placed above the windows.

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving a floor plan or interior spaces, features, and finishes that are important in defining the overall historic character of the building. Significant spatial characteristics include the size, configuration, proportion, and relationship of rooms and corridors; the relationship of features to spaces; and the spaces themselves, such as lobbies, lodge halls, entrance halls, parlors, theaters, auditoriums, gymnasiums, and industrial and commercial interiors. Color, texture, and pattern are important characteristics of features and finishes, which can include such elements as columns, plaster walls and ceilings, flooring, trim, fireplaces and mantels, paneling, light fixtures, hardware, decorative radiators, ornamental grilles and registers, windows, doors, and transoms; plaster, paint, wallpaper and wall coverings, and special finishes, such as marbleizing and graining; and utilitarian (painted or unpainted) features, including wood, metal, or concrete exposed columns, beams, and trusses and exposed load-bearing brick, concrete, and wood walls.	Altering a floor plan, or interior spaces (including individual rooms), features, and finishes, which are important in defining the overall historic character of the building so that, as a result, the character is diminished. Altering the floor plan by demolishing principal walls and partitions for a new use. Altering or destroying significant interior spaces by inserting additional floors or lofts; cutting through floors to create lightwells, light courts, or atriums; lowering ceilings; or adding new walls or removing historic walls. Relocating an interior feature, such as a staircase, so that the circulation pattern and the historic relationship between features and spaces are altered. Installing new material that obscures or damages character-defining interior features or finishes. Removing paint, plaster, or other finishes from historically-finished interior surfaces to create a new appearance (e.g., removing plaster to expose brick walls or a brick chimney breast, stripping paint from wood to stain or varnish it, or removing a plaster ceiling to expose unfinished beams). Applying paint, plaster, or other coatings to surfaces that have been unfinished historically, thereby changing their character. Changing the type of finish or its color, such as painting a historically-varnished wood feature, or removing paint from a historically-painted feature.

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Retaining decorative or other character-defining features or finishes that typify the showroom or interior of a historic store, such as a pressed-metal ceiling, a beaded-board ceiling, or wainscoting.	Removing decorative or other character-defining features or finishes that typify the showroom or interior of a historic store, such as a pressed-metal ceiling, a beaded-board ceiling, or wainscoting.
Protecting and maintaining historic materials (including plaster, masonry, wood, and metals) which comprise interior spaces through appropriate surface treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coating systems.	Failing to protect and maintain interior materials and finishes on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of interior features results.
Protecting interior features and finishes against arson and vandalism before project work begins by erecting temporary fencing or by covering broken windows and open doorways, while ensuring adequate ventilation, and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving the building unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected entrances.
Protecting interior features (such as a staircase, mantel, flooring, or decorative finishes) from damage during project work by covering them with plywood, heavy canvas, or plastic sheeting.	Failing to protect interior features and finishes when working on the interior.

[35] (a) Although deteriorated, the historic school corridor, shown on the left, with its character-defining features, including doors and transoms, was retained and repaired as part of the rehabilitation project (b).

[36] The elaborate features and finishes of this historic banking hall in the Union Trust Company Building, in Cleveland, OH, were retained and repaired as part of its conversion into a food market.

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Removing damaged or deteriorated paint and finishes only to the next sound layer using the gentlest method possible prior to repainting or refinishing using compatible paint or other coating systems.	Using potentially damaging methods, such as open-flame torches or abrasive techniques, to remove paint or other coatings. Removing paint that is firmly adhered to interior surfaces.
Using abrasive cleaning methods only on the interior of industrial or warehouse buildings with utilitarian, unplastered masonry walls and where wood features are not finished, molded, beaded, or worked by hand. Low-pressure abrasive cleaning (e.g., sand-blasting or other media blasting) should only be considered if test patches show no surface damage and after gentler methods have proven ineffective.	Using abrasive methods anywhere but utilitarian and industrial interior spaces or when there are other methods that are less likely to damage the surface of the material.
Evaluating the overall condition of the interior materials, features, and finishes to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to features and finishes, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of interior materials, features, and finishes.
Repairing interior features and finishes by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing the materials using recognized preservation methods. Repairs may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing parts of interior features when there are surviving prototypes, such as stairs, balustrades, wood paneling, columns, decorative wall finishes, and ornamental pressed-metal or plaster ceilings. Repairs should be physically and visually compatible.	Removing materials that could be repaired or using improper repair techniques. Replacing an entire interior feature (such as a staircase, mantel, or door surround) or a finish (such as a plaster) when repair of materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.

[37] Exposed and painted ducts were appropriately installed here in a retail space in Denver's historic Union Station after considering other options that would have impacted the ceiling height, or damaged or obscured the ornamental plaster crown molding. *Photo: Heritage Consulting Group.*

[38] The rehabilitation project retained the industrial character of this historic factory building, which included installation of a fire-rated, clear glass enclosure that allows the stairway, an important interior feature, to remain visible.

[39] Leaving the ceiling structure exposed and installing exposed ductwork where it does not impact the windows, are appropriate treatments when rehabilitating an industrial building for another use.

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Replacing in kind an entire interior feature that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature. Examples could include wainscoting, window and door surrounds, or stairs. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.	Removing a character-defining interior feature that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new feature or finish that does not match the historic feature. Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the interior feature or that is physically incompatible. Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the interior feature or that is physically incompatible.
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to **Rehabilitation** *projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.*	
Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features	
Designing and installing a new interior feature or finish when the historic feature or finish is completely missing. This could include missing walls, stairs, mantels, wood trim, and plaster, or even entire rooms if the historic spaces, features, and finishes are missing or have been destroyed by inappropriate alterations. The design may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the feature or finish to be replaced coexisted with the features currently in the building. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the size, scale, material, and color of the historic building.	Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing feature is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation; is not a compatible design; or because the feature did not coexist with the feature currently on the building. Introducing a new interior feature or finish that is incompatible in size, scale, material, color, and finish.
Alterations and Additions for a New Use	
Installing new or additional systems required for a new use for the building, such as bathrooms and mechanical equipment, in secondary spaces to preserve the historic character of the most significant interior spaces.	Subdividing primary spaces, lowering ceilings, or damaging or obscuring character-defining features (such as fireplaces, windows, or stairways) to accommodate a new use for the building.

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Installing new mechanical and electrical systems and ducts, pipes, and cables in closets, service areas, and wall cavities to preserve the historic character of interior spaces, features, and finishes.	Installing ducts, pipes, and cables where they will obscure character-defining features or negatively impact the historic character of the interior.
Creating open work areas, when required by the new use, by selectively removing walls only in secondary spaces, less significant upper floors, or other less-visible locations to preserve primary public spaces and circulation systems.	
Retaining the configuration of corridors, particularly in buildings with multiple floors with repetitive plans (such as office and apartment buildings or hotels), where not only the floor plan is character defining, but also the width and the length of the corridor, doorways, transoms, trim, and other features, such as wainscoting and glazing.	Making extensive changes to the character of significant historic corridors by narrowing or radically shortening them, or removing their character-defining features.
Reusing decorative material or features that had to be removed as part of the rehabilitation work (including baseboards, door casing, paneled doors, and wainscoting) and reusing them in areas where these features are missing or are too deteriorated to repair.	Discarding historic material when it can be reused to replace missing or damaged features elsewhere in the building, or reusing material in a manner that may convey a false sense of history.
Installing permanent partitions in secondary, rather than primary, spaces whenever feasible. Removable partitions or partial-height walls that do not destroy the sense of space often may be installed in large character-defining spaces when required by a new use.	Installing partitions that abut windows and glazing or that damage or obscure character-defining spaces, features, or finishes.
Enclosing a character-defining interior stairway, when required by code, with fire-rated glass walls or large, hold-open doors so that the stairway remains visible and its historic character is retained.	Enclosing a character-defining interior stairway for safety or functional reasons in a manner that conceals it or destroys its character.
Locating new, code-required stairways or elevators in secondary and service areas of the historic building.	Making incompatible changes or damaging or destroying character-defining spaces, features, or finishes when adding new code-required stairways and elevators.

[41] **Not Recommended**: Leaving fragments of deteriorated or "sculpted" plaster is not a compatible treatment for either finished or unfinished interior spaces.

[40] **Not Recommended:** Removing a finished ceiling and leaving the structure exposed in a historic retail space does not meet the Standards for Rehabilitation.

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Creating an atrium, light court, or lightwell to provide natural light when required for a new use only when it can be done in a manner that preserves significant interior spaces, features, and finishes or important exterior elevations.	Destroying or damaging character-defining interior spaces, features, or finishes, or damaging the structural system to create an atrium, light court, or lightwell.
Inserting a new floor, mezzanine, or loft when required for a new use if it does not damage or destroy significant interior features and finishes and is not visible from the exterior of the building.	Inserting a new floor, mezzanine, or loft that damages or destroys significant interior features or abuts window glazing and is visible from the exterior of the building, and, thus, negatively impacts its historic character.
Inserting a new floor, when necessary for a new use, only in large assembly spaces that are secondary to another assembly space in the building; in a space that has been greatly altered; or where character-defining features have been lost or are too deteriorated to repair.	Inserting a new floor in significant, large assembly spaces with distinctive features and finishes, which negatively impacts their historic character.
Installing exposed ductwork in a finished space when necessary to protect and preserve decorative or other features (such as column capitals, ornamental plaster or pressed-metal ceilings, coffers, or beams) that is designed, painted, and appropriately located so that it will have minimal impact on the historic character of the space.	Installing exposed ductwork in a finished space when necessary to protect and preserve decorative or other features that is not painted, or is located where it will negatively impact the historic character of the space.
Lowering ceilings, installing a dropped ceiling, or constructing soffits to conceal ductwork in a finished space when they will not result in extensive loss or damage to historic materials or decorative and other features, and will not change the overall character of the space or the exterior appearance of the building (i.e., lowered ceilings or soffits visible through window glazing).	Lowering ceilings, installing a dropped ceiling, or constructing soffits to conceal ductwork in a finished space in a manner that results in extensive loss or damage to historic materials or decorative and other features, and will change the overall character of the space or the exterior appearance of the building.
Installing a split system mechanical unit in a manner that will have minimal impact on the historic character of the interior and will result in minimal loss of historic building material.	Installing a split system mechanical unit without considering its impact on the historic character of the interior or the potential loss of historic building material.

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving features of the building site that are important in defining its overall historic character. Site features may include walls, fences, or steps; circulation systems, such as walks, paths or roads; vegetation, such as trees, shrubs, grass, orchards, hedges, windbreaks, or gardens; landforms, such as hills, terracing, or berms; furnishings and fixtures, such as light posts or benches; decorative elements, such as sculpture, statuary, or monuments; water features, including fountains, streams, pools, lakes, or irrigation ditches; and subsurface archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds which are also important to the site.	Removing or substantially changing buildings and their features or site features which are important in defining the overall historic character of the property so that, as a result, the character is diminished.

[42] This garden is an important character-defining landscape feature on this college campus.

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Retaining the historic relationship between buildings and the landscape.	Removing or relocating buildings or landscape features, thereby destroying the historic relationship between buildings and the landscape. Removing or relocating buildings on a site or in a complex of related historic structures (such as a mill complex or farm), thereby diminishing the historic character of the site or complex. Moving buildings onto the site, thereby creating an inaccurate historic appearance. Changing the grade level of the site if it diminishes its historic character. For example, lowering the grade adjacent to a building to maximize use of a basement, which would change the historic appearance of the building and its relation to the site.
Protecting and maintaining buildings and site features by providing proper drainage to ensure that water does not erode foundation walls, drain toward the building, or damage or erode the landscape.	Failing to ensure that site drainage is adequate so that buildings and site features are damaged or destroyed; or, alternatively, changing the site grading so that water does not drain properly.
Correcting any existing irrigation that may be wetting the building excessively.	Neglecting to correct any existing irrigation that may be wetting the building excessively.
Minimizing disturbance of the terrain around buildings or elsewhere on the site, thereby reducing the possibility of destroying or damaging important landscape features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.	Using heavy machinery or equipment in areas where it may disturb or damage important landscape features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.
Surveying and documenting areas where the terrain will be altered to determine the potential impact to important landscape features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.	Failing to survey the building site prior to beginning work, which may result in damage or loss of important landscape features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Protecting (e.g., preserving in place) important site features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.	Leaving known site features or archeological material unprotected so that it is damaged during rehabilitation work.
Planning and carrying out any necessary investigation before rehabilitation begins, using professional archeologists and methods, when preservation in place is not feasible.	Allowing unqualified personnel to perform data recovery on archeological resources, which can result in damage or loss of important archeological material
Preserving important landscape features through regularly-scheduled maintenance of historic plant material.	Allowing important landscape features or archeological resources to be lost, damaged, or to deteriorate due to inadequate protection or lack of maintenance
Protecting the building site and landscape features against arson and vandalism before rehabilitation work begins by erecting temporary fencing and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving the property unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins so that the building site and landscape features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds can be damaged or destroyed. Removing or destroying features from the site, such as fencing, paths or walkways, masonry balustrades, or plant material.
Installing protective fencing, bollards, and stanchions on a building site, when necessary for security, that are as unobtrusive as possible.	Installing protective fencing, bollards, and stanchions on a building site, when necessary for security, without taking into consideration their location and visibility so that they negatively impact the historic character of the site.
Providing continued protection and maintenance of buildings and landscape features on the site through appropriate grounds and landscape management.	Failing to protect and maintain materials and features from the restoration period on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of the site results.
Protecting buildings and landscape features when working on the site.	Failing to protect building and landscape features during work on the site or failing to repair damaged or deteriorated site features.

BUILDING SITE

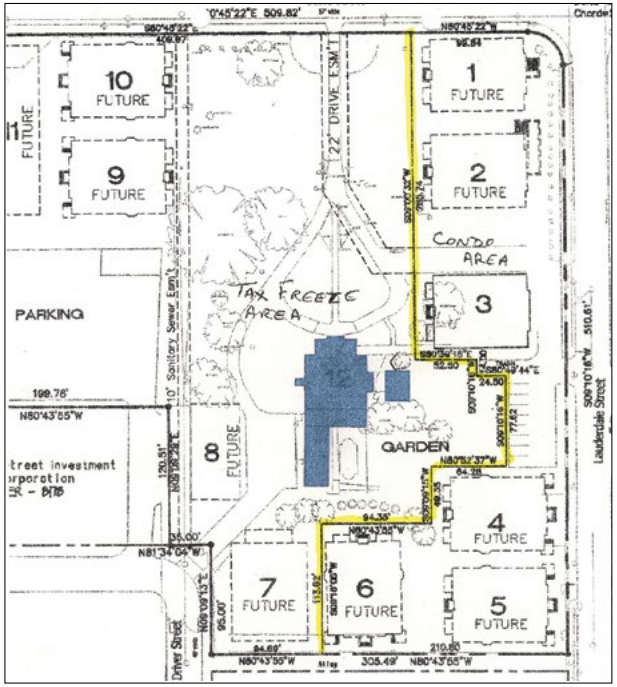
RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Evaluating the overall condition of materials and features to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to site features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of the site.
Repairing historic site features which have been damaged, are deteriorated, or have missing components order reestablish the whole feature and to ensure retention of the integrity of the historic materials. Repairs may include limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing parts of site features when there are surviving prototypes, such as paving, railings, or individual plants within a group (e.g., a hedge). Repairs should be physically and visually compatible.	Removing materials and features that could be repaired or using improper repair techniques. Replacing an entire feature of the site (such as a fence, walkway, or drive) when repair of materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.

[43] The industrial character of the site was retained when this brewery complex was rehabilitated for residential use.

[44] **Not Recommended:** (a-b) The historic character of this plantation house (marked in blue on plan on opposite page) and its site was diminished and adversely impacted when multiple new buildings like this (#3 on plan) were constructed on the property (c).

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Replacing in kind an entire feature of the site that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature. Examples could include a walkway or a fountain, a land form, or plant material. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.	Removing a character-defining feature of the site that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new feature that does not match. Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving site feature or that is physically or ecologically incompatible. Adding conjectural landscape features to the site (such as period reproduction light fixtures, fences, fountains, or vegetation) that are historically inappropriate, thereby creating an inaccurate appearance of the site.



[45] Undertaking a survey to document archeological resources may be considered in some rehabilitation projects when a new exterior addition is planned.

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to **Rehabilitation** *projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.*	
Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features	
Designing and installing a new feature on a site when the historic feature is completely missing. This could include missing outbuildings, terraces, drives, foundation plantings, specimen trees, and gardens. The design may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the feature to be replaced coexisted with the features currently on the site. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the historic character of the building and site.	Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing feature is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation, is not a compatible design, or because the feature did not coexist with the features currently on the site. Introducing a new feature, including plant material, that is visually incompatible with the site or that alters or destroys the historic site patterns or use.
Alterations and Additions for a New Use	
Designing new onsite features (such as parking areas, access ramps, or lighting), when required by a new use, so that they are as unobtrusive as possible, retain the historic relationship between the building or buildings and the landscape, and are compatible with the historic character of the property.	Locating parking areas directly adjacent to historic buildings where vehicles may cause damage to buildings or landscape features or when they negatively impact the historic character of the building site if landscape features and plant materials are removed.
Designing new exterior additions to historic buildings or adjacent new construction that are compatible with the historic character of the site and preserves the historic relationship between the building or buildings and the landscape.	Introducing new construction on the building site which is visually incompatible in terms of size, scale, design, material, or color, which destroys historic relationships on the site, or which damages or destroys important landscape features, such as replacing a lawn with paved parking areas or removing mature trees to widen a driveway.
Removing non-significant buildings, additions, or site features which detract from the historic character of the site.	Removing a historic building in a complex of buildings or removing a building feature or a landscape feature which is important in defining the historic character of the site.
Locating an irrigation system needed for a new or continuing use of the site where it will not cause damage to historic buildings.	Locating an irrigation system needed for a new or continuing use of the site where it will damage historic buildings.

SETTING (DISTRICT / NEIGHBORHOOD)

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving building and landscape features that are important in defining the overall historic character of the setting. Such features can include circulation systems, such as roads and streets; furnishings and fixtures, such as light posts or benches; vegetation, gardens and yards; adjacent open space, such as fields, parks, commons, or woodlands; and important views or visual relationships.	Removing or substantially changing those building and landscape features in the setting which are important in defining the historic character so that, as a result, the character is diminished.

[46] The varied size, shapes, and architectural styles of these historic buildings are unique to this street in Christiansted, St. Croix, USVI, and should be retained in a rehabilitation project.

[47] Original paving stones contribute to the character of the historic setting and distinguish this block from other streets in the district.

[48] Old police and fire call boxes, which are distinctive features in this historic district, have been retained, and now showcase work by local artists.

[49] Low stone walls are character-defining features in this hilly, early-20th-century residential neighborhood.

SETTING (DISTRICT / NEIGHBORHOOD)

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Retaining the historic relationship between buildings and landscape features in the setting. For example, preserving the relationship between a town common or urban plaza and the adjacent houses, municipal buildings, roads, and landscape and streetscape features.	Altering the relationship between the buildings and landscape features in the setting by widening existing streets, changing landscape materials, or locating new streets or parking areas where they may negatively impact the historic character of the setting. Removing or relocating buildings or landscape features, thereby destroying the historic relationship between buildings and the landscape in the setting.

SETTING (DISTRICT / NEIGHBORHOOD)

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Protecting and maintaining historic features in the setting through regularly-scheduled maintenance and grounds and landscape management.	Failing to protect and maintain materials in the setting on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of buildings and landscape features results. Stripping or removing historic features from buildings or the setting, such as a porch, fencing, walkways, or plant material.
Installing protective fencing, bollards, and stanchions in the setting, when necessary for security, that are as unobtrusive as possible.	Installing protective fencing, bollards, and stanchions in the setting, when necessary for security, without taking into consideration their location and visibility so that they negatively impact the historic character of the setting.
Protecting buildings and landscape features when undertaking work in the setting.	Failing to protect buildings and landscape features during work in the setting.
Evaluating the overall condition of materials and features to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to materials and features in the setting, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of materials and features in the setting.
Repairing features in the setting by reinforcing the historic materials. Repairs may include the replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing parts of setting features when there are surviving prototypes, such as fencing, paving materials, trees, and hedgerows. Repairs should be physically and visually compatible.	Failing to repair and reinforce damaged or deteriorated historic materials and features in the setting. Removing material that could be repaired or using improper repair techniques. Replacing an entire feature of the building or landscape in the setting when repair of materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.

SETTING (DISTRICT / NEIGHBORHOOD)

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Replacing in kind an entire building or landscape feature in the setting that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered.	Removing a character-defining feature of the building or landscape from the setting that is unrepairable and not replacing it or replacing it with a new feature that does not match. Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving building or landscape feature in the setting or that is physically or ecologically incompatible.
The following work is highlighted to indicate that it is specific to **Rehabilitation** *projects and should only be considered after the preservation concerns have been addressed.*	
Designing the Replacement for Missing Historic Features	
Designing and installing a new feature of the building or landscape in the setting when the historic feature is completely missing. This could include missing steps, streetlights, terraces, trees, and fences. The design may be an accurate restoration based on documentary and physical evidence, but only when the feature to be replaced coexisted with the features currently in the setting. Or, it may be a new design that is compatible with the historic character of the setting.	Creating an inaccurate appearance because the replacement for the missing feature is based upon insufficient physical or historic documentation; is not a compatible design, or because the feature did not coexist with the features currently in the setting. Introducing a new building or landscape feature that is visually or otherwise incompatible with the setting's historic character (e.g., replacing low metal fencing with a high wood fence).
Alterations and Additions for a New Use	
Designing new features (such as parking areas, access ramps, or lighting), when required by a new use, so that they are as unobtrusive as possible, retain the historic relationships between buildings and the landscape in the setting, and are compatible with the historic character of the setting.	Locating parking areas directly adjacent to historic buildings where vehicles may cause damage to buildings or landscape features or when they negatively impact the historic character of the setting if landscape features and plant materials are removed.
Designing new exterior additions to historic buildings or adjacent new construction that are compatible with the historic character of the setting that preserve the historic relationship between the buildings and the landscape.	Introducing new construction into historic districts which is visually incompatible or that destroys historic relationships within the setting, or which damages or destroys important landscape features.
Removing non-significant buildings, additions, or landscape features which detract from the historic character of the setting.	Removing a historic building, a building feature, or landscape feature which is important in defining the historic character of the setting.

CODE-REQUIRED WORK

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Sensitive solutions to meeting accessibility and life-safety code requirements are an important part of protecting the historic character of the building and site. Thus, work that must be done to meet use-specific code requirements should be considered early in planning a ***Rehabilitation*** *of a historic building for a new use. Because code mandates are directly related to occupancy, some uses require less change than others and, thus, may be more appropriate for a historic building. Early coordination with code enforcement authorities can reduce the impact of alterations necessary to comply with current codes.*	
ACCESSIBILITY	
Identifying the historic building's character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting which may be affected by accessibility code-required work.	Undertaking accessibility code-required alterations before identifying those exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting which are character defining and, therefore, must be preserved.
Complying with barrier-free access requirements in such a manner that the historic building's character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting are preserved or impacted as little as possible.	Altering, damaging, or destroying character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, or features of the site and setting while making modifications to a building, its site, or setting to comply with accessibility requirements.

[50] This kitchen in a historic apartment complex was rehabilitated to meet accessibility requirements.

[51] A new interior access ramp with a simple metal railing is compatible with the character of this mid-century-modern building.

CODE-REQUIRED WORK

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Working with specialists in accessibility and historic preservation to determine the most sensitive solutions to comply with access requirements in a historic building, its site, or setting.	Making changes to historic buildings, their sites, or setting without first consulting with specialists in accessibility and historic preservation to determine the most appropriate solutions to comply with accessibility requirements.
Providing barrier-free access that promotes independence for the user while preserving significant historic features.	Making modifications for accessibility that do not provide independent, safe access while preserving historic features.
Finding solutions to meet accessibility requirements that minimize the impact of any necessary alteration on the historic building, its site, and setting, such as compatible ramps, paths, and lifts.	Making modifications for accessibility without considering the impact on the historic building, its site, and setting.

[52] The access ramp blends in with the stone façade of the First National Bank in Stephenville, TX, and is appropriately located on the side where it is does not impact the historic character of the building. *Photo: Nancy McCoy, QuimbyMcCoy Preservation Architecture, LLP.*

[53] This entrance ramp (right) is compatible with the historic character of this commercial building.

[54] The gently-sloped path in a historic park in Kansas City, MO, which accesses the memorial below, includes a rest area part way up the hill. *Photo: STRATA Architecture + Preservation.*

CODE-REQUIRED WORK

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using relevant sections of existing codes regarding accessibility for historic buildings that provide alternative means of code compliance when code-required work would otherwise negatively impact the historic character of the property.	
Minimizing the impact of accessibility ramps by installing them on secondary elevations when it does not compromise accessibility or by screening them with plantings.	Installing elevators, lifts, or incompatible ramps at a primary entrance, or relocating primary entrances to secondary locations to provide access without investigating other options or locations.
Adding a gradual slope or grade to the sidewalk, if appropriate, to access the entrance rather than installing a ramp that would be more intrusive to the historic character of the building and the district.	
Adding an exterior stair or elevator tower that is compatible with the historic character of the building in a minimally-visible location only when it is not possible to accommodate it on the interior without resulting in the loss of significant historic spaces, features, or finishes.	
Installing a lift as inconspicuously as possible when it is necessary to locate it on a primary elevation of the historic building.	
Installing lifts or elevators on the interior in secondary or less significant spaces where feasible.	Installing lifts or elevators on the interior in primary spaces which will negatively impact the historic character of the space.

[55] The lift is compatible with the industrial character of this former warehouse.

CODE-REQUIRED WORK

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
LIFE SAFETY	
Identifying the historic building's character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting which may be affected by life-safety code-required work.	Undertaking life-safety code-required alterations before identifying those exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting which are character defining and, therefore, must be preserved.
Complying with life-safety codes (including requirements for impact-resistant glazing, security, and seismic retrofit) in such a manner that the historic building's character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting are preserved or impacted as little as possible.	Altering, damaging, or destroying character-defining exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, or features of the site and setting while making modifications to a building, its site, or setting to comply with life-safety code requirements.
Removing building materials only after testing has been conducted to identify hazardous materials, and using only the least damaging abatement methods.	Removing building materials without testing first to identify the hazardous materials, or using potentially damaging methods of abatement.
Providing workers with appropriate personal equipment for protection from hazards on the worksite.	Removing hazardous or toxic materials without regard for workers' health and safety or environmentally-sensitive disposal of the materials.
Working with code officials and historic preservation specialists to investigate systems, methods, or devices to make the building compliant with life-safety codes to ensure that necessary alterations will be compatible with the historic character of the building.	Making life-safety code-required changes to the building without consulting code officials and historic preservation specialists, with the result that alterations negatively impact the historic character of the building.
Using relevant sections of existing codes regarding life safety for historic buildings that provide alternative means of code compliance when code-required work would otherwise negatively impact the historic character of the building.	

[56 a-b] In order to continue in its historic use, the door openings of this 1916 Colonial Revival-style fire station had to be widened to accommodate the larger size of modern fire trucks. Although this resulted in some change to the arched door surrounds, it is minimal and does not negatively impact the historic character of the building. (a) Above, before; *Photo: Fire and Emergency Medical Services Department (FEMS), Washington, D.C.;* below, after.

[57] Workers wear protective clothing while removing lead paint from metal features.

[59] (a-b) The decorative concrete balcony railings on this 1960s building did not meet life-safety code requirements. They were replaced with new glass railings with a fritted glass pattern matching the original design—a creative solution that satisfies codes, while preserving the historic appearance of the building when viewed from the street (c-d). *Photos: (a, b, d) ERA Architects, Inc.; (c) Nathan Cyprys, photographer*.

CODE-REQUIRED WORK

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Upgrading historic stairways and elevators to meet life-safety codes so that they are not damaged or otherwise negatively impacted.	Damaging or making inappropriate alterations to historic stairways and elevators or to adjacent features, spaces, or finishes in the process of doing work to meet code requirements.
Installing sensitively-designed fire-suppression systems, such as sprinklers, so that historic features and finishes are preserved.	Covering character-defining wood features with fire-retardant sheathing, which results in altering their appearance.
Applying fire-retardant coatings when appropriate, such as intumescent paint, to protect steel structural systems.	Using fire-retardant coatings if they will damage or obscure character-defining features.
Adding a new stairway or elevator to meet life-safety code requirements in a manner that preserves adjacent character-defining features and spaces.	Altering, damaging, or destroying character-defining spaces, features, or finishes when adding a new code-required stairway or elevator.
Using existing openings on secondary or less-visible elevations or, if necessary, creating new openings on secondary or less-visible elevations to accommodate second egress requirements.	Using a primary or other highly-visible elevation to accommodate second egress requirements without investigating other options or locations.
Placing a code-required stairway or elevator that cannot be accommodated within the historic building in a new exterior addition located on a secondary or minimally-visible elevation.	Constructing a new addition to accommodate code-required stairs or an elevator on character-defining elevations or where it will obscure, damage, or destroy character-defining features of the building, its site, or setting.
Designing a new exterior stairway or elevator tower addition that is compatible with the historic character of the building.	

[58] Fire doors that retract into the walls have been installed here (not visible in photo) preserve the historic character of this corridor.

RESILIENCE TO NATURAL HAZARDS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Resilience to natural hazards should be addressed as part of the treatment ***Rehabilitation.*** *A historic building may have existing characteristics or features that help address or minimize the impacts of natural hazards. These should be used to best advantage and should be taken into consideration early in the planning stages of a rehabilitation project before proposing any new treatments. When new adaptive treatments are needed they should be carried out in a manner that will have the least impact on the historic character of the building, its site, and setting. .*	
Identifying the vulnerabilities of the historic property to the impacts of natural hazards (such as wildfires, hurricanes, or tornadoes) using the most current climate information and data available.	Failing to identify and periodically reevaluate the potential vulnerability of the building, its site, and setting to the impacts of natural hazards.
Assessing the potential impacts of known vulnerabilities on character-defining features of the building, its site, and setting; and reevaluating and reassessing potential impacts on a regular basis.	
Documenting the property and character-defining features as a record and guide for future repair work, should it be necessary, and storing the documentation in a weatherproof location.	Failing to document the historic property and its character-defining features with the result that such information is not available in the future to guide repair or reconstruction work, should it be necessary.
Ensuring that historic resources inventories and maps are accurate, up to date, and accessible in times of emergency.	
Maintaining the building, its site, and setting in good repair, and regularly monitoring character-defining features.	Failing to regularly monitor and maintain the property and the building systems in good repair.
Using and maintaining existing characteristics and features of the historic building, its site, setting, and larger environment (such as shutters for storm protection or a site wall that keeps out flood waters) that may help to avoid or minimize the impacts of natural hazards	Allowing loss, damage, or destruction to occur to the historic building, its site, or setting by failing to evaluate potential future impacts of natural hazards or to plan and implement adaptive measures, if necessary to address possible threats.
Undertaking work to prevent or minimize the loss, damage, or destruction of the historic property while retaining and preserving significant features and the overall historic character of the building, its site, and setting.	Carrying out adaptive measures intended to address the impacts of natural hazards that are unnecessarily invasive or will otherwise adversely impact the historic character of the building, its site, or setting.

[60] In some instances, it may be necessary to elevate a historic building located in a floodplain to protect it. But this treatment is appropriate only if elevating the building will retain its historic character, including its relationship to the site, and its new height will be compatible with surrounding buildings if in a historic district. The house on the right, which has been raised only slightly, has retained its historic character. The house on the left has been raised several feet higher, resulting in a greater impact on the historic character of the house and the district.

RESILIENCE TO NATURAL HAZARDS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Ensuring that, when planning work to adapt for natural hazards, all feasible alternatives are considered, and that the options requiring the least alteration are considered first.	
Implementing local and regional traditions (such as elevating residential buildings at risk of flooding or reducing flammable vegetation around structures in fire-prone areas) for adapting buildings and sites in response to specific natural hazards, when appropriate. Such traditional methods may be appropriate if they are compatible with the historic character of the building, its site, and setting.	Implementing a treatment traditionally used in another region or one typically used for a different property type or architectural style which is not compatible with the historic character of the property.
Using special exemptions and variances when adaptive treatments to protect buildings from known hazards would otherwise negatively impact the historic character of the building, its site, and setting.	
Considering adaptive options, whenever possible, that would protect multiple historic resources, if the treatment can be implemented without negatively impacting the historic character of the district, or archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.	

Sustainability

Sustainability is usually a very important and integral part of the treatment **Rehabilitation**. Existing energy-efficient features should be taken into consideration early in the planning stages of a rehabilitation project before proposing any energy improvements. There are numerous treatments that may be used to upgrade a historic building to help it operate more efficiently while retaining its character.

The topic of sustainability is addressed in detail in **The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation & Illustrated Guidelines on Sustainability for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings.**

NEW EXTERIOR ADDITIONS TO HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND RELATED NEW CONSTRUCTION

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
New Additions	
Placing functions and services required for a new use (including elevators and stairways) in secondary or non-character-defining interior spaces of the historic building rather than constructing a new addition.	Expanding the size of the historic building by constructing a new addition when requirements for the new use could be met by altering non-character-defining interior spaces.
Constructing a new addition on a secondary or non-character-defining elevation and limiting its size and scale in relationship to the historic building.	Constructing a new addition on or adjacent to a primary elevation of the building which negatively impacts the building's historic character.
Constructing a new addition that results in the least possible loss of historic materials so that character-defining features are not obscured, damaged, or destroyed.	Attaching a new addition in a manner that obscures, damages, or destroys character-defining features of the historic building.
Designing a new addition that is compatible with the historic building.	Designing a new addition that is significantly different and, thus, incompatible with the historic building.
Ensuring that the addition is subordinate and secondary to the historic building and is compatible in massing, scale, materials, relationship of solids to voids, and color.	Constructing a new addition that is as large as or larger than the historic building, which visually overwhelms it (i.e., results in the diminution or loss of its historic character).

NEW EXTERIOR ADDITIONS TO HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND RELATED NEW CONSTRUCTION

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using the same forms, materials, and color range of the historic building in a manner that does not duplicate it, but distinguishes the addition from the original building.	Duplicating the exact form, material, style, and detailing of the historic building in a new addition so that the new work appears to be historic.
Basing the alignment, rhythm, and size of the window and door openings of the new addition on those of the historic building.	
Incorporating a simple, recessed, small-scale hyphen, or connection, to physically and visually separate the addition from the historic building.	
Distinguishing the addition from the original building by setting it back from the wall plane of the historic building.	

[61 a-b] The materials, design, and location at the back of the historic house are important factors in making this a compatible new addition. *Photos: © Maxwell MacKenzie.*

NEW EXTERIOR ADDITIONS TO HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND RELATED NEW CONSTRUCTION

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Ensuring that the addition is stylistically appropriate for the historic building type (e.g., whether it is residential or institutional).	
Considering the design for a new addition in terms of its relationship to the historic building as well as the historic district, neighborhood, and setting.	

[62] The stair tower at the rear of this commercial building is a compatible new addition.

NEW EXTERIOR ADDITIONS TO HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND RELATED NEW CONSTRUCTION

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Rooftop Additions	
Designing a compatible rooftop addition for a multi-story building, when required for a new use, that is set back at least one full bay from the primary and other highly-visible elevations and that is inconspicuous when viewed from surrounding streets.	Constructing a rooftop addition that is highly visible, which negatively impacts the character of the historic building, its site, setting, or district.

[63] (a) A mockup should be erected to demonstrate the visibility of a proposed rooftop addition and its potential impact on the historic building. Based on review of this mockup (orange marker), it was determined that the rooftop addition would meet the Standards (b). The addition is unobtrusive and blends in with the building behind it.

New addition

NEW EXTERIOR ADDITIONS TO HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND RELATED NEW CONSTRUCTION

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Limiting a rooftop addition to one story in height to minimize its visibility and its impact on the historic character of the building.	Constructing a highly-visible, multi-story rooftop addition that alters the building's historic character. Constructing a rooftop addition on low-rise, one- to three-story historic buildings that is highly visible, overwhelms the building, and negatively impacts the historic district. Constructing a rooftop addition with amenities (such as a raised pool deck with plantings, HVAC equipment, or screening) that is highly visible and negatively impacts the historic character of the building.

[64] **Not Recommended:** It is generally not appropriate to construct a rooftop addition on a low-rise, two- to three-story building such as this, because it negatively affects its historic character.

NEW EXTERIOR ADDITIONS TO HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND RELATED NEW CONSTRUCTION

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Related New Construction	
Adding a new building to a historic site or property only if the requirements for a new or continuing use cannot be accommodated within the existing structure or structures.	Adding a new building to a historic site or property when the project requirements could be accommodated within the existing structure or structures.
Locating new construction far enough away from the historic building, when possible, where it will be minimally visible and will not negatively affect the building's character, the site, or setting.	Placing new construction too close to the historic building so that it negatively impacts the building's character, the site, or setting.

[65] (a) This (far left) is a compatible new outbuilding constructed on the site of a historic plantation house (b). Although traditional in design, it is built of wood to differentiate it from the historic house (which is scored stucco) located at the back of the site so as not to impact the historic house, and minimally visible from the public right-of-way (c).

NEW EXTERIOR ADDITIONS TO HISTORIC BUILDINGS AND RELATED NEW CONSTRUCTION

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Designing new construction on a historic site or in a historic setting that it is compatible but differentiated from the historic building or buildings.	Replicating the features of the historic building when designing a new building, with the result that it may be confused as historic or original to the site or setting.
Considering the design for related new construction in terms of its relationship to the historic building as well as the historic district and setting.	
Ensuring that new construction is secondary to the historic building and does not detract from its significance.	Adding new construction that results in the diminution or loss of the historic character of the building, including its design, materials, location, or setting. Constructing a new building on a historic property or on an adjacent site that is much larger than the historic building. Designing new buildings or groups of buildings to meet a new use that are not compatible in scale or design with the character of the historic building and the site, such as apartments on a historic school property that are too residential in appearance.
Using site features or land formations, such as trees or sloping terrain, to help minimize the new construction and its impact on the historic building and property.	
Designing an addition to a historic building in a densely-built location (such as a downtown commercial district) to appear as a separate building or infill, rather than as an addition. In such a setting, the addition or the infill structure must be compatible with the size and scale of the historic building and surrounding buildings—usually the front elevation of the new building should be in the same plane (i.e., not set back from the historic building). This approach may also provide the opportunity for a larger addition or infill when the façade can be broken up into smaller elements that are consistent with the scale of the historic building and surrounding buildings.	

STANDARDS FOR RESTORATION & GUIDELINES FOR RESTORING HISTORIC BUILDINGS

Restoration

Restoration is defined as the act or process of accurately depicting the form, features, and character of a property as it appeared at a particular period of time by means of the removal of features from other periods in its history and reconstruction of missing features from the restoration period. The limited and sensitive upgrading of mechanical, electrical, and plumbing systems and other code-required work to make properties functional is appropriate within a restoration project.

Standards for Restoration

1. A property will be used as it was historically or be given a new use that interprets the property and its restoration period.
2. Materials and features from the restoration period will be retained and preserved. The removal of materials or alteration of features, spaces and spatial relationships that characterize the period will not be undertaken.
3. Each property will be recognized as a physical record of its time, place and use. Work needed to stabilize, consolidate and conserve materials and features from the restoration period will be physically and visually compatible, identifiable upon close inspection and properly documented for future research.
4. Materials, features, spaces and finishes that characterize other historical periods will be documented prior to their alteration or removal.
5. Distinctive materials, features, finishes and construction techniques or examples of craftsmanship that characterize the restoration period will be preserved.
6. Deteriorated features from the restoration period will be repaired rather than replaced. Where the severity of deterioration requires replacement of a distinctive feature, the new feature will match the old in design, color, texture and, where possible, materials.
7. Replacement of missing features from the restoration period will be substantiated by documentary and physical evidence. A false sense of history will not be created by adding conjectural features, features from other properties, or by combining features that never existed together historically.
8. Chemical or physical treatments, if appropriate, will be undertaken using the gentlest means possible. Treatments that cause damage to historic materials will not be used.
9. Archeological resources affected by a project will be protected and preserved in place. If such resources must be disturbed, mitigation measures will be undertaken.
10. Designs that were never executed historically will not be constructed.

GUIDELINES FOR RESTORING HISTORIC BUILDINGS

INTRODUCTION

Restoration is the treatment that should be followed when the expressed goal of the project is to make the building appear as it did at a particular—and at its most significant—time in its history. The guidance provided by the **Standards for Restoration and Guidelines for Restoring Historic Buildings** is to first ***identify*** the materials and features from the *restoration period*. After these materials and features have been identified, they should be maintained, protected, repaired, and replaced, when necessary. Unlike the other treatments in which most, if not all, of the historic elements are retained, restoration will likely include the removal of features from other periods. Missing features from the *restoration period* should be *replaced*, based on physical or historic documentation, with either the same or compatible substitute materials. Only those designs that can be documented as having been built should be recreated in a restoration project.

Identify, Retain, and Preserve Materials and Features from the Restoration Period

The guidance for the treatment **Restoration** begins with recommendations to identify the form and detailing of those architectural materials and features that are significant to the *restoration period* as established by historic research and documentation. Therefore, guidance on ***identifying, retaining, and preserving*** features from the *restoration period* is always given first.

Protect and Maintain Materials and Features from the Restoration Period

After identifying those materials and features from the *restoration period* that must be retained in the process of **Restoration** work, then ***protecting and maintaining*** them are addressed. Protection generally involves the least degree of intervention and is preparatory to other work. Protection includes the maintenance of materials and features from the *restoration period* as well as ensuring that the property is protected before and during restoration work. An overall evaluation of the physical condition of the features from the *restoration period* should always begin at this level.

Repair (Stabilize, Consolidate, and Conserve) Materials and Features from the Restoration Period

Next, when the physical condition of *restoration-period* features requires additional work, repairing by ***stabilizing, consolidating, and conserving*** is recommended. **Restoration** guidance focuses on the preservation of those materials and features that are significant to the period. In **Restoration**, repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of extensively deteriorated or missing components of existing *restoration-period* features when there are surviving prototypes to use as a model.

Replace Extensively Deteriorated Features from the Restoration Period

In **Restoration**, ***replacing*** an entire feature from the *restoration period,* such as a porch, that is too deteriorated to repair may be appropriate. Together with documentary evidence, the form and detailing of the historic feature should be used as a model for the replacement. Using the same kind of material is preferred; however, compatible substitute material may be considered. New work may be unobtrusively dated to guide future research and treatment.

Remove Existing Features from Other Historic Periods

Most buildings change over time, but in **Restoration** the goal is to depict the building as it appeared at the most significant time in its history. Thus, it may involve ***removing*** or altering existing historic features that do not represent the *restoration period*. Materials, features, spaces, and finishes that characterize other historical periods should be documented to guide future research and treatment prior to their alteration or removal.

Recreate Missing Features from the Restoration Period

Most **Restoration** projects involve ***recreating*** features that were significant to the building during the *restoration period*, such as a porch, but are now missing. Missing features to be replaced should be substantiated by documentary and physical evidence to ensure the restoration is accurate. Using the same materials to depict lost features is always the preferred approach; however, using compatible substitute material is an acceptable alternative in **Restoration** because the goal of this treatment is to replicate the *appearance* of the historic building at a particular time.

If documentary and physical evidence are not available to provide an accurate recreation of missing features, the treatment Rehabilitation might be a better overall approach to project work.

Code-Required Work: Accessibility and Life Safety

Sensitive solutions to meeting code requirements in a **Restoration** project are an important part of protecting the historic character of the building. Work that must be done to meet accessibility and life-safety requirements must also be assessed for its potential impact on the historic building as it is restored.

Resilience to Natural Hazards

Resilience to natural hazards should be addressed as part of a **Restoration** project. A historic building may have existing characteristics or features that help to address or minimize the impacts of natural hazards. These should always be used to best advantage when planning new adaptive treatments that have the least impact on the historic character of the building, its site, and setting.

Sustainability

Sustainability should be addressed as part of a **Restoration** project. Good preservation practice is often synonymous with sustainability. Existing energy-efficient features should be retained and repaired. New sustainability treatments should generally be limited to updating existing features and systems to have the least impact on the historic character of the building.

The topic of sustainability is addressed in detail in *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation & Illustrated Guidelines on Sustainability for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings*. Although specifically developed for the treatment Rehabilitation, the Sustainability Guidelines can be used to help guide the other treatments.

Restoration as a Treatment. *When the property's design, architectural, or historical significance during a particular period of time outweighs the potential loss of extant materials, features, spaces, and finishes that characterize other historical periods; when there is substantial physical and documentary evidence for the work; and when contemporary alterations and additions are not planned, Restoration may be considered as a treatment. Prior to undertaking work, a particular period of time, i.e., the restoration period, should be selected and justified, and a documentation plan for Restoration developed.*

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining and preserving masonry features from the restoration period (such as walls, brackets, railings, cornices, window and door surrounds, steps, and columns) and decorative ornament and other details, such as tooling and bonding patterns, coatings, and color.	Altering masonry features from the restoration period. Failing to document masonry features from the restoration period, which may result in their loss. Applying paint or other coatings (such as stucco) to restoration-period masonry features, or removing them, if such treatments cannot be documented to the restoration period. Changing the type of paint or coating or the color of restoration-period masonry features, unless the work can be substantiated by historical documentation.
Protecting and maintaining masonry features from the restoration period by ensuring that historic drainage features and systems that divert rainwater from masonry surfaces (such as roof overhangs, gutters, and downspouts) are intact and functioning properly.	Failing to identify and treat the causes of masonry deterioration, such as leaking roofs and gutters or rising damp.

[1] (a) When it was acquired by the National Trust for Historic Preservation in the 1980s, Montpelier in Montpelier Station, VA, the home of James and Dolley Madison, had been much altered and enlarged since it was first constructed. Based on historical documentation and research, Montpelier was accurately restored to its 1820s appearance when the president and his wife lived there (b). *Photos: Courtesy of The Montpelier Foundation.*

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Cleaning masonry only when necessary to halt deterioration or remove heavy soiling.	Cleaning masonry surfaces from the restoration period when they are not heavily soiled to create a "like-new" appearance, thereby needlessly introducing chemicals or moisture into historic materials.
Carrying out masonry cleaning tests when it has been determined that cleaning is appropriate. Test areas should be examined to ensure that no damage has resulted and, ideally, monitored over a sufficient period of time to allow long-range effects to be predicted.	Cleaning masonry surfaces without testing or without sufficient time for the testing results to be evaluated.
Cleaning soiled restoration-period masonry surfaces with the gentlest method possible, such as using low-pressure water and detergent and natural bristle or other soft-bristle brushes.	Cleaning or removing paint from masonry surfaces from the restoration period using most abrasive methods (including sandblasting, other media blasting, or high-pressure water) which can damage the surface of the masonry and mortar joints. Using a cleaning or paint-removal method that involves water or liquid chemical solutions when there is any possibility of freezing temperatures. Cleaning with chemical products that will damage some types of masonry (such as using acid on limestone or marble), or failing to neutralize or rinse off chemical cleaners from masonry surfaces.
Using biodegradable or environmentally-safe cleaning or paint-removal products.	
Using paint-removal methods that employ a poultice to which paint adheres, when possible, to neatly and safely remove old lead paint.	
Using coatings that encapsulate lead paint, when possible, where paint is not required to be removed to meet environmental regulations.	
Allowing only trained conservators to use abrasive or laser cleaning methods, when necessary, to clean hard-to-reach, highly-carved, or detailed decorative stone features.	

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Removing damaged or deteriorated paint only to the next sound layer using the gentlest method possible (e.g., hand scraping) prior to repainting.	Removing paint that is firmly adhered to masonry surfaces.
Applying compatible paint coating systems to historically-painted, restoration-period masonry following proper surface preparation.	Failing to follow manufacturers' product and application instructions when repainting masonry features.
Repainting historically-painted masonry features with colors that are documented to the restoration period of the building (i.e., verifying through paint analysis).	Using paint colors on historically-painted masonry features that are not documented to the restoration period.
Protecting adjacent restoration-period materials when cleaning or removing paint from masonry features from the restoration period.	Failing to protect adjacent restoration-period materials when cleaning or removing paint from masonry features from the restoration period.
Evaluating the overall condition of masonry from the restoration period to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to masonry features will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of masonry features from the restoration period.
Repairing masonry features from the restoration period by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing the masonry using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of masonry features from the restoration period when there are surviving prototypes (such as terra-cotta brackets or stone balusters) or when the replacement can be based on physical or historic documentation. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Removing masonry from the restoration period that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants and unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to materials.

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Repairing masonry walls and other masonry features from the restoration period by repointing the mortar joints where there is evidence of deterioration, such as disintegrating mortar, cracks in mortar joints, loose bricks, or damaged plaster.	
Removing deteriorated lime mortar from the restoration period carefully by hand raking the joints to avoid damaging the masonry.	Removing restoration-period mortar that is not deteriorated from sound joints.

[2] (a) Decatur House in Washington, DC, was designed by William Henry Latrobe and constructed in 1816. (b) In the late-19th century, the façade was "modernized" by removing the limestone lintels on the first floor and replacing them with decorative sandstone lintels in the style of the period. (c) In the mid-20th century, the house was brought back to its original appearance based on historic documentation. Photos: The White House Historical Association and Decatur House, a National Trust Site.

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using power tools only on horizontal joints on restoration-period brick masonry in conjunction with hand chiseling to remove hard mortar that is deteriorated or that is a non-historic material which is causing damage to the masonry units. Mechanical tools should be used only by skilled masons in limited circumstances and generally not on short, vertical joints in brick masonry.	Allowing unskilled workers to use masonry saws or mechanical tools to remove deteriorated mortar from joints prior to repointing.
Duplicating historic mortar joints in strength, composition, color, and texture when repointing is necessary. In some cases, a lime-based mortar may also be considered when repointing Portland cement mortar joints because it is more flexible.	Repointing masonry units with mortar of high Portland cement content (unless it is the content of the mortar from the restoration period).
Duplicating restoration-period mortar joints in width and joint profile when repointing is necessary.	Using "surface grouting" or a "scrub" coating technique, such as a "sack rub" or "mortar washing," to repoint exterior masonry units from the restoration period instead of traditional repointing methods. Changing the width or joint profile when repointing masonry from the restoration period.

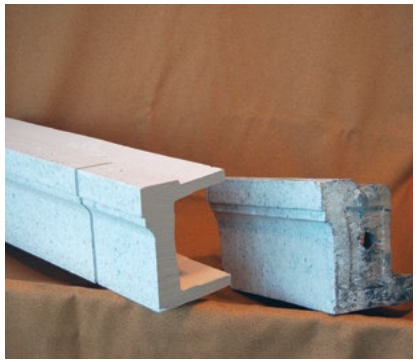
[3] **Not Recommended:** Although the Dutchman stone repair has been well executed, the replacement stone is not a good color match.

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Repairing stucco from the restoration period by removing the damaged material and patching with new material that duplicates the historic stucco in strength, composition, color, and texture.	Removing sound stucco from the restoration period or repairing with new stucco that is different in composition from the historic stucco. Patching stucco or concrete from the restoration period without removing the source of deterioration. Replacing deteriorated stucco from the restoration period with synthetic stucco, an exterior finish and insulation system (EFIS), or other non-traditional materials.
Using mud plaster or a compatible lime-plaster adobe render, when appropriate, to repair adobe from the restoration period.	Applying cement stucco, unless it already exists, to adobe from the restoration period.
Sealing joints in concrete from the restoration period with appropriate flexible sealants and backer rods, when necessary.	Repointing masonry units from the restoration period (other than concrete) with a synthetic caulking compound instead of mortar.
Cutting damaged concrete from the restoration period back to remove the source of deterioration, such as corrosion on metal reinforcement bars. The new patch must be applied carefully so that it will bond satisfactorily with and match the historic concrete.	Patching concrete from the restoration period without removing the source of deterioration.
Using a non-corrosive, stainless-steel anchoring system when replacing damaged stone, concrete, or terra-cotta units from the restoration period that have failed.	
Repairing masonry features from the restoration period by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing the masonry using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of masonry features from the restoration period when there are surviving prototypes (such as terra-cotta brackets or stone balusters) or when the replacement can be based on physical or historic documentation. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Removing masonry from the restoration period that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants, improper repair techniques, or unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to materials. Replacing an entire masonry feature from the restoration period, such as a cornice or balustrade, when repair of the masonry and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are appropriate.

[4] (a) Over the years terra-cotta cladding had been replaced on the lower floors of this early-20th century bank building with a storefront and incompatible windows. (b) A 1936 photograph of the building provided the documentation to restore its historic appearance. (c) Glass fiber reinforced plastic (GRFP) was chosen as a substitute material, and samples were made in a variety of colors and textures to obtain the best match for the missing and damaged terra cotta. (d) This photo taken after restoration shows that the GFRP replacements successfully blend in with the original terra cotta. *Photo (d): Blamonet at English Wikipedia.*

(a)



(c)

(d)

(b)

MASONRY: STONE, BRICK, TERRA COTTA, CONCRETE, ADOBE, STUCCO, AND MORTAR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Applying non-historic surface treatments, such as water-repellent coatings, to masonry from the restoration period only after repointing and only if masonry repairs have failed to arrest water penetration problems.	Applying waterproof, water-repellent, or other coatings that are not from the restoration period (such as stucco) to masonry as a substitute for repointing and masonry repairs.
Applying permeable, anti-graffiti coatings to masonry from the restoration period when appropriate.	Applying water-repellent or anti-graffiti coatings that change the historic appearance of the masonry from the restoration period or that may trap moisture if the coating is not sufficiently permeable.
Replacing in kind an entire masonry feature from the restoration period that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature. Examples can include a large section of a wall, a cornice, balustrade, pier, or parapet. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered. The new work may be unobtrusively dated to guide future research and treatment.	Removing a masonry feature from the restoration period that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new feature that does not match. Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the masonry.
The following **Restoration** *work is highlighted to indicate that it involves the removal or alteration of existing historic masonry features that would be retained in Preservation and Rehabilitation treatments; and the replacement of missing masonry features from the restoration period using all new materials.*	
Removing Existing Features from Other Historic Periods	
Removing masonry features from other historic periods, such as a door surround, porch, or steps.	Failing to remove a masonry feature from another period, thereby confusing the depiction of the building's appearance from the restoration period.
Documenting masonry features dating from other periods prior to their alteration or removal. If possible, selected examples of these features or materials should be stored for future research.	Failing to document masonry features from other historic periods that are removed from the building so that a valuable portion of the historic record is lost.
Recreating Missing Features from the Restoration Period	
Recreating a missing masonry feature that existed during the restoration period based on documentary and physical evidence; for example, duplicating a terra-cotta bracket or stone balustrade. The new work may be unobtrusively dated to guide future research and treatment.	Constructing a masonry feature that was part of the original design for the building but was never actually built, or a feature which was thought to have existed during the restoration period but which cannot be documented.

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving wood features from the restoration period (such as siding, cornices, brackets, window and door surrounds, and steps) and their paints, finishes, and colors.	Altering wood features from the restoration period. Failing to document wood features from the restoration period, which may result in their loss. Applying paint or other coatings to restoration-period wood features, or removing them, if such treatments cannot be documented to the restoration period. Changing the type of paint or coating or the color of restoration-period wood features, unless the work can be substantiated by historical documentation.
Protecting and maintaining wood features from the restoration period by ensuring that historic drainage features that divert rainwater from wood surfaces (such as roof overhangs, gutters, and downspouts) are intact and functioning properly.	Failing to identify and treat the causes of wood deterioration, such as faulty flashing, leaking gutters, cracks and holes in siding, deteriorated caulking in joints and seams, plant material growing too close to wood surfaces, or insect or fungal infestation.
Applying chemical preservatives or paint to wood features from the restoration period that are subject to weathering, such as exposed beam ends, outriggers, or rafter tails.	Using chemical preservatives that can change the appearance of wood features from the restoration period.
Implementing an integrated pest management plan to identify appropriate preventive measures to guard against insect damage, such as installing termite guards, fumigating, and treating with chemicals.	
Retaining coatings from the restoration period (such as paint) that protect the wood from moisture and ultraviolet light. Paint removal should be considered only when there is paint surface deterioration and as part of an overall maintenance program which involves repainting or applying other appropriate coatings.	Stripping restoration-period paint or other coatings from wood features without recoating them.
Using biodegradable or environmentally-safe cleaning or paint-removal products.	

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using thermal devices (such as infrared heaters) carefully to remove paint, when it is so deteriorated that total removal is necessary prior to repainting.	Using a thermal device to remove paint from wood features without first checking for and removing any flammable debris behind them. Using thermal devices without limiting the amount of time the wood is exposed to heat.
Using paint-removal methods that employ a poultice to which paint adheres, when possible, to neatly and safely remove old lead paint.	
Using coatings that encapsulate lead paint, when possible, where the paint is not required to be removed to meet environmental regulations.	
Using chemical strippers primarily to supplement other methods such as hand scraping, hand sanding, and thermal devices.	Failing to neutralize the wood thoroughly after using chemical paint removers so that new paint may not adhere. Removing paint from detachable, restoration-period wood features by soaking them in a caustic solution which can roughen the surface, split the wood, or result in staining from residual acid leaching out through the wood.
Removing damaged or deteriorated paint to the next sound layer using the gentlest method possible (e.g., hand scraping and hand sanding) prior to repainting.	Using potentially-damaging paint-removal methods on restoration-period wood surfaces, such as open-flame torches, orbital sanders, abrasive methods (including sandblasting, other media blasting, or high-pressure water), or caustic paint-removers. Removing paint that is firmly adhered to wood surfaces.
Applying compatible paint coating systems to historically-painted wood following proper surface preparation.	Failing to follow manufacturers' product and application instructions when repainting wood features from the restoration period.
Repainting historically-painted wood features with colors that are documented to the restoration period of the building (i.e., verifying through paint analysis).	Using paint colors on historically-painted wood features that are not documented to the restoration period.

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Protecting adjacent restoration-period materials when cleaning or removing paint from wood features from the restoration period.	Failing to protect adjacent restoration-period materials when cleaning or removing paint from wood features from the restoration period.
Evaluating the overall condition of wood features from the restoration period to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to wood features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of wood features from the restoration period.
Repairing wood features from the restoration period by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing the wood using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of features from the restoration period when there are surviving prototypes (such as brackets, molding, or sections of siding) or when the replacement can be based on physical or historic documentation. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Removing wood features from the restoration period that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using untested consolidants or unskilled personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials. Replacing an entire wood feature from the restoration period, such as a cornice or porch railing, when repair of the wood and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are appropriate.
Replacing in kind an entire wood feature from the restoration period that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. Examples can include a cornice, entablature, or a balustrade. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered. The new work may be unobtrusively dated to guide future research and treatment.	Removing a wood feature from the restoration period that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new feature that does not match. Using substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the wood feature from the restoration period or that is physically incompatible.

WOOD: CLAPBOARD, WEATHERBOARD, SHINGLES, AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL AND DECORATIVE ELEMENTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
The following **Restoration** *work is highlighted to indicate that it involves the removal or alteration of existing historic masonry features that would be retained in Preservation and Rehabilitation treatments; and the replacement of missing wood features from the restoration period using all new materials.*	
Removing Existing Features from Other Historic Periods	
Removing wood features from other historic periods, such as a door surround, porch, or steps.	Failing to remove a wood feature from another period, thereby confusing the depiction of the building's appearance from the restoration period.
Documenting wood features dating from other periods prior to their alteration or removal. If possible, selected examples of these features or materials should be stored for future research.	Failing to document wood features from other historic periods that are removed from the building so that a valuable portion of the historic record is lost.
Recreating Missing Features from the Restoration Period	
Recreating a missing wood feature that existed during the restoration period based on documentary and physical evidence; for example, duplicating a wood dormer or porch	Constructing a wood feature that was part of the original design for the building but was never actually built, or a feature which was thought to have existed during the restoration period but cannot be documented.

[5] New wood trim pieces were milled to match the few remaining historic features to replace those that were missing.

METALS: WROUGHT AND CAST IRON, STEEL, PRESSED METAL, TERNEPLATE, COPPER, ALUMINUM, AND ZINC

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving metal features from the restoration period (such as columns, capitals, pilasters, spandrel panels, or stairways) and their finishes and colors. The type of metal should be identified prior to work because each metal has its own properties and may require a different treatment.	Altering metal features from the restoration period. Failing to document metal features from the restoration period, which may result in their loss. Applying paint or other coatings to restoration-period metal features, or removing them, if such treatments cannot be documented to the restoration period. Changing the type of paint or coating or the color of restoration-period metal features, unless the work can be substantiated by historical documentation.
Protecting and maintaining metals from the restoration period from corrosion by providing proper drainage so that water does not stand on flat, horizontal surfaces or accumulate in curved decorative features.	Failing to identify and treat the causes of corrosion of restoration-period metal features such as moisture from leaking roofs or gutters.
Cleaning metals from the restoration period, when necessary, to remove corrosion prior to repainting or applying other appropriate protective coatings.	Failing to reapply coating systems after cleaning metals from the restoration period that require protection from corrosion. Removing the patina from restoration-period metal features. The patina may be a protective layer on some metals (such as bronze or copper) as well as a distinctive finish.
Identifying the particular type of metal from the restoration period prior to any cleaning procedure and then testing to ensure that the gentlest cleaning method possible is selected; or alternatively, determining that cleaning is inappropriate for the particular metal.	Using cleaning methods which alter or damage the restoration-period color, texture, and finish of the metal, or cleaning when it is inappropriate for the metal.
Using non-corrosive chemical methods to clean soft metals from the restoration period (such as lead, tinplate, terneplate, copper, and zinc) whose finishes can be easily damaged by abrasive methods.	Cleaning soft metals from the restoration period (such as lead, tinplate, terneplate, copper, and zinc) with abrasive methods (including sandblasting, other media blasting, or high-pressure water) which will damage the surface of the metal.

METALS: WROUGHT AND CAST IRON, STEEL, PRESSED METAL, TERNEPLATE, COPPER, ALUMINUM, AND ZINC

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using the least abrasive cleaning method on hard metals from the restoration period (such as cast iron, wrought iron, and steel) to remove paint buildup and corrosion. If hand scraping and wire brushing have Using the least abrasive cleaning method on hard metals from the restoration period (such as cast iron, wrought iron, and steel) to remove paint buildup and corrosion. If hand scraping and wire brushing have proven ineffective, low-pressure abrasive methods may be used as long as they do not damage the surface.	Using high-pressure abrasive techniques without first trying gentler cleaning methods prior to cleaning cast iron, wrought iron, or steel.
Applying appropriate paint or other coating systems to historically-painted, restoration-period metal features after cleaning to protect them from corrosion.	Applying paint or other coatings to metals (such as copper, bronze, or stainless steel) if they were not coated during the restoration period.
Repainting historically-painted metal features with colors that are documented to the restoration period of the building (i.e., verifying through paint analysis).	Using paint colors on historically-painted metal features that are not documented to the restoration period of the building.
Applying an appropriate protective coating (such as lacquer or wax) to an architectural metal feature that was historically unpainted, such as a bronze door, that is subject to heavy use.	
Protecting adjacent restoration-period materials when working on metal features from the restoration period.	Failing to protect adjacent restoration-period materials when working on metal features from the restoration period.
Evaluating the overall condition of metals from the restoration period to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to metal features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of metal features from the restoration period.
Repairing metal features from the restoration period by reinforcing the metal by using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing parts of features when there are surviving prototypes (such as porch balusters, column capitals or bases, storefronts, railings, or porch cresting) or when the replacement can be based on physical or historic documentation. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Removing metal features from the restoration period that could be stabilized, repaired, and conserved, or using improper repair techniques, or untrained personnel, potentially causing further damage to historic materials. Replacing an entire metal feature from the restoration period, such as a column or balustrade, when repair of the metal and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are appropriate.

[6] Preliminary work before starting restoration revealed that the columns and the decorative shingles ornamenting the top floor of this historic building were fabricated of metal to imitate the red sandstone used elsewhere on the building.

METALS: WROUGHT AND CAST IRON, STEEL, PRESSED METAL, TERNEPLATE, COPPER, ALUMINUM, AND ZINC

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Replacing in kind an entire metal feature from the restoration period that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. Examples of such a feature could include cast-iron porch steps or steel-sash windows. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered as long as it has the same appearance as the original. The new work may be unobtrusively dated to guide future research and treatment.	Removing a metal feature from the restoration period that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new feature that does not match. Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the metal feature from the restoration period or that is physically or chemically incompatible.
The following **Restoration** *work is highlighted to indicate that it involves the removal or alteration of existing historic masonry features that would be retained in Preservation and Rehabilitation treatments; and the replacement of missing metal features from the restoration period using all new materials.*	
Removing Existing Features from Other Historic Periods	
Removing metal features from other historic periods, such as a cast-iron porch railing or aluminum windows.	Failing to remove a metal feature from another period, thereby confusing the depiction of the building's appearance from the restoration period.
Documenting metal features dating from other periods prior to their alteration or removal. If possible, selected examples of these features or materials should be stored for future research.	Failing to document metal features from other historic periods that are removed from the building so that a valuable portion of the historic record is lost.
Recreating Missing Features from the Restoration Period	
Recreating a missing metal feature that existed during the restoration period based on documentary and physical evidence; for example, duplicating a cast-iron storefront or porch.	Constructing a metal feature that was part of the original design for the building but was never actually built, or a feature which was thought to have existed during the restoration period but cannot be documented.

ROOFS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving roofs from the restoration period and their functional and decorative features. The form of the roof (gable, hipped, gambrel, flat, or mansard) is significant, as are its decorative and functional features (such as cupolas, cresting, parapets, monitors, chimneys, weather vanes, dormers, ridge tiles, and snow guards), roofing materials (such as slate, wood, clay tile, metal, roll roofing, or asphalt shingles) and size, color, and patterning.	Altering roof and roofing materials from the restoration period. Failing to document roof features from the restoration period, which may result in their loss. Changing the type of paint or coating or the color of restoration-period roof features, unless the work can be substantiated by historical documentation. Stripping the roof of sound historic roofing material (such as slate, clay tile, wood, or metal) from the restoration period.
Protecting and maintaining a roof from the restoration period by cleaning gutters and downspouts and replacing deteriorated flashing. Roof sheathing should also be checked for indications of moisture due to leaks or condensation.	Failing to clean and maintain gutters and downspouts so that water and debris collect and cause damage to roof fasteners, sheathing, and the underlying structure.
Providing adequate anchorage for roofing material from the restoration period to guard against wind damage and moisture penetration.	Allowing flashing, caps, and exposed roof fasteners to corrode, which accelerates deterioration.
Protecting a leaking roof with a temporary waterproof membrane with a synthetic underlayment, roll roofing, plywood, or a tarpaulin until it can be repaired.	Leaving a leaking roof unprotected so that accelerated deterioration of historic building materials from the restoration period (such as masonry, wood, plaster, paint, and structural members) results.
Repainting a roofing material from the restoration period that requires a protective coating and was painted historically (such as a terneplate metal roof or gutters) as part of regularly-scheduled maintenance.	Failing to repaint a roofing material from the restoration period that requires a protective coating and was painted historically as part of regularly-scheduled maintenance.
Protecting a restoration-period roof covering when working on other roof features from the restoration period.	Failing to protect restoration-period roof coverings when working on other roof features from the restoration period.
Evaluating the overall condition of the roofing materials from the restoration period to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to roof features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of roof features from the restoration period.

[7 a-b] This crumbling chimney was restored to its historic appearance using matching bricks.

[8] The missing steeple of this historic church was replaced with a new steeple made of a substitute material that, from the street below, closely resembles the original steeple. *Photo: en.Wikipedia.*

ROOFS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Repairing a roof from the restoration period by reinforcing the materials that comprise the roof using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of features when there are surviving prototypes (such as cupola louvers, cresting, dormer roofing, roof monitors, or slate or tile on a main roof) or when replacement can be based on physical or historic documentation. The new work should match the old in materials, design, scale, color, and finish.	Replacing an entire roof feature from the restoration period, such as a dormer, when repair of the roofing materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible. Failing to reuse intact slate or tile from the restoration period when only the roofing substrate or fasteners need replacement.
Replacing in kind an entire roof covering or feature from the restoration period that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. Examples of such a feature could include a large section of roofing, a dormer, or a chimney. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be appropriate.	Removing a roof feature from the restoration period that is unrepairable, such as a chimney or dormer, and not replacing it, or replacing it with a feature that does not match. Using a substitute material for the replacement of a single element of a roof (such as a tile or slate) or an entire feature that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the roof feature from the restoration period or that is physically or chemically incompatible.
The following **Restoration** *work is highlighted to indicate that it involves the removal or alteration of existing historic masonry features that would be retained in Preservation and Rehabilitation treatments; and the replacement of missing roof features from the restoration period using all new materials.*	
Removing Existing Features from Other Historic Periods	
Removing roofs or roof features from other historic periods, such as a dormer or asphalt roofing.	Failing to remove a roof feature from another period, thereby confusing the depiction of the building's appearance from the restoration period.
Documenting roof features dating from other periods prior to their alteration or removal. If possible, selected examples of these features or materials should be stored for future research.	Failing to document roofing materials and roof features from other historic periods that are removed from the building so that a valuable portion of the historic record is lost.
Recreating Missing Features from the Restoration Period	
Recreating a missing roofing material or roof feature that existed during the restoration period based on documentary and physical evidence; for example, duplicating a former dormer or cupola.	Constructing a roof feature that was part of the original design for the building but was never actually built, or a feature which was thought to have existed during the restoration period but cannot be documented.

WINDOWS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving windows from the restoration period and their functional and decorative features. The window material and how the window operates (e.g., double hung, casement, awning, or hopper) are significant, as are its components (including sash, muntins, ogee lugs, glazing, pane configuration, sills, mullions, hardware, casings or brick molds) and related features, such as shutters.	Altering windows or window features from the restoration period. Failing to document window features from the restoration period, which may result in their loss. Applying paint or other coatings to restoration-period window features, or removing them, if such treatments cannot be documented to the restoration period. Changing the type of paint or coating or the color of restoration-period windows, unless the work can be substantiated by historical documentation. Stripping windows of sound historic material (such as wood or metal) from the restoration period.
Conducting an in-depth survey of the condition of existing windows from the restoration period early in the planning process so that repair, upgrading, and, if necessary, possible replacement options can be fully explored.	Replacing windows from the restoration period solely because of peeling paint, broken glass, stuck sash, or high air infiltration. These conditions, in themselves, do not indicate that windows are beyond repair.
Protecting and maintaining the restoration-period wood or metal which comprises the window jamb, sash, and trim through appropriate surface treatments such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of the same protective coatings.	Failing to protect and maintain window materials from the restoration period on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of the window results.
Protecting windows from the restoration period against vandalism before work begins by covering them and by installing alarm systems that are keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving windows unprotected before work begins, thereby also allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected windows.
Installing impact-resistant glazing, when necessary for security, so that it is compatible with the historic windows from the restoration period and does not damage them or negatively impact their character.	Installing impact-resistant glazing, when necessary, for security that is not compatible with the historic windows from the restoration period and damages them or negatively impacts their character.

WINDOWS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Protecting restoration-period windows when working on other features of the building.	Failing to protect restoration-period windows when working on other features of the building.
Protecting and retaining historic glass from the restoration period when replacing putty or repairing other components of the window.	Failing to protect historic glass from the restoration period when making repairs.
Sustaining the historic operability of windows from the restoration period by lubricating friction points and replacing broken components of the operating system (such as hinges, latches, sash chains or cords) and replacing deteriorated gaskets or insulating units.	Failing to maintain windows and window components from the restoration period so that windows are inoperable, or sealing operable sash permanently. Failing to repair and reuse window hardware from the restoration period, such as sash lifts, latches, and locks.
Evaluating the overall condition of windows from the restoration period to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to windows and window features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of window features from the restoration period.
Repairing window frames and sash from the restoration period by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing them using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated, broken, or missing components of windows when there are surviving prototypes (such as sash, sills, hardware, or shutters) or when the replacement can be based on physical or historic documentation. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Replacing an entire window from the restoration period when repair of materials and limited replacement in kind are appropriate. Removing a window from the restoration period that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new window that does not match.

[9] Historic window and shutter hardware such as that shown here should be retained and repaired in a restoration project.

WINDOWS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Replacing in kind an entire window from the restoration period that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered. The new work may be unobtrusively dated to guide future research and treatment.	Removing a window from the restoration period that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new window that does not match. Using substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the window from the restoration period or that is physically incompatible.
The following **Restoration** *work is highlighted to indicate that it involves the removal or alteration of existing historic masonry features that would be retained in Preservation and Rehabilitation treatments; and the replacement of missing window features from the restoration period using all new materials.*	
Removing Existing Features from Other Historic Periods	
Removing windows or window features from other historic period, such as the glazing pattern or inappropriate shutters.	Failing to remove a window or window feature from another period, thereby confusing the depiction of the building's appearance from the restoration period.
Documenting window features dating from other periods prior to their alteration or removal. If possible, selected examples of these features or materials should be stored for future research.	Failing to document window features from other historic periods that are removed from the building so that a valuable portion of the historic record is lost.
Recreating Missing Features from the Restoration Period	
Recreating a missing window or window feature that existed during the restoration period based on documentary and physical evidence; for example, duplicating a hoodmold or shutter.	Constructing a window feature that was part of the original design for the building but was never actually built, or constructing a feature which was thought to have existed during the restoration period but cannot be documented.

ENTRANCES AND PORCHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving entrances and porches from the restoration period and their functional and decorative features. The materials themselves (including wood, masonry, and metal) are important, as are their features, such as doors, transoms, pilasters, columns, balustrades, stairs, roofs, and projecting canopies.	Altering entrances and porch features from the restoration period. Failing to document entrance and porch features from the restoration period, which may result in their loss. Applying paint or other coatings to restoration-period entrance and porch features, or removing them, if such treatments cannot be documented to the restoration period. Changing the type of paint or coating or the color of restoration-period entrance and porch features, unless the work can be substantiated by historical documentation. Stripping entrances and porches of sound material from the restoration period, such as wood, cast iron, tile, or brick.
Protecting and maintaining the masonry, wood, and metals which comprise entrances and porches from the restoration period through appropriate surface treatments, such as cleaning, rust removal, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coatings.	Failing to protect and maintain materials from the restoration period on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of the entrance or porch results.
Protecting entrances and porches against arson and vandalism before work begins by covering them and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving entrances and porches unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby also allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected entrances.
Protecting entrance and porch features from the restoration period when working on other features of the building.	Failing to protect entrances and porches from the restoration period when working on other features of the building.
Evaluating the overall condition of entrances and porches from the restoration period to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to entrance and porch features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of entrance and porch features from the restoration period.

ENTRANCES AND PORCHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Repairing entrances and porches from the restoration period by reinforcing them or replacing deteriorated materials using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of features when there are surviving prototypes (such as balustrades, columns, and stairs) or when the replacement can be based on physical or historic documentation. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Replacing an entire entrance or porch feature from the restoration period when the repair of materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.

[10] (a) The entrance of this house had been altered over the years, including removal of the porch floor and steps. (b) This photograph shows the house after the porch and steps were restored to their historic appearance.

ENTRANCES AND PORCHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Replacing in kind an entire entrance or porch from the restoration period that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered. The new work may be unobtrusively dated to guide future research and treatment.	Removing an entrance or porch feature from the restoration period that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing with a new entrance or porch that does not match. Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of restoration-period entrance or porch features or that is otherwise incompatible.
The following **Restoration** *work is highlighted to indicate that it involves the removal or alteration of existing historic entrances and porches or their features that would be retained in Preservation and Rehabilitation treatments; and the replacement of missing entrances and porches or their features from the restoration period using all new materials.*	
Removing Existing Features from Other Historic Periods	
Removing entrances and porches and their features from other historic periods, such as a porch railing.	Failing to remove an entrance or porch feature from another period, thereby confusing the depiction of the building's appearance from the restoration period.
Documenting entrance and porch features dating from other periods prior to their alteration or removal. If possible, selected examples of these features or materials should be stored for future research.	Failing to document entrance and porch features from other historic periods that are removed from the building so that a valuable portion of the historic record is lost.
Recreating Missing Features from the Restoration Period	
Recreating a missing entrance or porch or its features that existed during the restoration period based on documentary and physical evidence; for example, duplicating a transom or porch column.	Constructing an entrance or porch feature that was part of the original design for the building but was never actually built, or constructing a feature which was thought to have existed during the restoration period but cannot be documented.

STOREFRONTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving storefronts from the restoration period and their functional and decorative features. The storefront materials (including wood, masonry, metals, ceramic tile, clear glass, and pigmented structural glass) and the configuration of the storefront are significant, as are its features, such as display windows, base panels, bulkheads, signs, doors, transoms, kick plates, corner posts, piers, and entablatures.	Altering storefronts and their features from the restoration period. Failing to document storefront features from the restoration period, which may result in their loss. Applying paint or other coatings to restoration-period storefront features, or removing them, if such treatments cannot be documented to the restoration period. Changing the type of paint or coating or the color of restoration-period storefront features, unless the work can be substantiated by historical documentation. Stripping storefronts of material from the restoration period, such as wood, cast iron, ceramic tile, pigmented structural glass, or masonry.
Protecting and maintaining masonry, wood, glass, ceramic tile, and metals which comprise storefronts from the restoration period through appropriate surface treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coatings.	Failing to protect and maintain storefront materials from the restoration period on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of storefront features results. Replacing storefront windows from the restoration period rather than maintaining all the components of the window system.
Protecting storefronts against arson and vandalism before work begins by covering windows and doors and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving the storefront unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby also allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected entrances.
Protecting restoration-period storefront features when working on other features of the building.	Failing to protect the restoration-period storefront when working on other features of the building.
Evaluating the overall condition of the storefront from the restoration period to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to storefront features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of storefront features from the restoration period.

[11] (a) Some of the materials on the front of this historic building had been previously replaced, but the façade retained its essential distinctive features and design. (b) A vintage postcard of the building (far left) provided sufficient documentation to restore the façade to its historic 1945 appearance, using spandrel glass as a replacement for the original Carrara glass (c). *Photo (b): Courtesy Kelsey & Associates.*

STOREFRONTS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Repairing storefronts from the restoration period by reinforcing them or replacing deteriorated materials using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with compatible substitute materials of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of features when there are surviving prototypes (such as transoms, pilasters, or signs) or when the replacement can be based on physical or historic documentation. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Replacing an entire storefront from the restoration period when repair of materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.
Replacing in kind an entire storefront from the restoration period that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered. The new work may be unobtrusively dated to guide future research and treatment.	Removing a storefront from the restoration period that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new storefront that does not match. Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the restoration-period storefront or that is physically incompatible.
The following **Restoration** *work is highlighted to indicate that it involves the removal or alteration of existing historic entrances and porches or their features that would be retained in Preservation and Rehabilitation treatments; and the replacement of missing storefronts or their features from the restoration period using all new materials.*	
Removing Existing Features from Other Historic Periods	
Removing storefronts and their features from other historic periods, such as later cladding or signage.	Failing to remove a storefront feature from another period, thereby confusing the depiction of the building's appearance from the restoration period.
Documenting storefront features dating from other periods prior to their alteration or removal. If possible, selected examples of these features or materials should be stored for future research.	Failing to document storefront features from other historic periods that are removed from the building so that a valuable portion of the historic record is lost.
Recreating Missing Features from the Restoration Period	
Recreating a missing storefront or storefront feature that existed during the restoration period based on documentary and physical evidence; for example, duplicating a display window or transom.	Constructing a storefront feature that was part of the original design for the building but was never actually built, or constructing a feature which was thought to have existed during the restoration period but which cannot be documented.

CURTAIN WALLS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving curtain wall systems from the restoration period and their components. The design of the curtain wall is significant, as are its component materials (metal stick framing and panel materials, such as clear or spandrel glass, stone, terra cotta, metal, and fiber-reinforced plastic), appearance (e.g., glazing color or tint, transparency, and reflectivity), and whether the glazing is fixed, operable, or louvered glass panels. How a curtain wall is engineered and fabricated, and the fact that it expands and contracts at a different rate from the building's structural system, are important to understand when undertaking the restoration of a curtain wall system.	Altering curtain wall components from the restoration period. Failing to document curtain wall systems from the restoration period, which may result in their loss. Replacing curtain wall features from the restoration period instead of repairing or replacing only the deteriorated components.
Protecting and maintaining curtain walls and their components from the restoration period through appropriate surface treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coating system; and by making them watertight and ensuring that sealants and gaskets are in good condition.	Failing to protect and maintain curtain wall components from the restoration period on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of the curtain wall results.
Protecting ground-level curtain walls from the restoration period from vandalism before work begins by covering them, while ensuring adequate ventilation, and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving ground-level curtain walls from the restoration period unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins, thereby also allowing the interior to be damaged if it can be accessed through unprotected glazing.
Protecting restoration-period curtain wall components when working on other features of the building.	Failing to protect curtain wall components from the restoration period when working on other features of the building.
Installing impact-resistant glazing, when required by safety codes or necessary for security, with color, transparency, and reflectivity as close as possible to the original in a curtain wall system from the restoration period so that it is compatible with the historic curtain walls and does not damage them or negatively impact their character.	Installing impact-resistant glazing, when required by safety codes or necessary for security, that is not compatible with the historic curtain walls and damages them or negatively impacts their character.
Evaluating the overall condition of the curtain wall system from the restoration period and its individual components to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to curtain wall features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of curtain wall features from the restoration period.

CURTAIN WALLS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Repairing curtain walls from the restoration period by reinforcing them or replacing deteriorated materials, including replacing deteriorated or missing sealants or gaskets, when necessary, to seal any gaps between system components. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of curtain walls where there are surviving prototypes or when the replacement can be based on physical or historic documentation. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Replacing an entire curtain wall from the restoration period when repair of materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.

[12] This historic curtain wall features a distinctive variety of panel types which must be repaired or replicated in a restoration project if any are damaged or missing.

CURTAIN WALLS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Replacing in kind an entire curtain wall from the restoration period that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered. The new work may be unobtrusively dated to guide future research and treatment.	Removing a curtain wall feature from the restoration period that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new curtain wall feature that does not match. Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the restoration-period curtain wall or that is physically incompatible.
The following **Restoration** *work is highlighted to indicate that it involves the removal or alteration of existing historic entrances and porches or their features that would be retained in Preservation and Rehabilitation treatments; and the replacement of missing curtain walls or their features from the restoration period using all new materials.*	
Removing Existing Features from Other Historic Periods	
Removing curtain wall components from other historic periods.	Failing to remove a curtain wall component from another period, thereby confusing the depiction of the building's appearance from the restoration period
Documenting curtain wall components dating from other periods prior to their alteration or removal. If possible, selected examples of these components or materials should be stored for future research.	Failing to document curtain wall components from other historic periods that are removed from the building so that a valuable portion of the historic record is lost.
Recreating Missing Features from the Restoration Period	
Recreating a missing curtain wall component that existed during the restoration period based on documentary and physical evidence.	Constructing a curtain wall component that was part of the original design for the building but was never actually built, or constructing a feature which was thought to have existed during the restoration period but which cannot be documented.

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving structural systems and features from the restoration period. This includes the materials that comprise the structural system (i.e., wood, metal, and masonry), the type of system, and its features, such as posts and beams, trusses, summer beams, vigas, cast-iron or masonry columns, above-grade stone foundation walls, or load-bearing masonry walls.	Altering visible features of structural systems from the restoration period. Failing to document structural systems from the restoration period, which may result in their loss. Overloading the structural system from the restoration period, or installing equipment or mechanical systems which could damage the structure. Replacing a load-bearing masonry wall from the restoration period that could be augmented and retained. Leaving known structural problems untreated, such as deflected beams, cracked and bowed walls, or racked structural members.
Protecting and maintaining the structural system from the restoration period by keeping gutters and downspouts clear and roofing in good repair; and by ensuring that wood structural members are free from insect infestation.	Failing to protect and maintain exterior materials and features from the restoration period on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of the structural system results. Using treatments or products that may retain moisture, which accelerates deterioration of structural members.
Evaluating the overall condition of the structural system from the restoration period to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to structural features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of the structural system from the restoration period.

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Repairing structural systems from the restoration period by reinforcing them by augmenting or upgrading individual components or features in a manner that is consistent with the restoration period. For example, weakened structural members, such as floor framing, can be paired with a new member, braced, or otherwise supplemented and reinforced. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Upgrading the building structurally in a manner that diminishes the restoration-period character of the exterior (such as installing strapping channels or removing a decorative masonry cornice) or that damages interior features or spaces. Replacing a component of the restoration-period structural system when it could be repaired or augmented and retained. Installing a visible or exposed structural replacement feature that does not match the restoration-period feature (e.g., replacing an exposed wood summer beam with a steel beam). Using substitute material that does not equal the load-bearing capabilities of the restoration-period structural component; does not convey the same appearance of the restoration-period component, if it is visible; or is physically incompatible.
Replacing in kind or with a compatible substitute material large portions or entire features of the structural system from the restoration period that are either extensively damaged or deteriorated or that are missing when there are surviving prototypes, such as cast-iron columns, trusses, or sections of load-bearing walls, or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. Substitute material must be structurally sufficient, physically compatible with the rest of the system, and, where visible, must have the same form, design, and appearance as the restoration-period feature. The new work may be unobtrusively dated to guide future research and treatment.	

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
The following Restoration *work is highlighted to indicate that it involves the removal or alteration of existing visible historic structural features that would be retained in Preservation and Rehabilitation treatments; and the replacement of missing visible structural features from the restoration period using all new materials.*	
Removing Existing Features from Other Historic Periods	
Removing visually-intrusive structural features from other historic periods, such as a non-matching column.	Failing to remove or alter a visually-intrusive structural feature from another period, thereby confusing the depiction of the building's appearance from the restoration period.
Documenting structural features dating from other periods prior to their alteration or removal. If possible, selected examples of these features or materials should be stored to facilitate future research.	Failing to document structural features from other historic periods that are removed from the building so that a valuable portion of the historic record is lost.
Recreating Missing Features from the Restoration Period	
Recreating a missing, visible structural feature that existed during the restoration period based on documentary and physical evidence; for example, duplicating a viga or cast-iron column.	Constructing a visible structural feature that was part of the original design for the building but was never actually built, or constructing a feature which was thought to have existed during the restoration period but cannot be documented.

MECHANICAL SYSTEMS:
HEATING, AIR CONDITIONING, ELECTRICAL, AND PLUMBING

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving visible features of mechanical systems from the restoration period, such as radiators, vents, fans, grilles, and plumbing and lighting fixtures.	Altering visible features of mechanical systems from the restoration period. Failing to document visible features of mechanical systems from the restoration period, which may result in their loss.
Protecting and maintaining functioning mechanical, plumbing, and electrical systems and their features from the restoration period through cyclical maintenance.	Failing to protect and maintain functioning mechanical, plumbing, and electrical systems from the restoration period on a cyclical basis so that their deterioration results.
Improving the energy efficiency of functioning mechanical systems to help reduce the need for a new system by installing storm windows and insulating attics and crawl spaces, if appropriate.	
Repairing functioning mechanical systems by augmenting or upgrading system components (such as installing new pipes and ducts), rewiring, or adding new compressors or boilers.	Replacing a functioning mechanical system or its components when it could be upgraded and retained.
Replacing in kind or with a compatible substitute material those extensively deteriorated or missing visible features of restoration-period mechanical systems when there are prototypes, such as ceiling fans, radiators, grilles, or lighting fixtures.	Installing a visible replacement feature that does not convey the same appearance as the restoration-period feature.
Installing a new mechanical system, if required, in a manner that results in the least alteration possible to the building's appearance from the restoration period.	Installing a new mechanical system in a manner that the appearance of visible structural or interior features from the restoration period is significantly changed, or the features are damaged or destroyed.
Providing adequate structural support for new mechanical equipment.	Failing to consider the weight and design of new mechanical equipment so that, as a result, restoration-period structural members or finished surfaces are weakened or cracked.

MECHANICAL SYSTEMS:
HEATING, AIR CONDITIONING, ELECTRICAL, AND PLUMBING

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Installing new mechanical and electrical systems and ducts, pipes, and cables in closets, services areas, and wall cavities to preserve the restoration-period character of the interior space.	Installing ducts, pipes, and cables where they will obscure features from the restoration period. Concealing mechanical equipment in walls or ceilings in a manner that results in extensive loss or damage or otherwise obscures restoration-period building materials and features.
Installing air conditioning units, if needed, in such a manner that features from the restoration period are not damaged or obscured, and so that excessive moisture is not generated that will accelerate deterioration of materials from the restoration period.	
The following Restoration *work is highlighted to indicate that it involves the removal or alteration of existing visible features of the mechanical system that would be retained in Preservation and Rehabilitation treatments; and the replacement of missing visible features of the mechanical system from the restoration period using all new materials..*	
Removing Existing Features from Other Historic Periods	
Removing mechanical systems and their visible features from other periods, such as a later elevator.	Failing to remove or alter a visually-intrusive structural feature from another period, thereby confusing the depiction of the building's appearance from the restoration period.
Documenting mechanical systems and features from other periods prior to their alteration or removal. If possible, selected examples of these features should be stored for future research.	Failing to document structural features from other historic periods that are removed from the building so that a valuable portion of the historic record is lost.
Recreating Missing Features from the Restoration Period	
Recreating a missing feature of the mechanical system that existed during the restoration period based on documentary and physical evidence; for example, duplicating a heating vent or lighting fixture.	Constructing a mechanical system or feature that was part of the original design for the building but was never actually built, or constructing a feature which was thought to have existed during the restoration period but cannot be documented.

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving a floor plan and interior spaces, features, and finishes from the restoration period. Significant spatial characteristics include the size, configuration, proportion, and relationship of rooms and corridors; the relationship of features to spaces; and the spaces themselves, such as lobbies, lodge halls, entrance halls, parlors, theaters, auditoriums, gymnasiums, and industrial and commercial interiors. Color, texture, and pattern are important characteristics of features and finishes, which can include such elements as columns, plaster walls and ceilings, flooring, trim, fireplaces and mantels, paneling, light fixtures, hardware, decorative radiators, ornamental grilles and registers, windows, doors, and transoms; plaster, paint, wallpaper and wall coverings, and special finishes, such as marbleizing and graining; and utilitarian (painted or unpainted) features, including wood, metal, or concrete exposed columns, beams, and trusses and exposed load-bearing brick, concrete, and wood walls.	Altering a floor plan, interior spaces (including individual rooms), features, or finishes from the restoration period. Failing to document interior spaces, features, and finishes from the restoration period, which may result in their loss. Applying paint, plaster, or other coatings to surfaces that have been unfinished historically, if the work cannot be documented. Changing the type of finish or the color, such as painting a historically-varnished wood feature from the restoration period, or removing paint from a historically-painted feature from the restoration period and staining and varnishing it, unless the work can be substantiated by physical or historic documentation. Stripping paint to bare wood rather than repainting, or not reapplying documented grained or marbled finishes from the restoration period to features, such as doors and paneling. Removing restoration-period interior features (such as mantels, woodwork, doors, windows, light fixtures, or radiators) or other decorative materials from the restoration period.
Protecting and maintaining interior spaces, and materials, features, and finishes from the restoration period through appropriate surface treatments, such as cleaning, paint removal, and reapplication of protective coating systems.	Failing to protect interior features and finishes from the restoration period when working on the interior.
Protecting interior features and finishes from the restoration period against arson and vandalism before project work begins by covering broken windows and boarding open doorways, while ensuring adequate ventilation, and by installing fire alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving the building unprotected with broken windows and open doorways before restoration begins so that the interior features and finishes from the restoration period can be damaged by exposure to weather and vandalism.

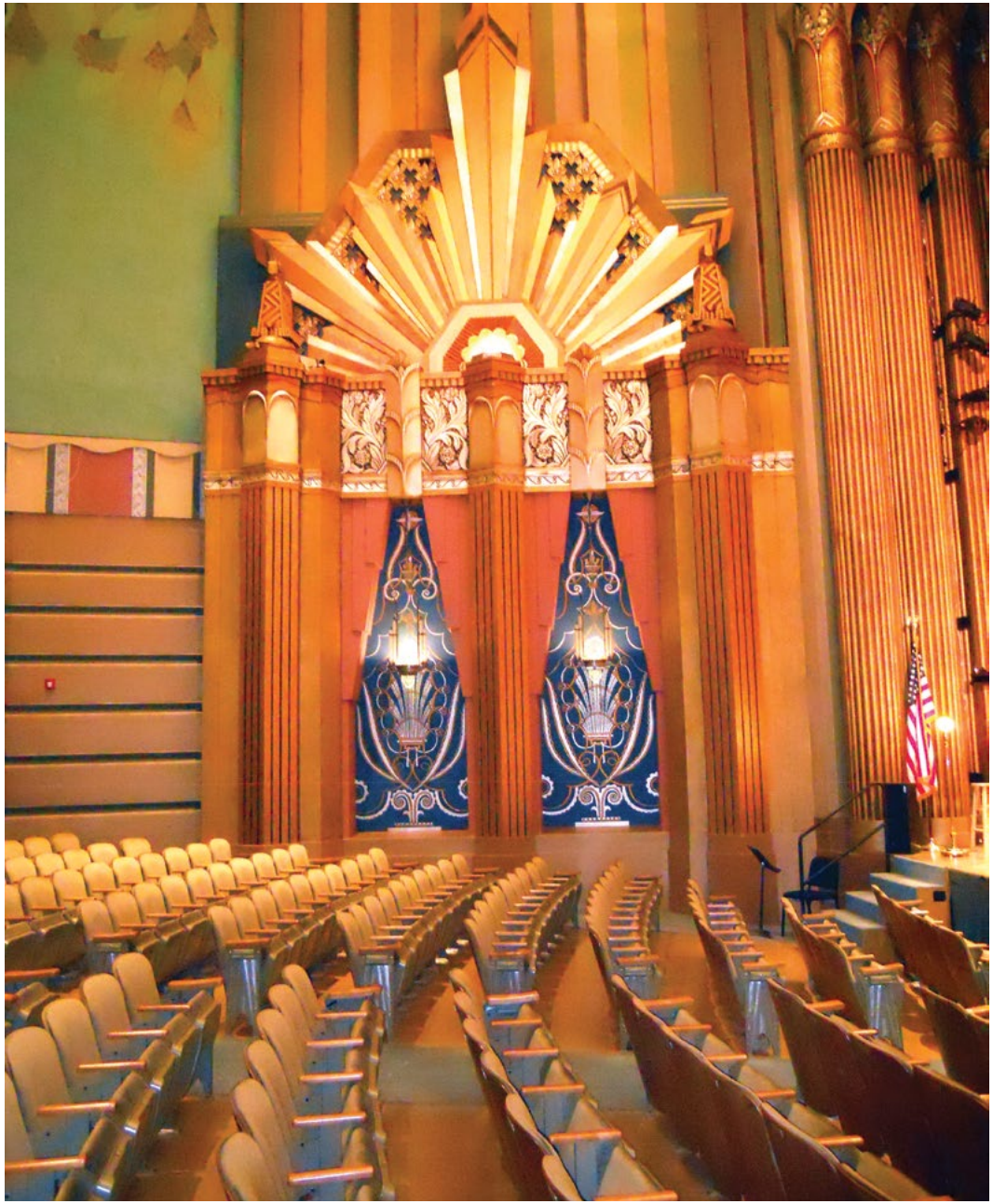
INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Protecting interior features from the restoration period (such as a staircase, mantel, flooring, or decorative finishes) from damage during project work by covering them with plywood, heavy canvas, or plastic sheeting.	Failing to protect interior features and finishes from the restoration period when working on the interior.
Removing damaged or deteriorated paint and finishes from the restoration period only to the next sound layer, using the gentlest method possible, prior to repainting or refinishing using compatible paint or other coating systems based on historical documentation.	Using potentially damaging methods, such as open-flame torches or abrasive techniques, to remove paint or other coatings. Removing paint that is firmly adhered to interior surfaces.
Repainting with colors that are documented to the building's restoration period.	Using paint colors that are inappropriate to the building's restoration period.

[13] (a) In the 1990s the Missing Soldier's Office—established by Clara Barton at the end of the Civil War—was discovered still extant on the third floor of a building in Washington, DC, that was slated for demolition. The office was restored to its historic appearance using physical and documentary evidence. The original numeral '9' is still on the door to the office, and wall paper was reproduced from scraps found on the walls (b-d).

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Using abrasive cleaning methods only on the interior of industrial or warehouse buildings with utilitarian, unplastered masonry walls from the restoration period and where wood features are not finished, molded, beaded, or worked by hand. Low-pressure abrasive cleaning (e.g., sandblasting or other media blasting) should only be considered if test patches show no surface damage and after gentler methods have proven ineffective.	Using abrasive methods anywhere but utilitarian and industrial interior spaces or when there are other methods that are less likely to damage the surface of the material.
Evaluating the overall condition of interior materials, features, and finishes from the restoration period to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to features and finishes, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of interior materials, features, and finishes from the restoration period.
Repairing Interior features and finishes from the restoration period by patching, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing the materials using recognized preservation methods. Repair may include the limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of interior features when there are surviving prototypes (such as stairs, balustrades, wood paneling, columns, decorative wall finishes, or pressed-metal or plaster ceilings) or when the replacement can be based on physical or historic documentation. The new work should match the old in material, design, scale, color, and finish.	Replacing an interior feature from the restoration period or a finish when repair of materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.



[14] When the 1931 Fox Theater in Spokane, WA, was rehabilitated as a performing arts center, the auditorium was restored to its original Art Deco splendor.

INTERIOR SPACES, FEATURES, AND FINISHES

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Replacing in kind an entire interior feature from the restoration period that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. Examples could include wainscoting, window and door surrounds, or interior stairs. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered. The new work may be unobtrusively dated to guide future research and treatment.	Removing a feature or finish from the restoration period that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new feature or finish that does not match. Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving components of the restoration-period interior feature or finish or that is physically incompatible.
The following Restoration *work is highlighted to indicate that it involves the removal or alteration of existing historic interior spaces, features, and finishes that would be retained in Preservation and Rehabilitation treatments; and the replacement of missing interior spaces, features, and finishes from the restoration period using all new materials.*	
Removing Existing Features from Other Historic Periods	
Removing or altering interior spaces, features, or finishes from other historic periods, such as a dropped ceiling or wood paneling.	Failing to remove an interior space, feature, or finish from another historic period, thereby confusing the depiction of the building's appearance from the restoration period.
Documenting materials and features dating from other periods prior to their alteration or removal. If possible, selected examples of these features or materials should be stored for future research.	Failing to document interior spaces, features, and finishes from other periods that are removed from the building so that a valuable portion of the historic record is lost.
Recreating Missing Features from the Restoration Period	
Recreating an interior space or a missing feature or finish from the restoration period based on documentary and physical evidence; for example, duplicating a mantel or a staircase.	Creating an interior space, adding a feature, or applying a finish that was part of the original design for the building but was never actually built, or adding a feature which was thought to have existed during the restoration period but cannot be documented.

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving features of the building site from the restoration period. Site features may include walls, fences, or steps; circulation systems, such as walks, paths, or roads; vegetation, such as trees, shrubs, grass, orchards, hedges, windbreaks, or gardens; landforms, such as hills, terracing, or berms; furnishings and fixtures, such as light posts or benches; decorative elements, such as sculpture, statuary, or monuments; water features, such as fountains, streams, pools, lakes, irrigation ditches; and subsurface archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds which are also important to the restoration period of the site.	Altering buildings and their features or site features from the restoration period. Failing to document building and site features from the restoration period, which may result in their loss.
Reestablishing the relationship between buildings and the landscape on the site that existed during the restoration period.	Retaining non-restoration period buildings or landscape features on the site, thereby confusing the depiction of the restoration-period appearance of the site.
Protecting and maintaining buildings and site features from the restoration period by providing proper drainage to ensure that water does not erode foundation walls, drain toward a building, or damage or erode the landscape.	Failing to ensure that site drainage is adequate so that buildings and site features from the restoration period are damaged or destroyed. Or, alternatively, changing the site grading so that water does not drain properly.
Minimizing disturbance of the terrain around buildings or elsewhere on the site, thereby reducing the possibility of destroying or damaging important landscape features from the restoration period or archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.	Using heavy machinery or equipment in areas where it may disturb or damage important landscape features from the restoration period or archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.

[15] (a) Cherry Hill House and Farm (c. 1845) in Falls Church, VA, was the site of encampments during the Civil War. Outbuildings on the property, such as the corn crib (b) in the foreground which was the source of provisions for the soldiers, are important in interpreting its role during the war.

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Surveying and documenting areas of the site where the terrain will be altered during restoration work to determine the potential impact to important landscape features from the restoration period or archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds from the restoration period.	Failing to survey the building site prior to beginning restoration work, which can result in damaging or destroying landscape features from the restoration period, or archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.
Protecting (e.g., preserving in place) important site features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.	Failing to protect site features from the restoration period, or archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds when working on the site.
Planning and carrying out any necessary investigation before restoration of the site begins, using professional archeologists and methods, when preservation in place is not feasible.	Allowing unqualified personnel to perform data recovery on archeological resources, which can result in damage or loss of important archeological material.
Preserving important landscape features from the restoration period through regularly-scheduled site maintenance of historic plant material.	Allowing important landscape features from the restoration period to be lost or damaged due to lack of site maintenance.
Protecting the building site and landscape features from the restoration period against arson and vandalism before restoration work begins by erecting temporary fencing and by installing alarm systems keyed into local protection agencies.	Leaving the property unprotected and subject to vandalism before work begins so that the building site and landscape features from the restoration period, or archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds can be damaged or destroyed. Removing site features from the restoration period, such as fencing, paths or walkways, masonry balustrades, or plant material.
Installing protective fencing, bollards, and stanchions on a building site, when necessary for security, that are as unobtrusive as possible.	Installing protective fencing, bollards, and stanchions on a building site, when necessary for security, without taking into consideration their location and visibility so that they negatively impact the restoration-period character of the site.

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Providing continued protection and maintenance of buildings and landscape features from the restoration-period of the site through appropriate grounds and landscape management.	Failing to protect and maintain materials and features from the restoration period on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of the site results.
Protecting buildings and site features from the restoration period when working on the site.	Failing to protect buildings and landscape features from the restoration period when working on the site or failing to repair damaged or deteriorated site features.
Evaluating the overall condition of materials and features from the restoration period to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to site features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of site features from the restoration period.
Repairing site features from the restoration period which have been damaged, are deteriorated, or have missing components to reestablish the whole feature and to ensure retention of the integrity of the historic materials. Repair may include limited replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of site features when there are surviving prototypes, such as paving, railing, or individual plants within a group (e.g., a hedge), or when the replacement can be based on physical or historic documentation.	Replacing an entire site feature from the restoration period (such as a fence, walkway, or drive) when repair of materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.
Replacing in kind an entire restoration-period feature of the site that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. Examples could include a walkway or fountain, a land form or plant materials. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be used. The new work may be unobtrusively dated to guide future research and treatment.	Removing a site feature from the restoration period that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new feature that does not match. Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving site feature from the restoration period or that is physically incompatible. Adding conjectural landscape features to the site (such as period reproduction light fixtures, fences, fountains, or vegetation) that cannot be documented, thereby confusing the depiction of the restoration-period appearance of the building site.

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
The following **Restoration** *work is highlighted to indicate that it involves the removal or alteration of existing visible features of the building site that would be retained in Preservation and Rehabilitation treatments; and the replacement of missing visible features of the mechanical system from the restoration period using all new materials.*	
Removing Existing Features from Other Historic Periods	
Removing site features from other historic periods, such as an outbuilding, paved road, or overgrown trees.	Failing to remove a site feature from another historic period, thereby confusing the depiction of the site's appearance from the restoration period.
Documenting features of the building site dating from other periods prior to their removal.	Failing to document site features from other periods that are removed during restoration so that a valuable portion of the historic record is lost.
Recreating Missing Features from the Restoration Period	
Recreating a missing site feature from the restoration period based on documentary and physical evidence; for example, duplicating a no-longer extant terrace, gazebo, fencing, or a hedge.	Constructing a feature of the building or site that was part of the original design but was never actually built, or constructing a feature which was thought to have existed during the restoration period but cannot be documented.

[16] Archeological investigation of the property was undertaken to ensure accuracy of the restoration of Montpelier. Photo: Courtesy of The Montpelier Foundation.

SETTING (DISTRICT / NEIGHBORHOOD)

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Identifying, retaining, and preserving building and landscape features from the restoration period in the setting. These features can include circulation systems, such as roads and streets; furnishings and fixtures, such as light posts or benches; vegetation, gardens, and yards; adjacent open space, such as fields, parks, commons, or woodlands; and important views or visual relationships.	Altering restoration-period building and landscape features in the setting. Failing to document restoration-period buildings and landscape features in the setting, which may result in their loss.
Retaining or reestablishing the relationship between buildings and landscape features in the setting that existed during the restoration period.	Retaining non-restoration period buildings or landscape features in the setting, thereby confusing the depiction of the restoration-period appearance of the setting.

(a)

[17 a-b] The cobblestone street, brick sidewalks, and stone stoops of these houses are important restoration-period features of the late 18th- through the 19th-century restoration period of this historic district.

SETTING (DISTRICT / NEIGHBORHOOD)

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Protecting and maintaining features from the restoration period in the setting through regularly-scheduled maintenance and grounds and landscape management.	Failing to protect and maintain materials in the setting on a cyclical basis so that deterioration of buildings and landscape features results. Removing restoration-period building or landscape features in the setting, such as porches, fencing, walkways, or plant material.
Installing protective fencing, bollards, and stanchions in a setting, when necessary for security, that are as unobtrusive as possible.	Installing protective fencing, bollards, and stanchions in a setting, when necessary for security, without taking into consideration their location and visibility so that they negatively impact the historic character of the setting.

(b)

SETTING (DISTRICT / NEIGHBORHOOD)

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Protecting buildings and landscape features from the restoration period when undertaking work in the setting.	Failing to protect buildings and landscape features from the restoration period when working in the setting.
Evaluating the overall condition of restoration-period materials and features in the setting to determine whether more than protection and maintenance, such as repairs to materials and features, will be necessary.	Failing to undertake adequate measures to ensure the protection of materials and features in the setting from the restoration period.
Repairing restoration-period features in the setting by reinforcing the historic materials. Repair may include the replacement in kind or with a compatible substitute material of those extensively deteriorated or missing components of features from the restoration period when there are surviving prototypes, such as porch balustrades, paving materials, or trees.	Replacing an entire building or landscape feature from the restoration period in the setting when repair of materials and limited replacement of deteriorated or missing components are feasible.
Replacing in kind an entire restoration-period building or landscape feature in the setting that is too deteriorated to repair (if the overall form and detailing are still evident) using the physical evidence as a model to reproduce the feature or when the replacement can be based on historic documentation. If using the same kind of material is not feasible, then a compatible substitute material may be considered. The new work may be dated to guide future research and treatment.	Removing a restoration-period feature of the building or landscape in the setting that is unrepairable and not replacing it, or replacing it with a new feature that does not match. Using a substitute material for the replacement that does not convey the same appearance of the surviving restoration-period building or landscape feature in the setting or that is physically or ecologically incompatible.

SETTING (DISTRICT / NEIGHBORHOOD)

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
The following Restoration *work is highlighted to indicate that it involves the removal or alteration of existing historic features of the setting that would be retained in Preservation and Rehabilitation treatments; and the replacement of missing restoration-period features of the setting using all new materials.*	
Removing Existing Features from Other Historic Periods	
Removing features of the building or landscape in the setting from other historic periods, such as a road, sidewalk, or fence.	Failing to remove a feature of the building or landscape in the setting from another period, thereby confusing the depiction of the setting's appearance from the restoration period.
Documenting features of the building or landscape in the setting dating from other periods prior to their removal.	Failing to document features of the building or landscape features in the setting from other periods that are removed during restoration so that a valuable portion of the historic record is lost.
Recreating Missing Features from the Restoration Period	
Recreating a missing feature of the building or landscape in the setting that existed during the restoration period based on documentary and physical evidence; for example, duplicating a non-longer extant path or park bench.	Constructing a feature of the building or landscape that was part of the original design for the setting but was never actually built, or constructing a feature which was thought to have existed during the restoration period but cannot be documented.

CODE-REQUIRED WORK

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Sensitive solutions to meeting accessibility and life-safety code requirements are an important part of protecting the restoration-period of the building and site. Thus, work that must be done to meet use-specific code requirements in the treatment **Restoration** *must also be assessed for its potential impact on the restoration-period of the historic building and site.*	
Accessibility	
Identifying the restoration-period exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting which may be affected by accessibility code-required work.	Undertaking accessibility code-required alterations before identifying the exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting from the restoration period and, therefore, must be preserved.
Complying with barrier-free access requirements in such a manner that the restoration-period exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting are preserved or impacted as little as possible.	Altering, damaging, or destroying the exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, or features of the site and setting from the restoration period while complying with accessibility requirements.
Working with specialists in accessibility and historic preservation to determine the most sensitive solutions to comply with access requirements in a restoration project.	Making changes to historic buildings and their sites without first consulting with specialists in accessibility and historic preservation to determine the most appropriate solutions to comply with accessibility requirements in a manner that will preserve the character of the restoration period.
Providing barrier-free access that promotes independence for the user while preserving significant features from the restoration period.	Making access modifications that do not provide independent, safe access while preserving restoration-period features.
Finding solutions to meet accessibility requirements that minimize the impact of any necessary alteration on the restoration period of the building, its site, and setting, such as compatible ramps, paths, and lifts.	Making modifications for accessibility without considering the impact on the restoration period of the building, its site, or setting.
Using relevant sections of existing codes regarding accessibility for historic buildings that provide alternative means of code compliance when code-required work would otherwise negatively impact the restoration-period character of the property.	

CODE-REQUIRED WORK

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Minimizing the visual impact of accessibility ramps by installing them on secondary elevations when it does not compromise accessibility or by screening them with plantings.	
Adding a gradual slope or grade to the sidewalk, if appropriate, to access the entrance rather than installing a ramp that would be more intrusive to the historic character of the restoration period of the building and the district.	

[18 a-b] The historic Chapel of Our Lady in Cold Spring, NY, is situated on a rocky promontory overlooking the Hudson River. Installing an accessible ramp would greatly compromise the character of the building and the site. However, an audio-visual program available in a separate building—located where it would not impact the character of the site, such as this small pavilion at the rear of the property—could provide visitors otherwise unable to access the Chapel an opportunity to experience the site.

CODE-REQUIRED WORK

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Installing a lift as inconspicuously as possible when it is necessary to locate it on a primary elevation of the historic building.	
Considering placing accessible facilities needed for visitors to the restored property (e.g., restrooms) in a separate building, such as a visitor center, that is located away from the historic structure rather than in the historic building if their installation would negatively impact character-defining spaces, features, or finishes from the restoration period.	Installing accessible facilities inside or on the exterior of the historic building that are incompatible with the character of the restoration period or would damage or destroy character-defining spaces, features, or finishes from the restoration period.
Devising non-permanent or temporary adaptive treatments that meet accessibility requirements to preserve the restoration-period character of the building, its site, and setting.	
Developing and providing virtual tours to help interpret the restored property when it is not feasible or it is physically impossible to make the building or its site accessible without damaging or obscuring character-defining building and landscape features in the setting from the restoration period.	
LIFE SAFETY	
Identifying the restoration-period exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting which may be affected by life-safety code-required work.	Undertaking life-safety code-required alterations before identifying the exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting from the restoration period and, therefore, must be preserved.
Complying with life-safety codes (including requirements for impact-resistant glazing, security, and seismic retrofit) in such a manner that the restoration-period exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, and features of the site and setting are preserved or impacted as little as possible.	Altering, damaging, or destroying the restoration-period exterior features, interior spaces, features, and finishes, or features of the site and setting from the restoration period while making modifications to a building, its site, or setting to comply with life-safety code requirements.
Removing building materials from the restoration period only after testing has been conducted to identify hazardous materials, and using only the least damaging abatement methods.	Removing building materials from the restoration period without testing first to identify any hazardous materials, or using potentially-damaging methods of abatement without considering less-invasive methods of abatement.

CODE-REQUIRED WORK

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Providing workers with appropriate personal equipment for protection from hazards on the worksite.	Removing hazardous or toxic materials without regard for workers' health and safety or environmentally-sensitive disposal of the materials.
Working with code officials and historic preservation specialists to investigate systems, methods, or devices to make the building compliant with life-safety codes to ensure that necessary alterations will be compatible with the restoration-period character of the building.	Making life-safety code-required changes to the building without consulting code officials and historic preservation specialists, with the result that alterations negatively impact the restoration-period character of the building.
Using relevant sections of existing codes regarding life safety for historic buildings that provide alternative means of compliance when life-safety code-required work would otherwise negatively impact the restoration-period character of the building.	
Upgrading restoration-period stairways and elevators to meet life-safety codes so that they are not damaged or their historic character is not negatively impacted.	Damaging or making inappropriate alterations to historic stairways or elevators or to adjacent features, spaces, or finishes from the restoration period while complying with life-safety code requirements.
Installing sensitively-designed fire-suppression systems, such as sprinklers, so that historic features and finishes from the restoration period are preserved.	Covering wood features from the restoration period with fire-retardant sheathing, which results in altering their appearance.
Applying fire-retardant coatings when appropriate, such as intumescent paint, to protect steel structural systems from the restoration period.	Using fire-retardant coatings if they will damage or obscure character-defining features from the restoration period.

RESILIENCE TO NATURAL HAZARDS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Resilience to natural hazards should be addressed as part of a **Restoration** *project. A historic building may have existing characteristics or features from the restoration period that help address or minimize the impacts of natural hazards. These should be used to best advantage and should be taken into consideration early in the planning stages of a restoration project before proposing any additional treatments. When new adaptive treatments are needed they should be carried out in a manner that will have the least impact on the restoration-period character of the building, its site, and setting.*	
Identifying the vulnerabilities of the restoration-period property to the impacts of natural hazards (such as wildfires, hurricanes, or tornadoes) using the most current climate information and data available.	Failing to identify and periodically reevaluate the potential vulnerability of the restoration-period building, its site, and setting to the impacts of natural hazards.
Assessing the potential impacts of known vulnerabilities on restoration-period features of the building, its site, and setting; and reevaluating and reassessing potential impacts on a regular basis.	

[19] The 1951 Mies van der Rohe-designed Farnsworth House, Plano, IL, was built close to the Fox River, which is increasingly prone to floods. To preserve the house in its original location, historic preservation architects and engineers continue to explore ways to protect it from the flooding, including a possible system that would lift the house above the flood waters and lower it back to the ground. *Photo: Courtesy Farnsworth, A Site of the National Trust for Historic Preservation.*

RESILIENCE TO NATURAL HAZARDS

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Documenting the restoration-period character of the property as a record and guide for future repair work, should it be necessary, and storing the documentation in a weatherproof location.	Failing to document the restoration-period character of the property with the result that such information is not available in the future to guide repair or reconstruction work, should it be necessary.
Ensuring that historic resources inventories and maps are accurate, up to date, and accessible in an emergency.	
Maintaining the restoration-period building, its site, and setting in good repair, and regularly monitoring their condition.	Failing to regularly monitor and maintain the restoration-period property and the building systems in good repair.
Using and maintaining existing characteristics and features of the restoration-period building, its site, setting, and larger environment (such as shutters for storm protection or a site wall that keeps out flood waters) that may help to avoid or minimize the impacts of natural hazards.	Allowing loss, damage, or destruction to occur to the restoration-period building, its site, or setting by failing to evaluate potential future impacts of natural hazards or to plan and implement adaptive measures, when necessary to address possible threats.
Undertaking work to prevent or minimize the loss, damage, or destruction of the historic property while retaining and preserving significant features and the overall restoration-period character of the building, its site, and setting.	Carrying out adaptive measures intended to address the impacts of natural hazards that are unnecessarily invasive or will otherwise adversely impact the restoration-period character of the building, its site, or setting.
Ensuring that, when planning work to adapt for natural hazards, all feasible alternatives are considered, and that the options requiring the least alteration to the restoration-period character of the property are considered first.	Implementing local and regional traditions (such as elevating residential buildings at risk of flooding or reducing flammable vegetation around structures in fire-prone areas) for adapting buildings and sites in response to specific natural hazards which would negatively impact the restoration-period character of the property.
Using special exemptions and variances when adaptive treatments to protect buildings from known hazards would otherwise negatively impact the restoration-period character of the building, its site, or setting.	

Sustainability

Sustainability should be addressed as part of a **Restoration** project. Existing energy-efficient features from the restoration period should be retained and restored while those that are no longer extant but which were important in defining the restoration-period character of the building should be recreated. New sustainability treatments should only be undertaken if they will not impact the restoration-period character of the building.

The topic of sustainability is addressed in detail in *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation & Illustrated Guidelines on Sustainability for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings*. Although specifically developed for the treatment Rehabilitation, the Sustainability Guidelines can be used to help guide the other treatments

STANDARDS FOR RECONSTRUCTION & GUIDELINES FOR RECONSTRUCTING HISTORIC BUILDINGS

Reconstruction

Reconstruction is defined as the act or process of depicting, by means of new construction, the form, features, and detailing of a non-surviving site, landscape, building, structure, or object for the purpose of replicating its appearance at a specific period of time and in its historic location.

Standards for Reconstruction

1. Reconstruction will be used to depict vanished or non-surviving portions of a property when documentary and physical evidence is available to permit accurate reconstruction with minimal conjecture and such reconstruction is essential to the public understanding of the property.
2. Reconstruction of a landscape, building, structure or object in its historic location will be preceded by a thorough archeological investigation to identify and evaluate those features and artifacts which are essential to an accurate reconstruction. If such resources must be disturbed, mitigation measures will be undertaken.
3. Reconstruction will include measures to preserve any remaining historic materials, features, and spatial relationships.
4. Reconstruction will be based on the accurate duplication of historic features and elements substantiated by documentary or physical evidence rather than on conjectural designs or the availability of different features from other historic properties. A reconstructed property will re-create the appearance of the non-surviving historic property in materials, design, color and texture.
5. A reconstruction will be clearly identified as a contemporary re-creation.
6. Designs that were never executed historically will not be constructed.

INTRODUCTION

Reconstruction is different from the other treatments in that it is undertaken when there are often no visible historic materials extant or only a foundation remains. Whereas the treatment Restoration provides guidance on restoring historic building features, the **Standards for Reconstruction and Guidelines for Reconstructing Historic Buildings** should be followed when it is necessary to recreate a non-surviving building using new material. But, like restoration, reconstruction also involves recreating a historic building which appears as it did at a particular—and at its most significant—time in its history. Because of the potential for historical error in the absence of sound physical evidence, this treatment can be justified only rarely and, thus, is the least frequently undertaken of the four treatments. Reconstructing a historic building should only be considered when there is accurate documentation on which to base it. When only the appearance of the exterior of the building can be documented, it may be appropriate to reconstruct the exterior while designing a very simple, plain interior that does not attempt to appear historic or historically accurate. Signage and interpretative aids should make it clear to visitors that only the exterior of the building is a true reconstruction. Extant historic surface and subsurface materials should also be preserved. Finally, the reconstructed building must be clearly identified as a contemporary recreation.

Research and Document Historical Significance

The guidance for the treatment **Reconstruction** begins with ***researching and documenting*** the building's historical significance to determine whether its recreation is essential to the public understanding of the property. In some instances, reconstruction may not be necessary if there is a historic building still existing on the site or in a setting that can explain the history of the property. Justifying a reconstruction requires detailed physical and documentary evidence to minimize or eliminate conjecture and to ensure that the reconstruction is as accurate as possible. Only one period of significance is generally identified; a building—as it evolved—is rarely recreated. If research does not provide adequate documentation for an accurate reconstruction, other interpretive methods should be considered, such as an explanatory marker.

Investigate Archeological Resources

Investigating archeological resources is the next area of guidance in the treatment **Reconstruction**. The purpose of archeological research is to identify any remaining features of the building, site, and setting that are essential to an accurate recreation and must be reconstructed. Archeological resources that are not essential to the reconstruction should be left in place. The archeological findings, together with archival documentation, should be used to replicate the design, materials, and plan of the historic building.

Identify, Protect, and Preserve Extant Historic Features

Closely aligned with archeological research, recommendations are given for ***identifying, protecting, and preserving*** extant features of the historic building. It is never appropriate to base a **Reconstruction** upon conjectural designs or on features from other buildings. Any remaining historic materials and features should be retained and incorporated into the reconstruction when feasible. Both the historic and new materials should be documented to assist in interpretation.

Reconstruct Non-Surviving Building and Site

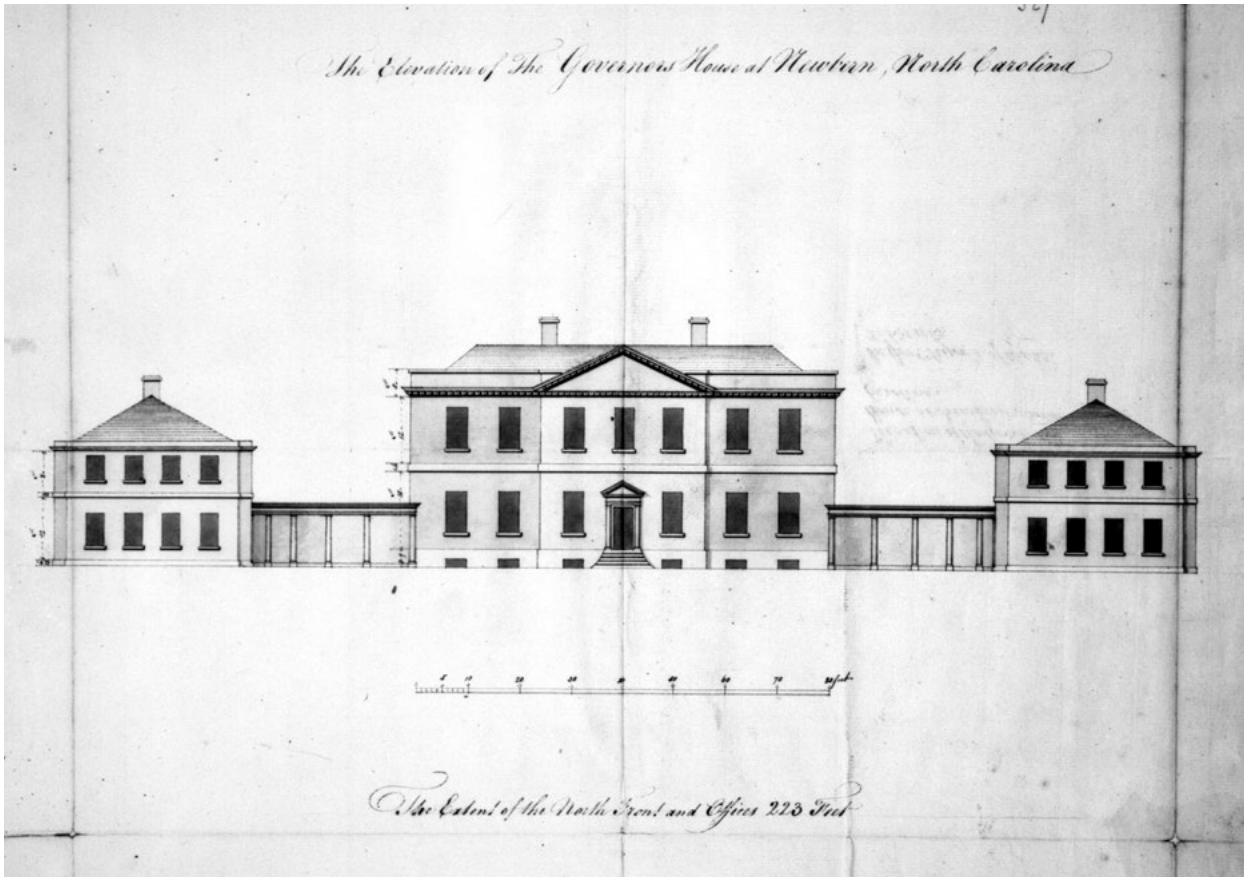
After the research and documentation phases, guidance is given for **Reconstruction** work itself. Exterior and interior features are addressed in general, always emphasizing the need for an accurate depiction (i.e., careful duplication of the appearance of historic materials and features for interpretative purposes). While the use of traditional materials and finishes is always preferred, in some instances substitute materials may be used if they are able to convey the same appearance. Where non-visible features of the building are concerned, such as interior structural systems, contemporary materials and technology may be used. Recreating the features of the building site or setting based on archeological findings should also be an integral part of project work.

Accessibility and Life Safety, Natural Hazards, and Sustainability

Whereas preservation, rehabilitation, and restoration treatments usually necessitate retrofitting to meet code requirements and to address other issues (including natural hazards and sustainability), in this treatment it is assumed that the **Reconstructed** building will be essentially new construction. Thus, code-required work, treatments to reduce the potential impact of natural hazards, and ensuring that the reconstructed building is as sustainable as possible should be considered during the design phase—when appropriate to the particular Reconstruction project—so as not to negatively impact or detract from the reconstructed appearance of the building, its site, and setting. The fact that the non-surviving building was located in a floodplain or another area especially vulnerable to the impact of natural hazards is crucial to consider when determining whether the building should be reconstructed.

The topic of sustainability is addressed in detail in *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation & Illustrated Guidelines on Sustainability for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings*. Although specifically developed for the treatment Rehabilitation, the Guidelines can be used to help guide the other treatments.

Reconstruction as a Treatment. *When a contemporary depiction is required to understand and interpret a property's historic value (including the re-creation of missing components in a historic district or site); when no other property with the same associative value has survived; and when sufficient historical documentation exists to ensure an accurate reproduction,* ***Reconstruction*** *may be considered as a treatment. Prior to undertaking work, a documentation plan for Reconstruction should be developed.*



[1 a-b] Tyron Palace, New Bern, NC, was designed by John Hawks in 1767 for Governor William Tyron. It was completed in 1770, but destroyed by fire in 1798. The palace was reconstructed in 1959 based on the original plans, and on its original foundation, which was found 5 feet below the street, with the help of the 1767 drawing. *Photo: Courtesy Tyron Palace, New Bern, NC. Drawing: Courtesy of the State Archives of North Carolina.*

[2] The Saugus Iron Works, Saugus, MA, a National Historic Site, was active from 1646 to about 1670 and was the first integrated iron works in North America. The forge and mill (shown here) are part of the site which was reconstructed based on archeological research and historic documents and opened in 1954. *Photo: Daderot at the English language Wikipedia.*

OVERVIEW

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Researching and documenting the property's historical significance, focusing on documentary and physical evidence which is needed to justify reconstruction of the non-surviving building.	Undertaking a reconstruction based on insufficient research so that, as a result, a historically inaccurate building is created. Reconstructing a building unnecessarily when an existing building adequately reflects or explains the history of the property, the historical event, or has the same associative value. Executing a design for a building that was never constructed.
Investigating archeological resources to identify and evaluate those features and artifacts which are essential to the design and plan of the building.	Failing to identify and evaluate archeological material prior to reconstruction, or destroying extant historic material not relevant to the reconstruction but which should be preserved in place.
Minimizing disturbance of the terrain around buildings or elsewhere on the site, thereby reducing the possibility of destroying or damaging important landscape features, archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.	Using heavy machinery or equipment in areas where it may disturb or damage important landscape features, archeological resources, cultural or religious features, or burial grounds.
Identifying, retaining, and preserving extant historic features of the building, site, and setting, such as remnants of a foundation, chimney, or walkway.	Beginning reconstruction work without first conducting a detailed site investigation to physically substantiate the documentary evidence. Basing a reconstruction on conjectural designs or on features from other historic buildings.

[3] The Cathedral of Saint Michael the Archangel, built in the early 1840s in Sitka, AK, was devastated by fire in 1966. It was reconstructed using measured drawings done in 1961 by the Historic American Buildings Survey (HABS). While the original cathedral was built of logs covered on the exterior with wood siding, its replacement is a fire-resistant structure with concrete and steel walls that replicates the historic building's appearance. *Photo: Barek at Wikimedia Commons.*

BUILDING EXTERIOR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Reconstructing a non-surviving building to depict the documented historic appearance. Although the use of the original building materials (such as masonry, wood, and architectural metals) is preferable, substitute materials may be used as long as they recreate the historic appearance.	Reconstructing features that cannot be documented historically or for which existing documentation is inadequate. Using substitute materials that do not convey the appearance of the historic building.
Recreating the documented design of exterior features, such as the roof form and its coverings, architectural detailing, windows, entrances and porches, steps and doors, and their historic spatial relationships and proportions.	Omitting a documented exterior feature, or rebuilding a feature but altering its historic design. Using inappropriate designs or materials that do not convey the historic appearance.
Reproducing the appearance of historic paint colors and finishes based on documentary and physical evidence.	Using paint colors that cannot be documented through research and investigation or using other undocumented finishes.
Installing exterior electrical and telephone cables underground or in the least obtrusive location possible, unless they can be documented as having been aboveground historically.	Attaching exterior electrical and telephone cables to the principal elevations of the reconstructed building, unless they can be documented as having been there historically.
Using signage to identify the building as a contemporary recreation.	Failing to explain that the building is a reconstruction, thereby confusing the public's understanding of the property.

[4] The McLean House, where Robert E. Lee surrendered to Ulysses S. Grant, is located on the site of the battlefield—now part of Appomattox Courthouse National Historical Monument (VA). Several years after the end of the Civil War, measured drawings were made of the house before it was dismantled to be moved to Washington, DC, where it was to be reconstructed as a tourist attraction. This scheme never came to fruition, and the dismantled pieces gradually disappeared. The house was accurately reconstructed in 1949 on the original site based on the measured drawings.

BUILDING INTERIOR

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Recreating the appearance of *visible* features of the historic structural system, such as posts and beams, trusses, summer beams, vigas, cast-iron columns, above-grade masonry foundations, or load-bearing brick or stone walls. Contemporary methods and materials may be used for the actual structural system of the reconstructed building.	Changing the documented appearance of visible features of the structural system.
Recreating the historic floor plan and interior spaces, including the size, configuration, proportion, and relationship of rooms and corridors; the relationship of features to spaces; and the spaces themselves.	Altering the documented historic floor plan, or relocating an important interior feature, such as a staircase, so that the historic relationship between the feature and the space is inaccurately depicted. Reconstructing the historic appearance of the interior without accurate documentation.
Duplicating the documented historic appearance of the building's interior features and finishes (including columns, cornices, baseboards, fireplaces and mantels, paneling, light fixtures, hardware, and flooring); plaster, paint, and finishes (such as stenciling or marbleizing); and other decorative or utilitarian materials and features.	Altering the documented appearance of the building's interior features and finishes so that, as a result, an inaccurate depiction of the historic building is created. For example, moving a feature from one area of a room to another, or changing the type or color of the finish.
Installing mechanical systems and their components in the least obtrusive way possible so as not to impact the recreated interior spaces, features, or finishes while meeting user needs.	Altering the historic plan or the recreated appearance unnecessarily when installing mechanical systems.
Installing ducts, pipes, and cables in closets, service areas, and wall cavities.	Installing ducts, pipes, and cables where they will intrude upon the historic appearance of the building.

[5] The parlor of the McLean House was reconstructed to its appearance on the occasion of Robert E. Lee's surrender to Ulysses S. Grant in this room on April 9, 1865.

BUILDING SITE

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Reconstructing building site features based on documentary and physical evidence.	Reconstructing building site features without documentary and physical evidence.
Inventorying the building site to determine the existence of aboveground remains and subsurface archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds, and using this evidence as corroborating documentation for the reconstruction of related site features. These may include walls, fences, or steps; circulation systems, such as walks, paths, or roads; vegetation, such as trees, shrubs, grass, orchards, hedges, windbreaks, or gardens; landforms, such as hills, terracing, or berms; furnishings and fixtures, such as light posts or benches; decorative elements, such as sculpture, statuary, or monuments; water features, including fountains, streams, pools, lakes, or irrigation ditches.	Giving the building's site an inaccurate appearance by basing the reconstruction on conjectural designs or on features from other sites.
Recreating the historic spatial relationship between buildings and related site features.	Changing the historic spatial relationship between buildings and related site features, or reconstructing some site features but not others, thereby confusing the depiction of the reconstructed site.

[6] This lighthouse on Lake Ponchartrain in New Orleans was reconstructed after the historic 1890 lighthouse was destroyed by Hurricane Katrina.

SETTING (DISTRICT / NEIGHBORHOOD)

RECOMMENDED	NOT RECOMMENDED
Reconstructing features in the building's historic setting based on documentary and physical evidence.	Reconstructing features in the setting without documentary and physical evidence.
Inventorying the setting to determine the existence of above-ground remains and subsurface archeological resources, other cultural or religious features, or burial grounds, and using this evidence as corroborating documentation for the reconstruction of missing features of the historic setting. These may include circulation systems, such as roads and streets; furnishings and fixtures, such as light posts or benches; vegetation, gardens, and yards; adjacent open space, such as fields, parks, commons, or woodlands; and important views or visual relationships.	Giving the building's setting an inaccurate appearance by basing the reconstruction on conjectural designs or on features from other locations.
Recreating the historic spatial relationship between buildings and landscape features in the setting.	Changing the historic spatial relationship between buildings and landscape features in the setting by reconstructing some features but not others, thereby confusing the depiction of the reconstructed setting.

[7] The Muhlenberg Brigade Huts are reconstructions of nine log huts erected in 1777 at Valley Forge during the Revolutionary War. They have been reconstructed on the historic road with logs cut with modern power tools and finished with cement, unlike the original logs which were hand hewn and finished with traditional chinking. *Photo: Rdsmith4 at Wikimedia Commons.*

[8] The Palace of Fine Arts was designed by Bernard Maybeck and built for the 1915 Panama-Pacific Exposition in San Francisco. The pavilion was intended to be temporary and, although it had a steel structure, the exterior was finished only with staff, an impermanent material composed of plaster and fiber. The building was not torn down after the exposition, and it eventually fell into ruin. In 1964, all but the steel structure was demolished, and the building was reconstructed with lightweight poured-in-place concrete. *Photo: KevinIcole at Wikimedia Commons.*

Design: Lloyd Greenberg Design, LLC

U.S. Department of the Interior
National Park Service
Technical Preservation Services